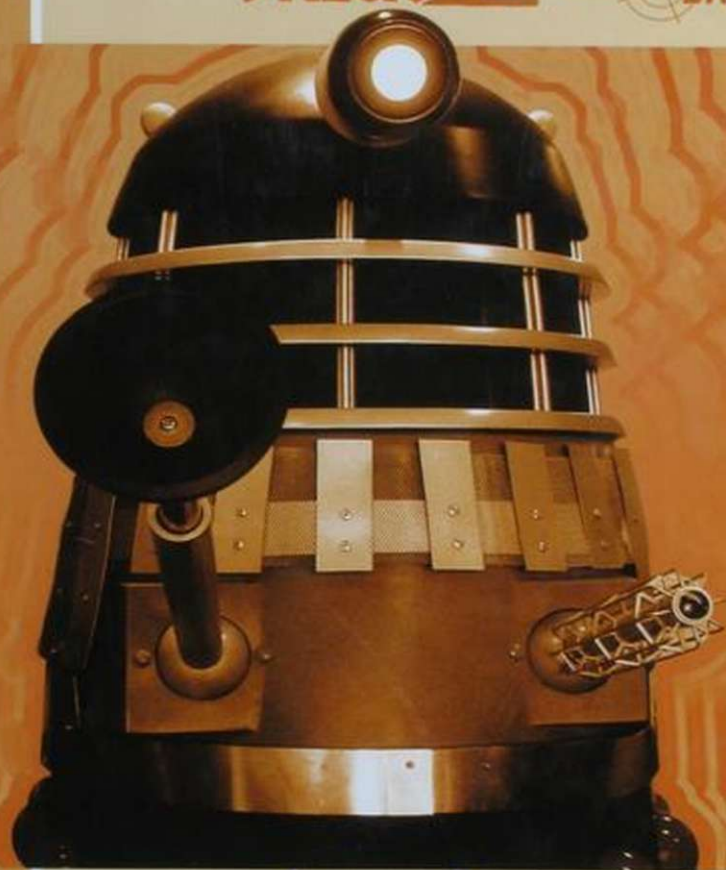


**BIG  
FINISH**

THE COMPLETE SCRIPTS FROM

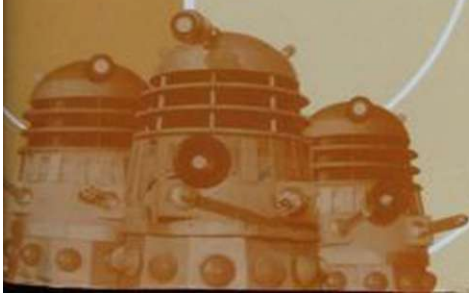
**DALEK EMPIRE** AND DALEK EMPIRE IS **DALEK WAR**



# **DALEK EMPIRE**

## **THE SCRIPTS**

WRITTEN BY **NICHOLAS BRIGGS**



# **DALEK** **EMPIRE** **THE SCRIPTS**

WRITTEN BY  
**NICHOLAS BRIGGS**

**BIG**  
FINISH

Published by Big Finish Productions Ltd.  
PO Box 1127  
Maidenhead SL6 3LW

[www.bigfinish.com](http://www.bigfinish.com)

Editor: Ian Farrington  
Managing Editor: Jason Haigh-Ellery  
Consultant for BBC Worldwide: Jacqueline Rayner

Daleks created by Terry Nation

Doctor Who and Dalek are trademarks of the British Broadcasting Corporation and are used under licence. Daleks © BBC/Terry Nation 1963. Licensed by BBC Worldwide Ltd.

ISBN 1-84435-106-8

Cover art by Clayton Hickman 2004

First published May 2004

Alby All Right © Mark McDonnell 2004  
Invasion of the Daleks © Nicholas Briggs 2001  
The Human Factor © Nicholas Briggs 2001  
"Death to the Daleks!" © Nicholas Briggs 2001  
Project Infinity © Nicholas Briggs 2002  
Dalek War Chapter One © Nicholas Briggs 2003  
Dalek War Chapter Two © Nicholas Briggs 2003  
Dalek War Chapter Three © Nicholas Briggs 2003  
Dalek War Chapter Four © Nicholas Briggs 2003  
Q&A answers © Nicholas Briggs 2004  
Q&A Script Editing © John Ainsworth & Nicholas Briggs 2004  
Dalek War Basic Plot © Nicholas Briggs 2004  
Dalek War: Liberation? © Nicholas Briggs 2004  
Dalek Empire III: The Exterminators © Nicholas Briggs 2004

With thanks to Gary Finney, Gary Russell and Steve Tribe

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted.

All characters in this publication are fictitious and any resemblance to any persons, living or dead, is purely coincidental.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or any information retrieval system, without prior permission, in writing, from the publisher.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Printed and bound in Great Britain by Biddles Ltd  
[www.biddles.co.uk](http://www.biddles.co.uk)

# CONTENTS

<b>Alby All Right</b> by Mark McDonnell	1
<b>Q&amp;A Dalek Empire</b>	3
<b>Invasion of the Daleks</b>	9
Notes	40
Dalek Empire original press release	45
Q&A	47
<b>The Human Factor</b>	55
Notes	86
Q&A	89
<b>Q&amp;A Dalek Voices</b>	92
<b>"Death to the Daleks!"</b>	95
Notes	124
Q&A	127
<b>Q&amp;A Script Editing</b>	131
<b>Project Infinity</b>	135
Notes	170
Q&A	175
<b>Q&amp;A Dalek War</b>	183
Dalek War Basic Plot	189
Dalek War Liberation?	193
<b>Dalek War Chapter One</b>	197
Notes	224
Q&A	227
<b>Q&amp;A Casting</b>	231
<b>Dalek War Chapter Two</b>	233
Notes	259
Q&A	261
Dalek War Recording Schedule	263
<b>Dalek War Chapter Three</b>	269
Notes	292
Q&A	295
<b>Q&amp;A Names</b>	299
<b>Dalek War Chapter Four</b>	301
Notes	327
Q&A	329
<b>Q&amp;A Dalek Empire III</b>	331

# EDITOR'S NOTE

The scripts reproduced in this book are the versions taken into the studio for the plays' recording sessions.

In the scripts, square brackets are used to denote unsaid dialogue, included in the script for the aid of the actors.

Writer/director Nicholas Briggs explains:

'This is a habit I picked up when I was writing for the Channel 5 soap opera *Family Affairs*. The script editors told me that if I wrote interrupted lines, the actors wouldn't know what they were going to say before they were interrupted. I thought this was monumentally stupid at the time, but later found that it was quite useful. It enabled me to experiment in the recording sessions, working out just how much of the bracketed words people should say before they were cut off. Sometimes, they ended up saying all of it.'

Each of *Dalek Empire*'s four episodes were written and recorded as separate productions and therefore each chapter has its own scene numbers. All of *Dalek War*, however, was written in its entirety and then recorded in one studio block. The scenes are therefore numbered across the series – Chapter One is Scenes 1-36; Chapter Two is 37-72; Chapter Three is 73-104 and Chapter Four is 105-134.

In *Project Infinity*, there is a character who

in the original script is called Dr Johnston. In the credits contained in the CD booklet, however, his name is spelt Johnstone; it is also spelt this way in the script and CD booklet for *Dalek War Chapter One*. Therefore, Johnstone has been used throughout this book for consistency's sake.

Also, despite the original scripts containing some abbreviations, character names have been spelt out in full throughout the book – 'Dalek Supreme' rather than 'Dal Sup', for example.

Two script abbreviations are used. VO means 'voiceover', whilst FX denotes 'sound effect'.

Each script is followed by a Notes section, which lists annotations that mark where these scripts differ from the released plays. Words or sentences that do not appear in the play are struck through. Words or sentences that were changed or added are emboldened.

Briggs provides a commentary on the scripts in the Q&A sections which appear throughout the book. Original character breakdowns, plot outlines and other features are also included.

For more details on the production of these stories, see *Doctor Who: The New Audio Adventures – The Inside Story* by Benjamin Cook (ISBN 1-84435-034-7), pp261-267.

**SPOILER! These scripts, and the extra features, will reveal plot points**

# DALEK EMPIRE

"ATTENTION ALL HUMANS! YOU ARE NOW  
SUBJECTS OF THE DALEK EMPIRE!"  
THE LARGEST DALEK FLEET EVER ASSEMBLED  
BEGINS ITS INVASION OF THE GALAXY!

ON PLANET VEGA VI, SUZ AND ALBY TAKE THEIR FIRST,  
DELICATE STEPS TOWARDS ROMANCE. SHE'S A CAREER  
GIRL AND HE'S JUST A DRIFTER, BUT THEY'VE KNOWN  
EACH OTHER FOR MONTHS NOW, AND THE  
ATTRACTION BETWEEN THEM IS UNDENIABLE.

HOWEVER, THE VEGA SYSTEM IS THE DALEKS' FIRST  
TARGET! AND THE TOKEN EARTH DEFENCE FORCE  
PATROLLING THAT SECTOR IS NO MATCH FOR THE  
RUTHLESS DALEK ONSLAUGHT.

WHO IS THE MYSTERIOUS STRANGER SUZ FINDS  
AMONGST THE DEVASTATED REMAINS OF VEGA VI?  
WHAT IS ALBY'S SECRET? CAN THE DALEKS'  
RELENTLESS ADVANCE ACROSS THE GALAXY EVER BE  
STOPPED?

DALEK EMPIRE IS A STORY OF HUMAN EMOTION AND  
GALACTIC INTRIGUE SET AGAINST THE MOST  
DESTRUCTIVE CONFLICT THE GALAXY HAS EVER  
KNOWN.



# ALBY ALL RIGHT

By Mark McDonnell

'How would you like to fight the Daleks?' enquired Nick Briggs, through the iron grip of an unremorsefully tenacious cold.

Fighting Daleks, eh?

On occasional chilly Sunday mornings in Stockwell?

So that the rest of the nation can enjoy their Sunday papers in bed, without immediate threat of extermination?

Yes... I would do it. 'Dammit, it's my duty! Oh, and here's a box of Kleenex. Bless you.'

The decision must have taken, ooh, 0.5 of a second (and that's only because I didn't want to appear too keen).

'You'll be playing Alby Brook,' said Nick. 'A cynical, out-of-favour Space Security Agent with an authority problem, an eye for a pretty girl and a palate not unaccustomed to a beer'. As I think I've said before, it's me in space!

It's every daft Doctor Who lad's dream. (Apart from playing the Doctor of course... hmmm there's a thought...) Travelling round the universe, battling Daleks and having a pint or two along the way. What a joy! And it was. Every minute of it. From the first of Nick's excellent scripts popping with a nice weighty thud onto my doormat, via a fantastic time at the Gallifrey convention in Los Angeles, to Alby's last screamed 'Nooooo!'. A joy.

As anyone who's listened to the documentary (on the second CD of *Dalek War* Chapter Four) can attest, there's a lot of laughter in the green room during these recordings. Yes, it's true, and not just in the green room, but in the studio too. That doesn't mean that we didn't take the work seriously. It's a testament to Nick's writing, directing, acting and casting skills that everyone felt relaxed, in safe hands and able to kick back and enjoy. And I think that trust and enthusiasm comes through loud and clear whenever I pop one of these spectacular CDs onto my stereo – as I am wont to do when I need to escape the mundanity of the council tax bill or some other petty trivial matter that can be brought to its knees by the terrifying Dalek Emperor. (That voice chills the blood. Fact.)

And the cast *were* fantastic. Sarah Mowat, or as she should officially be known The Lovely Sarah Mowat, is a superb actress (second fact), a top girl and a privilege to chase around the universe.

Gareth Thomas is a star and an inspiration to work with. On one of those Stockwell Sundays, Kalendorf and I survived a tempestuous journey from Heathrow. We arrived very late and very windswept, and Gareth took it all in his stride while I babbled like an idiot. (I always knew Blake was still a hero!)

But that is naming names. Brilliant cast, all (third fact).

All this reminiscing makes me think we should organise a reunion party. When I've finished this, I'll post a notice on the Dalek Friends Reunited website.

Seriously (for a sec), in Dalek Empire Nick was free of the Doctor Who format and



able to put in some stronger human drama. And this, I feel, is never more evident than the Alby/Suz love story. All of Alby's motivations stem from an overriding love for Suz, but not in a floppy-haired, bumbling Oxbridge fop kind of way. No, this depth of feeling spans galaxies, decades, limb-loss and death.

Now that's love. Actually.

I am genuinely immensely proud to have been involved in these eight fantastic chapters.

Here's to the next part of the Dalek Empire journey!

Now. It's time.

'Drudger. Bring me a large pot of strong tea, and get that box of Kleenex back from Briggs – things could get very emotional.

'Right, page one, scene one...

'And, Drudger? No interruptions. This is going to be one hell of an adventure!'

# DALEK EMPIRE

NICHOLAS BRIGGS is Dalek Empire's writer, producer, director, sound designer, composer and chief Dalek voice. Here, he talks about the beginning of the series...

## **What are your earliest memories of the Daleks?**

Nicholas Briggs: Like many early memories, it's all a bit confused. For many years, I thought I remembered watching [1965/66 Doctor Who serial] *The Daleks' Master Plan*, because I described the bit I remembered, a scene involving a girl being shoved out of an airlock, to an older Doctor Who fan friend and he confirmed its authenticity. Then I discovered that this bit had been used as a clip on *Blue Peter*, so I was obviously just remembering that. But then, I do definitely remember seeing Patrick Troughton's first Doctor Who story, *The Power of the Daleks* [1966], and I remember already knowing what the Daleks were and being excited about them coming back... I can't work out how, because I would have been round about four-years-old when *Master Plan* was on! I did, however, have *The Dalek Book* – that big, blue-covered bundle of Dalek delights. So maybe I'd only experienced the Daleks through that prior to *The Power of the Daleks*. It's hard to tell what the truth of it is, or, indeed, whether any of this is at all interesting!

## **Have they always been your favourite Doctor Who villains?**

Always. In a way, I didn't really relate to them in terms of Doctor Who at all. Because of *The Dalek Book*, I saw the Daleks as the stars. I loved seeing them on Doctor Who, but as a kid, I always knew that the Daleks should really have their own series. I would spend hours poring over that book; studying every detail of the artwork, always discovering something new each time I read it. It seems odd now, that such an unremarkable book should have had such an influence on me, but it was my most prized possession; a reliable source of entertainment and excitement that I went back to time and time again. And from time to time, I still do go back to it for a comforting fix of nostalgia.

## **What was the initial impetus for Dalek-only audios? Is it true that the intention was to do Dalek audio stories before Big Finish got the licence to do Doctor Who?**

I feel as if I've answered this question a million times. It is definitely true that I discussed doing Dalek audios before we had the Doctor Who licence, because, back in them there days, strangely, it seemed more likely that we'd get an agreement to do Daleks rather than Doctor Who as a whole. I even made some budget calculations and started thinking about adapting the stories from *The Dalek Book*. I soon discovered that, despite my nostalgic admiration for them, I wouldn't be able to bear writing stories about the Daleks invading Saturn! I knew that there had to be a broader scope and that, at the very least, I'd have to write stories that understood the difference between solar systems, galaxies and the universe.

As for the initial impetus... I suppose, at a time when we weren't allowed to do *Doctor Who*, it was an attempt to get as close to *Doctor Who* as possible. My enthusiasm for the series really came through my fascination for the Daleks, so this seemed very much more than an adequate substitute for doing *Doctor Who*. Of course, when we finally did it concurrently with *Doctor Who*, it became, for me, more of a bonus.

### **Was that original plan the same as what became Dalek Empire?**

Well, I'd already abandoned the idea of adapting *The Dalek Book*, so in as much as I knew I'd be writing new stories with a kind of flavour of the book, the answer is yes. I'm not sure if I'd actually started writing story ideas at that point. But I know I was thinking about them quite a lot. I always do a lot of thinking – some would call it daydreaming – about stories before I write them.

### **What would you say are the major influences on Dalek Empire?**

It's a fusion of all my favourite things. Obviously, I love *Doctor Who*; but I wanted to fuse it with stuff like war films, spy films and, I confess, romantic films. I knew I wanted a love story to underpin it all, as a stark contrast with the ruthlessness and hatred of the Daleks. Much has been said about the Daleks being a kind of Nazi metaphor, and although I don't think one should get carried away with that connection, there's definitely some mileage in that. I remember that, as a teenager, *The Heroes of Telemark* [1965 film starring Kirk Douglas] inspired me to write stories about human resistance groups sabotaging Dalek operations. I even made a frighteningly bad super-8 film about it, using stop-motion animated action men, toy Daleks and my hands for close-ups.

### **What sort of series did you start out trying to write?**

I wanted to write a story that, at its core, would be about the effect a Dalek invasion would have on human beings at a personal level. That was the inspiration for the love story between Alby and Suz. However, in order to create the mechanics of how and why this invasion was taking place, it was necessary to describe the military and more action-packed elements of this. Stylistically, this created a contrast between the more personal, emotional aspects and the action-adventure moments. It meant that, hopefully, balancing the two would make each element seem fresh. After a few scenes with more emotional content, a change of pace to action would re-engage the audience. Likewise, a constant barrage of Daleks exterminating people would become a little tiresome. I feel that the key to keeping an audience engaged is to explore your main theme in different ways. But, essentially, I wanted to make *Dalek Empire* feel like a serious drama. People outside of *Doctor Who* fandom might find that laughable, since it was inevitable that my 'serious drama' would involve scenes of 'robots' barking at each other in funny electronic voices, but it works for me!

### **How far did you plan ahead?**

I wrote the first twenty minutes or so of *Dalek Empire* with a few ideas swimming around in my head. It was just my way of getting going. Then I stopped, thought about the implications of what I was writing, and started to plan out the plot, chapter by chapter.

So, for example, looking back at my scribbled notes, I wrote the following about *Invasion of the Daleks*.

As script... then... Suz's ideas (of making life for slaves bearable) are adopted by the Daleks. Dalek Supreme sends her on her 'good will' mission. After being lost for months (big time lapse), Alby finds the Vega News ship. Meets Pellan there (apparently escaped from Aquitania). Broadcasts from Vega indicate Suz left (with Kalendorf) for the Garazone System – newly conquered by the Daleks. Alby: 'Then that's where I go'. Pellan is going with him.

That was the kind of basic plot I was writing from. It was in no way a scene-by-scene breakdown at this stage. The fleshing out of the story came as I wrote the actual script. Strangely enough, though, some of my storylines contain bits of detail that never made it to the script. For example, there wasn't any 'big time lapse' between Alby escaping from Aquitania and being picked up by the Vega News ship. Also, for *The Human Factor*, my storyline notes that 'Kalendorf [is] doing practical work. Supervising building of shelters'. I also characterised the whole plan for the slave rebellion against the Daleks slightly differently: 'Secret delaying tactics. Kalendorf tells them all a sign will come to turn on the Daleks. Little by little prepared. "Awake!" or "No surrender!".'

Of course, the phrase for calling the slaves to action would eventually become the infamous 'Death to the Daleks!'. Not surprisingly, *No Surrender* was the original title of the third episode. As the first series progressed, the planning became more and more detailed, because the story issues became more complicated in the light of developments I'd introduced in the script. So, for example, by the time I got to the planning of "Death to the Daleks!", the storylines consist of a more detailed breakdown, including snatches of rough dialogue. This dialogue was never intended to be used. It was more an indication of character motives and the direction in which the scene was going.

For example, the scene in which Suz and Kalendorf discuss who's going to announce 'Death to the Daleks!' to the slaves started out like this:

**KALENDORF** We have played the long game – but the trick is not to play it too long.

**SUZ** When we do call a halt to it... the Daleks will kill us first.

**KALENDORF** But you want to be with Alby. You have a future. I'll do the dirty work.

**SUZ** (*Mysterious*) I have a plan to contact Alby.

**DALEK arrives.** Direct link-up for SUZ with DALEK SUPREME in one hour.

**SUZ** I'll be there.

**KALENDORF** Where are you going?

**SUZ** I need some solitude. One of the privileges of the Angel of Mercy.

As you'll see when reading "Death to the Daleks!", the final version bears almost no relation to this at all, but you can see that several of the basic elements are there.

Once I had an idea of where the four parts were going – enough of an idea to put plot teasers on the Big Finish website – I went back to the script writing, stopping to amend the plot as I went along. A lot of this plotting would be done in conjunction with John Ainsworth.

### **What was John Ainsworth's involvement? Why have a script editor anyway?**

John had far more involvement in *Dalek Empire* than he did in *Dalek War*. There's no real reason why it worked out that way, except perhaps there was just more work to be done in order to establish the narrative style of the series. At the scripting level, John's involvement was to read my drafts and suggest changes to lines and story elements. However, before all that, we'd spend time in a Pizza Express discussing the storyline. It was like I was doing a little presentation between courses. With the garlic bread out of the way, I'd shuffle my scribbled notes and tell him the story of *Dalek Empire*, only occasionally changing it on-the-hoof when I saw a disapproving look flicker across his face. I'd also try to enthuse him by showing him the silly little spaceship drawings I'd done in the margins! That never worked. It was at this stage that John and I realised we were really on the same wavelength about the way the story and characters should go. We both wanted a higher level of emotional realism than is generally offered in *Doctor Who*. John really seized on the idea of Suz starting to get a bit carried away by her status with the Daleks. He likened this aspect of her to the Alec Guinness character in *Bridge on the River Kwai*, whose pride in constructing the bridge starts to outweigh his concerns for his men. Unwittingly, he almost begins to side with the enemy. We had fun exploring those possibilities with Suz.

The point of having a script editor is that you need an outside eye on your work. When you're writing something, you're inhabiting the fictional world you're creating. Unless you have lots of time to leave the script alone and come back to it, say, three months later, you can never get an objective perspective on it. A script editor provides that perspective. Luckily, John and I built up a real bond of trust. He trusted my abilities as a writer and never forced a single change on me, and I trusted his abilities enough to do virtually all the changes he suggested, even though I'd always initially moan about them!

# DALEK EMPIRE

## CAST

SUSAN MENDES	Sarah Mowat
ALBY BROOK	Mark McDonnell
KALENDORF	Gareth Thomas
PELLAN & CAPTAIN MEDEM	John Wadmore
NARRATOR	Joyce Gibbs
ADMIRAL CHEVIAT, ED BYERS, ROBOMAN, WERNEY, DRUDGER, GURJAN, ESPEELIUS, KARIK & ELISONFORD	Ian Brooker
TANLEE & MOREBI	David Sax
DALEK VOICES	Nicholas Briggs Alistair Lock Steven Allen Robert Lock
HIGHNESS	Adrian Lloyd-James
DAUGHTER	Georgina Carter
STRALOS, BARMAN & HERRICK	Jez Fielder
MIRANA & EARTH PRESIDENT	Teresa Gallagher
DR JOHNSTONE	Simon Bridge

## PRODUCTION CREDITS

<b>Written by</b>	Nicholas Briggs
<b>Daleks created by</b>	Terry Nation
<b>Story Editor</b>	John Ainsworth
<b>Sound design &amp; music</b>	Nicholas Briggs
<b>Producers</b>	Jason Haigh-Ellery Nicholas Briggs
<b>Executive Producer for BBC Worldwide</b>	Jacqueline Rayner
<b>Directed by</b>	Nicholas Briggs

### **Invasion of the Daleks**

*Recorded:* 6 May 2001

*Released:* June 2001

### **The Human Factor**

*Recorded:* 3 June 2001

*Released:* August 2001

### **“Death to the Daleks!”**

*Recorded:* 2 September 2001

*Released:* October 2001

### **Project Infinity**

*Recorded:* 11 November 2001

*Released:* January 2002

# INVASION OF THE DALEKS

## 1. Deep Space.

*Rumble of a Star Destroyer's engines. All voices are distorted, as if we're tuning into sub-space radio transmissions.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** This is Captain Medem, commander SD *Victorious*, to flagship *Intrepid*. Priority channel message for Admiral Cheviat.<sup>1</sup>

**COMMS** Acknowledged, *Victorious*. Patching you through. Proceed.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** I've a feeling you're not the bearer of glad tidings, Julio.

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** No, Admiral.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Let's have it then.

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** That anomaly we picked up at extreme range on the fringes of the Seriphia Galaxy... Nav-scan now shows it on a steady course for the Vega System. I've had my best people looking over the energy traces... Artificial, almost certainly some kind of drive system.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** So what do you think it is, a starship?

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** My people are pretty sure it's a *fleet* of ships, running under cover of an energy-scrambling defence shield.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Have you attempted communication?

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** We've been trying ever since we spotted it, but they either can't or *won't* respond.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** What's their ETA in the Vega System?

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** At present, two solar days, but their speed is increasing rapidly.

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Bring *Victorious* back to the fleet, Captain. I'll deploy our ships in defence formation and appraise Earth Command of the situation before –<sup>2</sup>

*A massive, violent crackle of energy.*

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Captain! Captain!

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** (*Signal breaking up. Urgent*) *Intrepid?! Intrepid?! Do you read us?*

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Julio, what the hell happened? We lost you for a second there –

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** Admiral!

*Another violent crackle.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** We're under fire!

*Another crackle.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** We have being fired upon. They've dropped their distortion field, increased speed to an incredible rate and –<sup>3</sup>

*Another crackle.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** Aaargh! (*To other officers*) Damage report, all stations! Bring us about, maximum thrust!

**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Captain! Captain, what do you see? Who's attacking you? Who is it?

*Another crackle.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** It's a fleet – thousands of ships, *thousands* of them. We don't stand a chance.



**ADMIRAL CHEVIAT** Get out of there, Julio, get out of there now!  
*Another crackle.*

**CAPTAIN MEDEM** Heavy damage to all –  
*A massive, explosive crackle, transforming into a violent sizzle of static.*  
*A Dalek voice emerges out of the distortion.*

**DALEK** All humanoid life-forms beware! The invasion of the Daleks has begun!  
*Crash into theme tune.*

## **2. Vega VI. Marsh Lakes.**

*The narrator is an older woman with a rich voice. A voice which, in some ways, hints at weariness and dark terrors.*

**NARRATOR** I remember what it was like before the Daleks came to Vega VI.  
*A soft breeze blows. Water lapping.*

**NARRATOR** In my mind's eye... the air was always fresh, the suns were always high in the sky.<sup>4</sup> The water in the Marsh Lakes... always a sparkling blue. Hmm, that's the way I remember it.  
*Fade up a high-powered speedboat, ploughing through the waves.*

## **3. Int. Speedboat. Cockpit.**

*Voices are raised above the engine noise.*

**SUZ** (*Unimpressed*) Do you have to drive this thing so fast?

**ALBY** (*Laughs*) You're scared, Suz, admit it! (*Laughs again and makes 'whooping' noises*)

**SUZ** Scared I might lose my mineral samples overboard!  
Scared your male ego's going to get so big it'll explode!

**ALBY** Very messy!

**SUZ** Aren't you frightened I'll tell your boss?! I could get you sacked for reckless driving!

**ALBY** Wouldn't bother me! I can turn my hand to anything!  
*He revs the engine extra hard.*

**SUZ** Ooh, wait a minute, Alby! Pull in over there! I think I spotted something on the shoreline!  
*Crossfade to distant acoustic. The speedboat engine drops in tone and narrators slowly towards us.*

**NARRATOR** I can still taste that air. Still taste it. Never tasted anything like it since... But the girl, the girl, yes... She was only interested in the rocks (*chuckles*)... her precious rocks.<sup>5</sup>

## **4. Int. Speedboat.**

*The boat is moving slowly. Voices are at normal pitch.*

**ALBY** What did you see, Suz?

**SUZ** Flash of blue, just above the shoreline... caught the sun.  
Nahh... can't see it now.

**ALBY** And what does a flash of blue mean?

**SUZ** Ooh, one of those long, geological words you're too thick to understand.

**ALBY** (Mock annoyance) Oh, well, don't bore me with it then. I'm only the taxi driver after all. Where to now, madam?

**SUZ** Let's drift around here for a while. Do you mind?

**ALBY** You're paying, Suz.

**SUZ** The Reinsberg Institute's paying. Want some of my packed lunch?<sup>6</sup>

**ALBY** (Playful) If Reinsberg doesn't mind. She opens a plastic container. Rustle of food parcels. She takes a bite.

**SUZ** (Mouth full) Here. Try a pickled onion...

**ALBY** A what?

**SUZ** My gran makes them... sends them from Earth.

**ALBY** bites.

**ALBY** Argh! God, they're hot.

**SUZ** laughs.

**SUZ** You've got to eat it, or I really will complain to your boss.

**ALBY** Do it. I don't care. (Munches) To tell you the truth, I've been thinking of moving on anyway.<sup>7</sup>

**SUZ** (Suddenly serious) Have you?

**ALBY** (Affecting nonchalance) Yeah.<sup>8</sup>

**SUZ** Oh.

**ALBY** Nothing personal, Suz. You're my favourite customer... but the rest of 'em. (Makes a derogatory noise)

**SUZ** Are they really that bad?

**ALBY** (Eating) Hmm...

**SUZ** Help yourself.

**SUZ** Thanks.

**SUZ** (Eating) Where will you go? What will you do?<sup>9</sup>

**ALBY** I used to be a steward on the Star Cruise Line.

**SUZ** I know. You told me.

**ALBY** Oh, so you do listen.

He laughs. Pause.

**SUZ** (Proud to remember) You got promoted to bar manager on the *Luciana*.

#### ALBY BROOK

AN EARTH ALLIANCE security operative who was working undercover on Vega VI when the Dalek invasion began. Alby is an ex-army petty criminal whose two-year hard-labour sentence for racketeering was suspended when Tanlee recruited him for security service duties. If Alby ever steps out of line, there's always the threat that Tanlee will put him straight back in the slammer.

Alby has been playing at being a loveable rogue all his life. Then he meets Suz... and he realises he's fallen in love. But before he can tell her, the Daleks

invade and he and Suz are separated. In the chaos of war, Alby ignores mission orders from his boss (Tanlee) and heads off on his quest to find Suz.

His original mission on Vega VI was to make contact with the Velyshaan agent Kalendorf, with regard to the Earth Alliance opening negotiations with the Knights of Velyshaa (a powerful enemy defeated by the Earth Alliance in a terrible war from which the galaxy has only just recovered). The purpose of the negotiations was to form a military pact to defeat the Daleks.

**ALBY** Temporary bar manager. But an old mate of mine has been in touch... reckons he can get me something permanent.<sup>10</sup>

**SUZ** Permanent? On a cruise line?

**ALBY** I don't think they're going to shut down the Earth run in my lifetime, do you?

**SUZ** (Unimpressed) Earth? Oh, you're not going to Earth, are you?

**ALBY** (As if quoting from a brochure) 'Visit the Birth-place of the Species.'

**SUZ** You ever been there?

**ALBY** No.

**SUZ** Don't bother. It's a mess.

**ALBY** I'd only be there for the end of trip turnaround... I probably wouldn't see much more than the inside of the Southampton Terminus. I'm thinking of the money I can earn.

**SUZ** Oh... How much?

**ALBY** Well... Enough for me nest egg.

**SUZ** Nest egg?! (Laughs)

**ALBY** (Defensive) Yeah. What's so funny about that?

**SUZ** The idea of you settling down with someone.

Pause.

**SUZ** Are you serious?

An enormous craft starts to fly overhead.

**ALBY** What the hell - ? Look at that!!!

**SUZ** Is that a star cruiser?!

**ALBY** Military! Look, gun ports -

**SUZ** They don't normally enter the atmosphere, do they?

#### SUSAN MENDES (SUZ)

A GEOLOGIST WORKING for the Reinsberg Institute on outer planet Vega VI. Suz is single, in her 30s, bright, intelligent, sensitive and, as it turns out, pretty tough. She is not really fulfilled by her job. She needs more of a challenge.

Unexpectedly, she gets that challenge when the Daleks begin their ruthless invasion of the galaxy.

In order to alleviate the suffering of billions of people in the conquered worlds, Suz agrees to work for the Daleks as a kind of liaison officer, promoting better working practices and bringing hope.

She garners a reputation as 'The Angel of Mercy', which puts enormous emotional stress on her. She is constantly wrestling with the dilemma of whether her working for the Daleks is simply alleviating

suffering or helping the Daleks to win. Is she only thinking of her own survival, or doing this for the greater good?

The Dalek Supreme seems to regard her as a case for study. Their regular conversations are an unsettling mix of therapy session and Nazi interrogation.

Suz's ultimate goal in all of this is to turn the Daleks' vast slave workforce against the Daleks and completely destroy all networks of supply and communication, thus bringing the Dalek invasion to a halt.

She and her fellow 'collaborator', Kalendorf, have formulated a plan to telepathically prepare the slave workers for the day when they will hear the unmistakable call to arms. But the struggle towards that day is filled with tragedy and hardship.

**ALBY** (Grave realisation) She's on fire... Suz, she's on fire and she's going to crash.  
*Crossfade to the star cruiser, screeching towards the surface. Enormous crash on impact.*

**NARRATOR** That was the beginning. Everything changed that day. Our lives would never be the same.

### **5. Int. Speedboat.**

*The speedboat is travelling at great speed.*

**SUZ** (Concerned) Alby? Alby? Are you all right?

**ALBY** (Preoccupied) Yeah... Er — yeah... It's just that... I reckon it came down south of the city.

**SUZ** Where you live?

**ALBY** Yeah. Got a lot of friends there.

**SUZ** I can look on one of the news channels. Find out what it's all about.

**ALBY** Yeah... yeah...

**SUZ** You'd better slow down, then.

**ALBY** Er... Yeah.

*The speedboat powers down. The engine ticks over. Switches and controls operate. Much interference.*

**ALBY** What's the matter with it?

**SUZ** (Struggling with controls) Dunno. (Tuts) None of the channels seem to be working.

**ALBY** Try the local network.

*Interference clears. A news theme tune starts.*

**ALBY** (To himself) Satellites must've been hit.

**SUZ** What?

**ALBY** Hm?

**SUZ** What did you say?

**ALBY** (Preoccupied) Oh... nothing... nothing.

**VO** (Distort) Vega VI News, live from Vega City, all day, every day.

**NEWSCASTER** (Distort) Only moments ago, a large military space craft crash-landed in the southern sectors of Vega City. Initial reports are unclear, but a picture of carnage is emerging.

**SUZ** Oh, God.

*The sound of fire blazing and emergency alarms, distorted onscreen.*

**NEWSCASTER** Er... these pictures are coming to you live. Looks... looks very bad. Er... I'm receiving information on the craft which crash-landed, causing this... *this* — An Earth Alliance battle cruiser, name unknown as yet. Planetary traffic control confirm it as a 'repulse' class destroyer; a class of warship employed by Earth's rapid response fleet, currently on patrol in this quadrant. Er... in fact, I'm told we can go live now to Planetary Traffic Control. Er... Ed Byers, officer of the watch, Planetary Traffic Control... can you tell us any more?

### **6. Int. Planetary Traffic Control.**

*Much chaotic chatter in background. Alarms going off.*

**BYERS** (*Trying to keep calm*) We've spoken to C-in-C Earth Alliance Rapid Response Fleet, Admiral Cheviat, and she confirms that the fleet have engaged an unknown, hostile alien force at co-ordinates... er, just outside our system, the Vega System. Er - (*lost for words, panicking a little*)<sup>11</sup>

**NEWSCASTER** (*Distort*) Ed? Are you saying the ship that crashed here was... was a casualty of... of... that, er, engagement?

**BYERS** Yes. Yes, that's right. We have confirmed ident: Star Destroyer Victorious. Er...

*The irony sinks in.*

**NEWSCASTER** (*Distort*) Is... is there any news on - ? Er, has the Rapid Response Fleet contained the hostile forces? (*Pause*) Ed?<sup>12</sup>

**BYERS** (*Grave*) We... we've lost contact with the fleet at this present time. We... we don't know.

*Crackle of interference.*

**NEWSCASTER** (*Distort*) Sorry, Ed. We lost you for a moment, there. Could you -

*His words are lost in a harsh burst of static.*

## 7. Int. Newsroom.

*Burst of static.*

**NEWSCASTER** No... no, I'm afraid we've definitely lost Ed for the moment. Er... What? *What's interfering with our transmissions?*<sup>13</sup>

## 8. Int. Speedboat.

*Crackle of static onscreen.*

**SUZ** What's happening?

**ALBY** Something's cutting in on the broadcast.

*The interference sizzles and crackles loudly.*

**SUZ** Shall I turn it off?

**ALBY** No. Wait a minute.

*The interference resolves into a Dalek voice.*

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Attention! Attention! Citizens of the Vega System! You are now citizens of the Dalek Empire. You will surrender. Resist and you will be exterminated.<sup>14</sup>

*The interference fades back in.*

**SUZ** (*The word is unfamiliar to her*) Dalek...? Dalek Empire? What was that thing?<sup>15</sup>

**ALBY** Suz, we've got to get off this planet - *and fast.*

**SUZ** What? Now, wait a minute, Alby. You're upset... God knows I understand that... because of the crash - so am I! But... I can't take all this in -

*The speedboat's engines fire up.*

**SUZ** (*Shouting over the noise*) Alby? Alby!

**ALBY** It's simple, Suz! The Daleks are going to wipe us out... And if they don't...

*Engine revs.*

**SUZ** What? What is it, Alby?

**ALBY** You'll soon wish they had.

*The speedboat zooms off. Fade out. Crossfade with a single, poignant note of music which holds for a while, then begins to fade.*

**NARRATOR** When the Daleks came, Vega VI put up a fight. They punished us for that. They smashed our cities to pieces, scorched the land for thousands of miles. The clouds of destruction blotted out the suns, filled the air with choking, metallic dust. And then... it was so cold. We thought they were leaving us to starve. But they were waiting. Waiting for our spirit to break. They didn't have to wait for long.

*The sound of thousands of Dalek transolar discs hovering fades in. A low, howling wind is blowing.*

**NARRATOR** It was at daybreak, or what passed for daybreak back then. A dull, cold glow from Vega Prime filtered through the dust clouds. Thousands lay dying and waiting to die on the barren, gnarled, radioactive plains.<sup>16</sup>

*People spluttering and coughing violently in the background.*

**SUZ** *(Weak and totally demoralised)* I... I wonder if we'll ever feel the warmth of the suns again.

*The hovering sound comes nearer.*

**SUZ** Can you hear that? Can you?

**KALENDORF** *(Whooping and coughing)* Why don't you just shut your mouth, girl?

**SUZ** *(Angry, out of control)* Can you hear it? I'm asking you?! I want to know if I'm imagining things. I want to know what's real and what isn't! Don't you understand!? Answer me!

**KALENDORF** Just let us die in peace. *(A coughing fit)*

*The buzzing of the transolar discs gets louder and louder. It is a strange, unnerving, threatening sound.*

**SUZ** *(To herself)* Oh my God... it's them... it's them... thousands of them. Daleks.

**KALENDORF** *(Spluttering, through gritted teeth)* As I believe they say on some parts of that old and revered planet Earth... 'The top of the morning to you'.<sup>17</sup>

*Screams of panic from the crowd.*

**NARRATOR** As panic broke out, those who could started to run... run

#### KALENDORF

AN AGENT OF the Knights of Velyshaa. The Knights are an ancient, noble and utterly ruthless race who recently very nearly subjugated the known galaxy. Kalendorf is one of the few agents who has escaped the Earth Alliance blockade around his home planet. Like all the Knights, he has been given one of the best educations in the galaxy and has been trained since birth in telepathic, mind control and combat techniques. He can be a ruthless killing machine, but also has great wisdom and compassion.

He was deeply cynical and suspicious of the Earth Alliance's overtures towards the defeated Velyshaans. This part of his nature is also in evidence when he agrees to go with Suz, the 'Angel of Mercy', to help present the 'human' face of the Dalek invasion. He feels a constant guilt that he accepted this rather than opt for a noble, but ultimately meaningless death. He takes out this frustration on Suz... constantly accusing her of collaboration. Deep down, however, he knows that neither of them really has a choice.

wildly in any direction they thought safe. But there was nowhere safe. The Daleks flew in from all directions. And they soon made their intentions clear.

**DALEK** All airborne units, open fire! Exterminate! Exterminate! Fire! Fire! Fire!

*Dalek guns rain down death on the crowds. Impact explosions and screaming of the victims. Crossfade to close footsteps. SUZ and KALENDORF are running hard, gasping for breath.*

**KALENDORF** (Falling) Argh! (Struggles and gasps for a moment) No, get off me!

**SUZ** It's all right, it's all right. Let me help you.

**KALENDORF** What's the point? They're going to kill us all.

**SUZ** Haven't you got anything to live for?<sup>18</sup>

*Crossfade to screams of people being exterminated by Daleks. Transitional music cue.*

### 9. Ext. Space.

*The engines of a large space cruiser, Aquitania, rumbling past. Crossfade to:*

### 10. Int. Aquitania. Lounge Bar.

*Muzak plinks away in the background. Burble of sparse conversation. The bar is by no means full. A tannoy pings.*

**TANNOY** For those of you who've just come aboard at Orion Central, on behalf of the Maximus line, welcome to the Star Cruiser Aquitania. We apologise for the delay, which has been caused by essential course alterations due to the current galactic emergency. Thank you for your attention.

*Alby gulps a drink down noisily, then slams the glass down. He belches.*

**ALBY** Hmm... yes, I'm definitely drunk. How unprofessional.

**PELLAN** (The *NEWSCASTER*) I wouldn't let it bother you. Huh. I think I'm still too... too scared to get drunk. God knows, I seem to have had enough.

**ALBY** Whatdya mean...? Scared?

**PELLAN** Well, I am.

**ALBY** Why?

**PELLAN** Why? I didn't think I was going to get out alive. That's why!

**ALBY** Oh, that. Oh... oh, yes. Shocking, isn't it? Yes. Well, my friend... Pellll... Pelululu...

**PELLAN** Pellan, Gordon Pellan, Vega VI News. Live from Vega VI, all day, every day... not any more.

**ALBY** Yes, er, well... P- (belch) -lan, the funny thing is, I'm too drunk to be scared. (Laughs)

**PELLAN** Lucky you.

**ALBY** Yes. (Laughs) Er, no, actually. Not luck at all. Time-honoured, tried and trusted planning, old son.

**PELLAN** What do you mean?

**ALBY** I always do this when things get... (suddenly drowsy) When I'm sc... When... (suddenly alert again) When I run out on some woman!

**PELLAN** Woman? Who?  
**ALBY** Suzzzz... Suzzzz... I... I think I could have... could have loved her.  
**PELLAN** (*Incredulous. Laughs*) I don't believe you.  
**ALBY** What?  
**PELLAN** You escape from a *warzone* by the skin of your teeth... And you're getting drunk because of a woman?  
**ALBY** I wouldn't waste half a drop of brandy on a Dalek. But a woman... a woman's worth a whole bottle of Southern Comfort... maybe two.  
**PELLAN** Where is she now?  
**ALBY** Hm?  
**PELLAN** This... Suz? Where is she?  
**ALBY** She... she... wouldn't leave. She didn't understand. I couldn't... couldn't *make* her understand...  
*Crossfade to:*

**11. Int. Vega VI. Spaceport.**  
*Crowd panic. Alarms sounding.*

**ALBY** Come on, Suz! We've got to go! Now!  
**SUZ** I can't just - I can't *leave now!* Don't you understand?! My mother and father - <sup>19</sup>  
**ALBY** (*Savagely*) Will be leaving now if they have any sense!  
**SUZ** No. No, Alby. They'll be waiting for me. I have to go -  
**ALBY** If you go to them, it'll be too late, Suz. Listen to me, I know the Daleks, they'll -  
**SUZ** How? How do you know them? I'd never even heard of them until this afternoon.<sup>20</sup>  
**ALBY** I can't tell you how - you just have to trust me!<sup>21</sup>  
**SUZ** (*Confused*) I... do... but, I have to find Mum and Dad.  
**ALBY** They may not be dead yet, but if they're not off this planet already, they might as well be.  
**SUZ** (*Appalled*) No, *no!* How can you say that? How can you...?  
**TANNOY** Last boarding call for Star Cruiser *Aquitania*. Last boarding call for Star Cruiser *Aquitania*.<sup>22</sup>  
**ALBY** Suz, please, I don't mean to be -  
**SUZ** (*In tears*) Go! Get away from me! Save yourself, if that's all that's important to you! (*Moving off*) But I can't leave the people I love behind!  
**ALBY** Suz!!! No! Please! (*To himself*) That's why I don't want to leave you behind, Suz.

**12. Int. Aquitania. Lounge Bar.**

**PELLAN** But you *did*.  
**ALBY** (*Drowsy*) What?  
**PELLAN** Leave her behind.  
**ALBY** Oh yeah... I did my duty.  
*Bottle and glass smash as he slumps into unconsciousness.*  
**PELLAN** Duty? What do you mean?  
*Alby snores.*



**PELLAN** Alby? Alby?  
*Snoring continues.*

### 13. Int. Dalek Vega VI Command Ship. Control Room.

*Dalek Supreme is on radio distort.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Vega VI Command to Seriphia Galaxy Control.<sup>23</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Report!

**DALEK COMMANDER** Conquest of Vega System achieved. Earth Alliance Rapid Response Fleet destroyed. Dalek Command established on planet Vega VI.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Report on enslavement of population!

**DALEK COMMANDER** As ordered, the weak, wounded and diseased have been exterminated. All surviving humanoids have been incarcerated. Planetary drilling has commenced.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Mining of mineral deposits must commence on completion of planetary drilling.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Understood.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Assessment of humanoid efficiency and mental acuity is to be maintained at all times.

**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey. Robotising plants are now under construction.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The Emperor has ordered that those subjects attaining the higher grades of achievement are to be kept under observation.

**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey.

### 14. Int. Dalek Vega VI Command Ship. Corridor.

*Footsteps along corridor. Coughing, moaning and spluttering of others in background.*

**DALEK** Move! Move! Those who cannot walk will be exterminated!  
*Close mic effort of Kalendorf groaning, struggling to walk.*

**SUZ** (*Quiet, desperate*) Keep hold of me. Keep hold of me.

**KALENDORF** (*Through pain*) Just drop me... let them kill me.

**SUZ** Shut up.

**KALENDORF** Why are you *doing* this?

**SUZ** I don't know. I don't know. *Just shut up!*

**DALEK** Halt!

*Door opens.*

**DALEK** Prisoners will enter the cell.

*Shuffling footsteps of others. KALENDORF stumbles and gasps in pain.*

**DALEK** Halt! This prisoner cannot walk!

**SUZ** Yes, he can!

**DALEK** Move away from him!

**SUZ** No! He can walk! Are you listening to me? He can walk!

**DALEK** Silence!

**SUZ** He can walk, don't you understand? He can walk! (*With the effort of dragging KALENDORF to his feet*) You see!

*KALENDORF groans.*

**DALEK** You are supporting him. Release him and move away!

**SUZ** Or what? You'll kill me too? Is that what you're saying?

Is it?

**DALEK** Silence!

**SUZ** (*Losing control*) No! No, I won't be silent! Just kill me too! That's what you do, isn't it? Kill! Kill! Kill! That's all I've seen you do since you got here! Alby was right! Alby was right! He said you'd wipe us out. Well, go ahead and do it! What are you waiting for? What are you keeping us alive for? Does it matter whether we can walk or not? Just get on with it, 'exterminate', 'exterminate', 'exterminate', 'ex - ' Go on!!!

### 15. Int. Dalek Vega VI Command Ship. Control Room.

*Communication alarm sounds.*

**DALEK AIDE** Cell Block 7 patrol leader reports humanoid exhibiting behavioural abnormality within higher-grade response parameters.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Activate observation screen.

*Buzz of activation.*<sup>24</sup>

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Well go on, then! Do it! What's the matter with you?!

**DALEK COMMANDER** Advise patrol leader to observe and take no action until ordered.

### 16. Int. Dalek Vega VI Command Ship. Corridor.

**KALENDORF** I think you've confused it.

**SUZ** Show it your ankle.

**KALENDORF** What?

**SUZ** Show it your ankle!

*Rustle of material.*

**SUZ** You see that? His ankle is bruised. Bruised! Do you know what that means? It's not broken. The bruising will go away. It'll get better. He'll be able to walk properly soon. Or is there a time limit? How soon do you need us to be able to walk? How many of us do you need? Can you kill unnecessarily? Have you *got* any plans, or are you making this all up as you go along?<sup>25</sup>

**DALEK** You will proceed into the cell! All of you! Move!

**SUZ** Why should...?

**KALENDORF** (*Harsh whisper*) Don't push your luck! Let's just go!

**SUZ** Oh... found the will to live again, have we?

*Pause.*

**DALEK** Move!!!

**KALENDORF** Yes... I have.

**SUZ** Good. (*Muttering as she moves off*) Good... good... good...

*Footsteps. Cell door closes with a hard thud.*

### 17. Int. Aquitania. Alby's Cabin.

*Alarm buzzing. Alby wakes up, very slowly, with a hangover.*

**ALBY** Wha...? Shut up... leave me alone...

*We hear him thrash around in his bed, then finally flick a switch. The alarm stops buzzing.*

**COMMS** Good morning, Mr Brook.

**ALBY** For God's sake, I didn't ask for a bleedin' alarm call.

'Cancel'!

**COMMS** Mr Brook. This is not an alarm call. This is the Communications Officer on the bridge. I have a 'Most Urgent' transmission for you on a secure channel. You are required to respond immediately.

*During the above, Alby groans, 'Oh, God'.*

**ALBY** *(Groans in defeat)* All right, all right... Patch it through.<sup>26</sup>  
*A moment of interference. It clears.*

**TANLEE** *(Distort)* Good morning, Mr Brook.

**ALBY** *(Yawning)* Good morning, Mr Tanlee, sir.

**TANLEE** Glad to see you got out alive.

**ALBY** Oh, I'm sure you are, Mr Tanlee, sir. I'm sure you are.

**TANLEE** A disastrous end to a fairly fruitless mission, by all accounts.

**ALBY** Well, sir, if I may be so bold -

**TANLEE** Which you invariably are.

**ALBY** I don't think so. I had firm information that Kalendorf was on Vega VI.

**TANLEE** Then why hadn't you found him after six months of looking?

**ALBY** Because he's a good old pro from the old school, sir. A Knight of Velyshaa. Very good at not being found. Anyway, my contact had got wind of his intention to leave Vega VI on the Star Cruise Line. I was about to go undercover as bar manager on the *Luciana*.<sup>27</sup>

**TANLEE** Oh, and there was me thinking you were considering throwing it all away for the sake of a pretty face.

**ALBY** Er... I'm not sure what you mean, sir.

**TANLEE** *(Reading)* Susan Mendes... known to her friends as Suz... geologist for the Reinsberg Institute, investigating mineral deposits on Vega VI. Never forget, Brook, there's always someone keeping tabs on you.<sup>28</sup>

**ALBY** Yes, sir. I never forget that, sir.

**TANLEE** Well you can forget *her*, Brook. She'll be dead by now.

**ALBY** *(Upset, but trying to hide it)* Yes, sir.

**TANLEE** And Kalendorf.

**ALBY** Forget Kalendorf, sir?

**TANLEE** Brook, I know you've probably been drowning your repulsively active libido in alcohol, but do try to engage your brain when called upon to do so by your paymasters... Our intelligence reports all indicate that the Daleks exterminate indigenous populations, occasionally robotising selected subjects or extracting genetic material for their reproductive processes. They tend not to leave people alive just so that B-grade security operatives can save face.

**ALBY** But, Mr Tanlee -

**TANLEE** You've missed the boat on Kalendorf, Brook. As we speak, the galaxy is descending into very probably the most catastrophic conflict in its long and turgid history. In short, ex-corporal Alby Brook, two years' penal servitude pending for petty pilfering... you have other fish to fry.<sup>29</sup>

**ALBY** Other fish, sir?

**TANLEE** A favourite expression of my ancestors. It means that a scout-ship will rendezvous with the *Aquitania* at 1100 hours your time. You will board it and receive orders for your new mission.

**ALBY** And what would that be, sir?

**TANLEE**

Oh, I'm sure the suspense is killing you, Mr Brook.

**18. Int. Aquitania. Promenade Deck.**

*Mutter of polite conversation of passengers looking out on the stars. A Tannoy pings.*

**TANNOY** Welcome to the Promenade Deck. The *Aquitania's* unique transparent dome, measuring over 5000 metres in diameter, affords passengers a breathtaking, panoramic view of the starscape. We are currently passing the L'Garshoo Nebula, which will be clearly visible for the next three hours.

*Alby's determined footsteps.*

**ALBY** *(To himself, cynical)* How fascinating. Time... 1056 hours. Nearly time to leave, Alby.

**PELLAN** *(Distant)* Alby! Alby! Over here, old chap!!!

**ALBY** *(To himself)* Oh, God... not that bore...

*Footsteps as he moves off. Running footsteps after him.*

**PELLAN** *(Out of breath)* Alby! It's me... Gordon. *(Chuckles)* Don't tell me, you drank so much you don't remember me?

**ALBY** *(Faking it)* Oh... oh, yeah. Hi... er, Gordon. Look, I can't stop and talk just now, I'm -

**PELLAN** No, listen, old chap. I was thinking about what you were saying about your woman -

**ALBY** My... woman?

**PELLAN** Yes... Oh, don't tell me you've forgotten her already! I went to a lot of trouble for you, old chap. Suz, wasn't it?

**ALBY** *(Taken aback at the mention of her name)* Er... yeah... yes.

**PELLAN** Yes. I checked in with some of my contacts at the Vega News Agency. They managed to charter a ship. They're still broadcasting... Maybe a job there for me. Could probably do with a decent anchor man... If they don't get themselves shot down, of course! Ha!

**ALBY** Yes... yes... Er, what did you mean, exactly? About Suz?

**PELLAN** Well, it's just that they've been picking up transmissions from these Dalek creatures on Vega VI. Most of it pretty grim... but one of the things that comes across loud and clear is that they're keeping a lot of the population alive.

**ALBY** A - alive? What for?

**PELLAN** No idea.

**ALBY** *(Lost in thought)* Alive...

*Pause.*

**PELLAN** Well... I just thought... just *thought* that could mean there's a fair chance your lady friend might still be alive. Not much - I mean, I don't want to raise your hopes unnecessarily... but... well... Are you all right, old chap?

**ALBY** I... Yes, yes. Thanks, Gordon. I... er, I have to go.

**PELLAN** Go? Where to?

**ALBY** Duty calls.

**PELLAN** Duty? You said something about that last -  
*ALBY's footsteps.*<sup>30</sup>

**PELLAN** Oh. *(Calling after him)* Well, good luck, Alby! *(To himself)* Extraordinary fellow.

### 19. Ext. Vega VI.

*A harsh wind howls. Establish. Door of Dalek ship opens. A ramp crashes down onto the barren soil.*<sup>31</sup>

**DALEK TANNON** Slave workers will disembark from mothership and follow directions! Slave workers will disembark from mothership and follow directions!

*The sound of pitiful moans and groans of slaves. Footsteps on rampway.*

**DALEK** Move! Move!

**SUZ** (*Quietly*) Lean on me. Lean on me.

**KALENDORF** (*Just about coping*) I wonder what they've got in store for us now? Backbreaking work, no doubt. Maybe you should've let them kill me.

**SUZ** You don't mean that.

**KALENDORF** No... damn you, I don't. The survival instinct. It's like... an affliction. And I'm so... so hungry. I think I'd do anything just to eat *something*.

**SUZ** That's a point. You!<sup>32</sup>

**KALENDORF** God, no. Don't antagonise them again.

**SUZ** You! Listen to me!

**DALEK** Slave workers will remain silent!

**SUZ** When are you going to feed us? We'll die if you don't feed us! Is that what you want?

**DALEK** Food will be distributed while you are working.

**SUZ** Working? What are we going to be working on?

**DALEK** Move!!!

### 20. Int. Vega VI. Dalek Control.

**DALEK** This humanoid female continues to exhibit behavioural characteristics within high-grade response parameters.

**DALEK COMMANDER** The Dalek Supreme is monitoring her. Continue transmitting all visual records of her behaviour to Dalek Control in the Seriphia Galaxy.

**DALEK** What is the significance of this female?

**DALEK COMMANDER** It is the order of the Emperor. Obey without question!

**DALEK** (*Subdued*) I obey.

### 21. Int. Vega VI. Mineshaft.

*An enormous lift door crashes shut. The lift descends.*

**DALEK** Slave workers descending to subterranean level 1.

**NARRATOR** The Daleks had drilled a series of gigantic shafts deep into the crust of Vega VI. Then they had taken away their sophisticated machinery, preferring to set us to work with little more than our bare hands.<sup>33</sup>

### 22. Int. Vega VI. Sub-Level 1.

*A pickaxe crunches into rock. The groans and coughs of slave workers.*

**NARRATOR** We laboured at the rockface in an underground chamber...

ceaselessly... thousands of us, breathing in the same stale air. Only a small number of Daleks watched over us, but they had their vicious guard-dogs: human beings whose minds they'd altered somehow.

*A whip cracks.*

**ROBOMAN** Get on with your work! Keep working!

**NARRATOR** (*Contained hatred*) Like a nightmare parody of some paramilitary, fascistic thug from old Earth... They wore blank, dark, ill-fitting uniforms. Their faces were scarred and disfigured with brutally grafted metallic implants... keeping them in constant contact with their alien masters.

*Thud of a blow to Suz's body.*

**SUZ** Uugh!

*She groans in agony, barely conscious.*

**ROBOMAN** Keep working!

**KALENDORF** Leave her alone! Can't you see she's tired? We're all tired!

**ROBOMAN** Keep working!

*A thud as the Roboman lashes out at Kalendorf.*

**KALENDORF** Argh!

**SUZ** (*Dragging herself back to life*) It's all right... all right.

*Pickaxe hits rock.*

**SUZ** I'm... I'm working. See. I'm working.

*Another pickaxe hit.*

**KALENDORF** So am I... so am I.

*Pickaxes continue to hit.*

**ROBOMAN** Do not stop!

*Footsteps on rock as he walks off.*

**ROBOMAN** (*Distant*) Do not stop! Keep working! All of you!!! Keep working!!!

*Suz and Kalendorf continue to work, but they are utterly exhausted.*

*Their efforts are slow and laborious.*

**SUZ** Thanks.

*Sounds of effort as they work.*

**SUZ** What is your name?

**KALENDORF** Hm? What?

**SUZ** Your name... Mine's Suz.

**KALENDORF** Does it matter? We're just two slaves who died of exhaustion... and for what?

*Picks up a rock.*

**KALENDORF** To hack chunks of blue, crystalline rock out of a dead world.<sup>34</sup>

**SUZ** Veganite.

**KALENDORF** What?

**SUZ** That's what we called it... for a joke... at the Reinsberg Institute. Rare deposits of it on the surface... we'd only just located a rich underground strata -<sup>35</sup>

**KALENDORF** And the Daleks somehow knew it was here. What does it do?

**SUZ** That's classified.

*Kalendorf starts to laugh. In his exhausted state, the laughter becomes uncontrollable. Suz joins in.*

**ROBOMAN** Stop that! You! Stop that!

*Their laughter continues.*

**DALEK** Do not make that noise! Silence! Robomen will restrain them!<sup>36</sup>

*Footsteps. Much punching and kicking. Suz and Kalendorf groan in pain and agony. Their laughter stops with the first gasps of pain.*

**DALEK** You will continue with your work!  
*Sounds of Suz and Kalendorf dragging themselves across the rock. A pickaxe feebly hits rock. Another feeble hit. They gasp and groan in pain and exhaustion.*

**NARRATOR** What is it that makes a person go on... even when every breath is pain... and all hope is ended? Fear of dying, perhaps, mixed with some involuntary, purely physical desire to live... (A harsh, empty chuckle) A lethal cocktail guaranteed to prolong suffering.

*A pickaxe hit.*

**KALENDORF** (Wearily) Kalendorf.

**SUZ** What?

**KALENDORF** My... my name...

**SUZ** Your name?

**KALENDORF** Kalendorf.

*Suz sighs. A pickaxe hit.*

**SUZ** Suz.

**KALENDORF** I know. I remember... It was nice knowing you... Suz.

**NARRATOR** But even that desire cannot last forever.

### 23. Int. Scout-Ship. Flight Deck.

*Door slides open. Hovering drudger FX.*

**DRUDGER** Welcome to Scout-Ship X49, agent Alby Brook. I am your Drudger Pilot. Your flight plan and sealed mission orders are stored in the onboard termin -<sup>37</sup>

**ALBY** Any chance of a coffee, pilot?

**DRUDGER** I am not programmed to provide -

**ALBY** I thought drudgers were programmed for independent thought... flexibility... that sort of thing.

*A strangled, confused bleep.*

**ALBY** Black... two sugars, please.

*Another bleep.*

**ALBY** Well, off you go, then.

**DRUDGER** (Slightly confused) Coffee... complying.

*It hovers off. A door opens and closes.*

**ALBY** (To himself) So, what've we got here?

*Sound of information appearing on screen.*

**COMPUTER** Proceed to Lopra System. Contact Espeelius.

**ALBY** (To himself) Espeelius? Espeelius... who the hell's that?

(To COMPUTER) Er... co-ordinates?

**COMPUTER** Co-ordinates 026943808928255428.

*Bleep of controls.*

**ALBY** Huh, Tanlee's putting me out to grass. That's a long haul... the other side of the galaxy. (Change of thought) And a long way from Vega VI... and you, Suz. If you're still alive. (Long sigh) Maybe I should just forget -<sup>38</sup>

*Suddenly, a massive explosion.*

**ALBY** Argh! What the hell was that?<sup>39</sup>

An alarm sounds. Door opens and closes.

**DRUDGER** The Maximus Star Cruiser *Aquitania* is under fire from three Dalek assault craft. Intercepting incoming transmission to *Aquitania*.

**ALBY** You've spilt my coffee!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Attention Earth passenger cruiser! Prepare to be boarded. All humanoids aboard your vessel are now citizens of the Dalek Empire. Resist and you will be exterminated.<sup>40</sup>

**ALBY** Pilot, get us out of here! Now!

**DRUDGER** I will set course for the Lopra System.

**ALBY** No, I need an evasive course - (*Frustrated*) Oh, God, let me do it.

*Controls bleep and squawk. Thrusters firing.*

**DRUDGER** You are disobeying your orders from Earth Command.

**ALBY** To hell with my orders. Disengage scout-ship from *Aquitania* now!

*Take-off FX.*

**ALBY** That's it, we're away.

*Impact explosions.*

**DRUDGER** One Dalek assault craft is pursuing us. The remaining two are docking with the *Aquitania*.

*Another impact.*

**ALBY** Shut up and activate the rear guns. Return fire.

**DRUDGER** That course of action is inadvisable.

**ALBY** I don't want advice, I need action. Open fire, damn you!

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Controls bleep. Guns firing.*

**DRUDGER** Direct hits. Dalek Assault craft now breaking off pursuit.

**ALBY** They gave up pretty easily. (*Laughs*) Seems they've got other fish to fry... (*Chuckles. To himself*) And so have I, Tanlee... so have I. (*Aloud*) Well... No chance of following my mission orders now.

**DRUDGER** Explain.

**ALBY** The Daleks have obviously made an unexpected advance in this sector. I daren't try to contact Earth Command now. Every Dalek in the area will be listening.

**DRUDGER** What course of action do you propose?

**ALBY** Ooh... I'm afraid it's on a 'need to know' basis, old son. Sure you understand.

## 24. Int. Vega VI. Mineshaft.

**NARRATOR** The Daleks worked the frightened, exhausted survivors of Vega VI, ceaselessly... for hours... for longer than seemed possible. Hundreds had already collapsed and died at the rock face. But still the Daleks bellowed their commands, still the Robomen brandished their whips and clubs, often lashing and jabbing at corpses... as if they'd forgotten how to recognise the living. Finally, the last few fell to their knees, unable to work a moment longer, their spirits... broken. Even the Robomen were unable to fight off the all-consuming fatigue.<sup>41</sup>

**ROBOMAN** (*Exhausted*) Master... they... they will not work. We... we cannot make them work.<sup>42</sup>

**DALEK** The work has not been completed. They *must* work. Force them! Force them to work!!!



**ROBOMAN** I... I... please, I cannot make them work. Please, master...<sup>43</sup>

**DALEK** You will obey your masters! The humanoids must continue with their work!

**ROBOMAN** I... I try to obey... I... I... (*Lets out a groan and collapses*)

**ROBOMAN** *ROBOMAN collapses onto rubble.*

**DALEK** Get up! Get up and obey your orders!!!

**ROBOMAN** (*Moaning pitifully*) Please... master... must... must sleep.<sup>44</sup>

**DALEK** Exterminate!

*Dalek gun fires.*

**ROBOMAN** Aaaaaaargh!

**SUZ** (*Very weak*) Are you satisfied now?<sup>45</sup>

**DALEK** Silence!

**SUZ** Kill me... You might as well... Kill us all. We... we can't work. You've given us no food. No rest.

## 25. Int. Vega VI. Dalek Control.

*Alarm sounds.*

**DALEK** The humanoids are exhausted and unable to work. The female still defies our orders.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Establish direct hyper-link to Dalek Supreme in Seriphia Galaxy immediately.

**DALEK** I obey.

*Hyper-link FX establish. DALEK SUPREME is on 'distort'.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Report.

**DALEK COMMANDER** The time has come.

**DALEK SUPREME** Excellent. Show me.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Activating mineshaft monitor screen.<sup>46</sup>

*Monitor screen FX.*

**SUZ** (*Distort. Exhausted*) Don't you see? You promised us food... but you didn't feed us. You gave us no rest. Don't you understand us...? We can't work forever without rest or food. We'll die. Is that what you want?

**DALEK SUPREME** Relay my commands to the Dalek in the mineshaft.

**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey.

*Control activates.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Relay established.

**DALEK SUPREME** Tell her: 'We will give you food now. Then you will recommence work'.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) We will give you food now. Then you will recommence work.

**SUZ** (*Distort. Laughs weakly*) You just don't get it, do you? We're not machines... not like you.

**DALEK SUPREME** If you do not work, we will exterminate you.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) If you do not work, we will exterminate you.

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Go ahead. You've finally done it, don't you see? You've destroyed our will to live. You've destroyed our hope.

**DALEK SUPREME** Terminate command relay.

*Relay command FX off.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Terminated. Are they to be exterminated?<sup>47</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** No. Everything is going according to plan.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** But the ore quotas have not been achieved.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Correct.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** And veganite is too volatile to be mined by our machinery.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Correct. You will allow the humanoids to rest.<sup>48</sup>  
**DALEK COMMANDER** And the female?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Have her brought to your control centre. I will speak with her.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** To what purpose?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Do not question the Dalek Supreme! Obey!!!  
**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey.

## 26. Int. Seriphia Galaxy. Dalek Command.

**EMPEROR** You have done well.<sup>49</sup>  
**DALEK SUPREME** Yes, Emperor. The fragments of data obtained from the Kar-Charrat Library have yielded invaluable information on the human mind.  
**EMPEROR** Those fragments have given us access to wisdom on matters previously beyond our understanding. Dangerous wisdom which must not be communicated to the rest of the Dalek race. Is that understood?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Understood, Emperor.  
**EMPEROR** Only you and I have accessed the Kar-Charrat data. No other must see it.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Understood.  
**EMPEROR** You will speak to the humanoid female alone. You know what you must do?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Yes, Emperor. I must give her... hope.<sup>50</sup>

## 27. Int. Vega VI. Dalek Control.

*Door opens. Suz's exhausted breathing.*

**DALEK** This is the humanoid female.  
**SUZ** What are you going to do to me?  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Move to the chair. Move!  
*We hear Suz's breathing and limping footsteps as she struggles to the chair and sits.*  
**SUZ** What now? Where are you going?  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Look at the screen. The Dalek Supreme wishes to speak to you. (*Moving into distance*) Do not attempt to escape or you will be exterminated.  
*The door closes.*  
**SUZ** Hello? Hello? Anyone there?  
*Hyper-link clears.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) I am the Dalek Supreme.  
**SUZ** Do you expect me to be impressed?  
**DALEK SUPREME** I am speaking to you from the Seriphia Galaxy.  
**SUZ** Never heard of it.  
**DALEK SUPREME** It is a galaxy we created from a force known as the Apocalypse Element.

**SUZ** Why are you telling me this?

**DALEK SUPREME** For many of your years, we have been creating a powerbase in this galaxy. A force beyond your imaginings in its size and power.

**SUZ** I'm not interested in your propaganda. (*Coughing fit*) What do you want with me?

**DALEK SUPREME** It is important that you understand the futility of resisting the Daleks. We have superior numbers. We have the superior technology. We *will* conquer your galaxy. It is only a matter of time.

**SUZ** Oh really... well, it's important *you* understand that you won't get what you want if you work us to death.

Pause.

**SUZ** (*Ironic*) Sorry... is this going over your head?

**DALEK SUPREME** If it is important that I understand... explain it to me.

**SUZ** Are you serious?

Pause.

**SUZ** All right... It is obviously important to you that we... that we work in your mines.

Pause.

**SUZ** Well... is it?

**DALEK SUPREME** Correct. Continue.

**SUZ** The... (*stops herself from saying 'veganite'*) the... blue ore you're making us dig out. It's not exactly friendly to mechanical mining, is it? So you need us to do it. And you obviously haven't got enough of it, have you?<sup>51</sup>

Pause.

**SUZ** Have you?

**DALEK SUPREME** You are correct. Continue.

**SUZ** So... Well, if you understood human beings a bit better, you'd let us rest.<sup>52</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** But then the work will stop.

**SUZ** (*Angry*) It already has stopped, hasn't it?! And if you try to work us any harder, it'll stop permanently, because we'll all be dead.

**DALEK SUPREME** We can obtain more slaves from other planets we conquer.

**SUZ** (*Exhausted*) Yes... yes... of course... you can keep working your slaves to death and keep replacing them until you get what you want. Just do that... I don't care - I don't know why you're even asking me about this anyway.

Pause.

**SUZ** Just kill me and get it over with.

Pause.

**DALEK SUPREME** I have been watching you... Susan.

**SUZ** How do you know my name?

**DALEK SUPREME** I - have - been - watching - you.

**SUZ** (*Suspicious*) What do you mean?

**DALEK SUPREME** You are not afraid.

**SUZ** Huh... I am.

**DALEK SUPREME** But you defy the Daleks. Why?

**SUZ** 'Why?' I don't know why...

**DALEK SUPREME** Is it perhaps because you hope to communicate with us?

**SUZ** Communicate? What do you mean?  
**DALEK SUPREME** You wanted to show us that your friend would be able to work if we gave his injury time to heal. You wanted us to feed your people so that you would not die of starvation.  
**SUZ** Well... obviously.  
**DALEK SUPREME** You want us to show... pity.  
**SUZ** (*Confused*) I... I don't know. (*Defensive*) What are you trying to say? What do you want - ?  
**DALEK SUPREME** You want us to give you hope.  
**SUZ** Hope? What can creatures like you possibly know of hope?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes... You will sleep now.  
**SUZ** Sleep? You're going to let me sleep?  
**DALEK SUPREME** The other slaves are sleeping. You can sleep. And when you awaken, we - will - speak - again.<sup>53</sup>

## 28. Int. Scout-Ship.

**DRUDGER** We are now entering the Vega System. This sector is occupied by a high concentration of Dalek forces.  
**ALBY** You don't say. Funny... I happened to know that already. Plot a course for Vega VI.  
**DRUDGER** It is inadvisable to proceed any further.  
**ALBY** Yeah... I knew that too. (*To himself*) Now what... now what? God, what am I doing? Risking extermination just for the sake of a woman? You've got it bad, Alby old son, you've got it bad. And it's only a matter of time before a Dalek ship spots us if I don't think of something soon.<sup>54</sup>  
*Alarm sounds.*  
**ALBY** Er, why don't I keep my mouth shut?  
**DRUDGER** Dalek transolar disc patrol approaching.  
**ALBY** Transolar discs? How many of them?  
**DRUDGER** I am reading twenty discs with single Dalek occupancy.  
**ALBY** Oh. And well-appointed bedrooms, I take it?  
**DRUDGER** Please clarify.  
**ALBY** Never mind. Any sign of their mothership?  
**DRUDGER** No other readings at this time.  
**ALBY** Well, that's something, I suppose.  
*An impact explosion.*  
**DRUDGER** They are firing at us.  
**ALBY** I gathered that.  
*Comms bleeping.*  
**DRUDGER** Incoming communication.  
**DALEK** (*Distort*) Attention! Attention! You will surrender to the Daleks or be exterminated!  
*Comms bleep.*  
**ALBY** Hello. Could you say that again, please? I'm a little hard of hearing.  
*An impact explosion.*  
**ALBY** Obviously not. Open fire forward weapons. Full thrust and 180 turn. Now!  
**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Guns fire. Thrusters fire. Engine power continues to rise.*

**DRUDGER** Three targets destroyed.

*An impact explosion.*

**DRUDGER** Dalek transolar discs pursuing.

**ALBY** Increase speed!

**DRUDGER** Increasing speed beyond safety levels will take fuel cells beyond regeneration point.

**ALBY** I'm not thinking about what we'll be doing tomorrow! I want to get away now! Do it!

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Engine whine rises in pitch. Rattling of hull.*

**ALBY** (Laughs) That caught 'em by surprise.

**DRUDGER** Dalek transolar discs now increasing speed. They are gaining on us.

**ALBY** Fire rear guns.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Guns firing.*

**DRUDGER** Two additional targets destroyed.

**ALBY** Keep firing.

*Impact explosion.*

**DRUDGER** Dalek firepower targeting our engines.

*Huge explosion. Whine of engine power falls rapidly.*

**DRUDGER** Drive units disabled. Engine power nil. Velocity decreasing.

**ALBY** You don't say. Damn!

**DALEK** (Distort) Surrender! Surrender!

*Scanner beeping.*

**ALBY** What the hell's that?

**DRUDGER** Large vessel approaching.

**ALBY** Oh great... the Dalek mothership.

*Many impact explosions (no more than 15!). The ship rattles and creaks.*

**ALBY** Oh God. This is it. What the hell was I thinking about, coming back to Vega?

**DRUDGER** The Daleks and their transolar discs are being destroyed.

**ALBY** What? Let me see.

*Controls beep.*

**ALBY** That ship... it's... it's an Earth Alliance ship! It's blowing up the Daleks! (Triumphant laugh) Yes! Get me a communications link-up.

**DRUDGER** Complying. Communications active.

*Comms beep.*

**ALBY** Hello Earth Alliance ship. Come in please, over.

*A news theme tune plays on distort.*

**VO** (Distort) This is Vega Free News, live all day, every day.

**ALBY** (Laughs) My God, they did it! Pellan was right! They did it!<sup>55</sup>

*News theme builds to a crescendo.*

## **29. Int. Vega VI. Mining Area.**

*Kalendorf stirs and wakes up. Footsteps approach.*

**KALENDORF** (Groggy) Suz? Suz? What happened? Where've you been?

**SUZ** They let us sleep. All of us. For hours.

*Sounds of people waking up. Spluttering etc.*

**SUZ** How do you feel?  
**KALENDORF** Well... better... Still hungry though.  
**SUZ** Here. They gave me some food.  
*Sound of plastic container being opened.*  
**KALENDORF** Doesn't look very appetising.  
**SUZ** Some kind of dried nutrient concentrate... Does the trick though. Makes you feel better. Have you seen the Robomen?  
**KALENDORF** (*Disbelief*) They're... they're handing out more of that stuff... What's going on? Why the change of heart?  
**SUZ** You must eat, Kalendorf.  
**KALENDORF** So I can carry on working?  
**SUZ** Yes... and living.  
*Kalendorf sighs. Sound of food being taken. Kalendorf bites and swallows.*  
**SUZ** Not too bad?  
**KALENDORF** (*Eating*) Hmm... not too bad. So, what happened?  
**SUZ** After you collapsed... after we'd all collapsed, they dragged me to their control room. I spoke to their leader. The Dalek Supreme.  
**KALENDORF** (*Surprised*) Dalek Supreme? You spoke to him?  
**SUZ** What do you know about these creatures? I'd never heard of them before all this.<sup>56</sup>  
**KALENDORF** (*Secretive*) Never mind how I know. (*Continues eating*) So you spoke to him. What did you say?<sup>57</sup>  
**SUZ** That we needed food... and sleep.  
**KALENDORF** And so we got it? That simple?  
**SUZ** I know. It's like... like he wanted to learn from me... but it was almost as if he knew... knew what I was thinking.  
**KALENDORF** Suz, listen to me... you mustn't trust the Daleks. It doesn't matter what they say, you mustn't -  
**SUZ** I don't, I don't... But we're alive, aren't we? We've got... hope.<sup>58</sup>  
**KALENDORF** Hope? Hope of what? More backbreaking work? Hope of being fried alive if we make a sound or put one foot wrong?  
**SUZ** But if they feed us... and let us sleep... We'll grow strong. They won't have broken our spirit. We can... we can maybe find a way to fight back.  
**KALENDORF** With what?  
**SUZ** I don't know. But at least now we have some time to think about it.

### 30. Int. Vega News Ship. Airlock Reception.

*A huge, echoing, metallic clunk.*

**TANNOY** Scout-ship now secured in docking bay. Pressurisation commencing.

*A massive hissing of air. It reaches a crescendo and tails off. Door opens. Alby's tentative footsteps.*

**ALBY** Hello? Anyone about?

*Another door opens.*

**ALBY** (*Gobsmacked*) My God, it's... er... it's - <sup>59</sup>

**PELLAN** Pellan. Gordon Pellan! Welcome aboard, Alby. The moment the captain spotted a scout-ship, I had a funny feeling it'd be you.

**ALBY** What the hell are you doing here? I thought the *Aquitania* was taken by the Daleks.

**PELLAN** It was. (*Downbeat*) Not a very pleasant experience.

**ALBY** What happened? How did you get away?

**PELLAN** Some of the security guards decided to put up a fight.

**ALBY** (*Grave, catching on*) Oh, I see.

**PELLAN** The Daleks boarded. They went wild, started exterminating indiscriminately. It was chaos... a massacre. Somehow... don't ask me how... I managed to get away in a lifepod.

**ALBY** You were lucky.

**PELLAN** It doesn't feel that way.

**ALBY** What d'you mean?

**PELLAN** I just ran. I just... ran. You know? It's like I didn't care a damn about anyone else. Those... voices. And the screaming. I remember... climbing over people... people screaming for help. I didn't care. I just wanted to get out. (*Sighs, reliving it*) Oh, God...<sup>60</sup>

**ALBY** (*Awkward*) Yeah... well, steady on, Pellan, old son. All's fair in love and war, and all that. At least you're alive. Don't beat yourself up about it. Tell me, do they have a bar on this ship?

### 31. Int. Seriphia Galaxy. Dalek Command.

**DALEK** Report for the Dalek Supreme.<sup>61</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** Speak.

**DALEK** Dalek forces continue to advance. Earth Alliance ships are retreating in all sectors.

**DALEK SUPREME** They will attempt to regroup and counter-attack.

**DALEK** Battle computers in all our fleets have anticipated this, but warn of energy and raw material depletion.<sup>62</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** All conquered planets will be exploited for their technological and industrial resources. Mineral ores must be mined for the building of Dalek ships and the fuelling of our power units. Slave labour will be used in order to conserve energy.

**DALEK** Battle computers warn that slave labour is slow and inefficient.

**DALEK SUPREME** Not if it is utilised effectively. The Emperor has a plan that will achieve this. Continue with your report.<sup>63</sup>

**DALEK** There is an Earth Alliance ship still at liberty in the Vega System. It is transmitting anti-Dalek propaganda. Shall I give the order for it to be destroyed?

**DALEK SUPREME** No. I will give that order when the Emperor deems it necessary.

**DALEK** Understood. Work on Vega VI has fallen behind schedule. Productivity targets have not been achieved. The slave workforce is... resting and eating.

**DALEK SUPREME** Understood. I will give the order for work to recommence... soon.

### 32. Int. Vega VI. Mining Area.

*General hubbub of contented workers. Some muted laughter.*

**SUZ** (*Teasing*) You should see your face. Very grim.

**KALENDORF** (*Grim*) I just don't trust what I'm seeing... It's making me nervous.

**SUZ** What? People who thought they were going to die regaining some hope?

**KALENDORF** They're still going to die.

**SUZ** How do you know? How can any of us know that?

**KALENDORF** Because it's what the Daleks do. What do you think happens when it's all over? When they've got what they want? Do you think they just say, 'Thanks for the help guys' and then leave?<sup>64</sup>

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** Wake up, Suz. These are the creatures who flattened every city on this planet... blotted out the sun, choked up the atmosphere. They came screaming out of the skies gunning down anyone who wasn't fast enough to get out of the way. These are the creatures who wanted to kill me because I couldn't walk.

**SUZ** But they didn't kill you, did they? You're alive... We're *all* still alive. Aren't we?

**KALENDORF** For now. But for how long?

**DALEK** Susan Mendes. You will come with me.

**KALENDORF** (*Close*) Time for another cosy chat?

**SUZ** (*To DALEK*) Very well.

### 33. Int. Vega News Ship. Canteen.

*General canteen hubbub. Clattering of trays. Cutlery etc.*

**PELLAN** (*Approaching*) There's a table here.

*Dragging of chairs etc as they sit.*

**PELLAN** No alcohol, I'm afraid... and the food's rationed.

**ALBY** Oh, no worries... I'm just happy to be alive.

*Alby takes a mouthful of food.*

**ALBY** Talking of which, how come you lot are here?

**PELLAN** Well, I told you Vega News persuaded the Earth Alliance to let them have a ship. When I jettisoned from the *Aquitania*, I set a course for this system.<sup>65</sup>

**ALBY** Bit of a long shot.

**PELLAN** You're right there. I'd gone into a coma by the time they picked me up.

**ALBY** They might never have picked you up.

**PELLAN** I know. But even that's better than being captured by the Daleks.

**ALBY** Yeah... yeah. (*Munching food*) But how come this ship hasn't had any trouble with the Daleks? I mean, the Vega System's their bridgehead in our galaxy. It must be swarming with the little bleeders.

**PELLAN** We've had our fair share of trouble.

**ALBY** Couldn't see much damage to the hull when I was entering your docking bay. You've been lucky.

**PELLAN** Maybe the Daleks just think we're small-fry... not worth bothering with.

**ALBY** Hmm... Maybe. Maybe...

### 34. Int. Vega VI. Dalek Control.

*Door opens.*



**DALEK** Enter and sit in the chair.  
*Footsteps. She settles in the chair.*

**SUZ** Same routine?

**DALEK** Face the screen. (*Moving off*) If you attempt to escape, you will be exterminated.  
*Door closes.*

**SUZ** Bye-bye.  
*Hyper-link clears.*

**SUZ** (*To herself*) Here we go again.

**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes.

**SUZ** Yes.

**DALEK SUPREME** Do you still wish to die?

**SUZ** What?

**DALEK SUPREME** Do you still wish to die?  
*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Answer!

**SUZ** I don't understand the question.

**DALEK SUPREME** When we last spoke, you said, 'Just - kill - me - and - get - it - over - with'.<sup>66</sup>  
*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Do you acknowledge that those were your words?

**SUZ** (*Reluctant*) Yes... I do.<sup>67</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** Do they represent your feelings now?  
*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Answer!

**SUZ** No... no they don't. But you know that, don't you? Why ask?

**DALEK SUPREME** Why do you no longer wish for death?

**SUZ** What do you want me to say?

**DALEK SUPREME** I wish you to speak the truth. Answer!

**SUZ** (*Sighs*) I was tired... exhausted... *totally* exhausted. Death didn't seem very far away.

**DALEK SUPREME** And now?

**SUZ** All right, you've proved your point.

**DALEK SUPREME** And now?! Answer!!!

**SUZ** (*Angry*) And now you've given us hope! Yes, I know! But what's the point? You're only going to work us to death in the end... or kill us when you don't need us any more.

**DALEK SUPREME** That is what your friend, Kalendorf, believes.

**SUZ** You're still watching me?

**DALEK SUPREME** Every move you make, we can see. Every sound you utter, we can hear.

**SUZ** So... is Kalendorf right?

**DALEK SUPREME** That is up to you.

**SUZ** Just say what you mean. Stop playing games.

**DALEK SUPREME** The Daleks need veganite. It has to be mined in large quantities. We must use slave labour. It is of no concern to us whether you slaves live or die, but if you can devise a system of working which will both satisfy our productivity targets and sustain human life, then we will consider it.

**SUZ** Why?

**DALEK SUPREME** Because we recognise that human beings need hope to survive. If they survive, then they are productive.

**SUZ** Why not devise such a system yourself? Why are you asking me to do it?

**DALEK SUPREME** The human factor.

**SUZ** What?

**DALEK SUPREME** That which differentiates human beings from the Daleks.

### **35. Int. Vega News Ship. Studios.**

*Door opens. In the background, a news bulletin is burbling away.*

**BULLETIN** Reports coming in from the remaining comms-beacons in the Vega Prime sector confirm continuous movement of Dalek ships bound for L'Garshoo Nebula. Coded reports from Earth Command confirm that this is the furthestmost point of the Dalek advance and that the advance is slowing. Earth forces have already regrouped and retaken a number of key strategic systems. For security reasons, of course, we cannot reveal precise information on this, but sources at Earth Command are optimistic that this may be the turning point.

*Jingle plays.*

**BULLETIN** It's 0450 Vega Time and you're listening to Free Vega News, the voice of liberation in the Vega System. Coming up, Gordon Pellan gives us a rundown of Dalek cruiser movements and discusses anti-Dalek combat measures with Ley Forthal of the Earth Alliance Special Forces.

*Music fades in. Over all this...*

**PELLAN** Hi, come in, Brook.

**ALBY** Thanks. Quite an impressive rig you've got here.<sup>68</sup>

**PELLAN** Thanks. Oh, by the way, good news about your ship... The engineering guys have managed to fix up your engines.

**ALBY** Thanks... (*Melancholy*) Although where I'll be going next, I've no idea.

**PELLAN** Well, I did my best for you.

**ALBY** Sorry... no, I appreciate it, Pellan. Thanks.<sup>69</sup>

Pause.

**ALBY** So... Do you know who exactly is picking up your broadcasts?

**PELLAN** There are pockets of survivors all over the Vega System. Our fly-bys have confirmed that. We receive the odd call-sign from them.

**ALBY** Risky... for them and you.

**PELLAN** We're using low-band audio frequencies only. The Daleks don't seem to pick up on it most of the time... too much hi-definition holographic chatter beaming around their command network.

**ALBY** You mean they're too busy to notice? Doesn't sound like the Daleks to me.<sup>70</sup>

**PELLAN** How come you're such an expert on the Daleks?<sup>71</sup>

**ALBY** Oh... I've done my homework.

**PELLAN** Homework?

**ALBY** (*Changing subject*) When we spoke on the *Aquitania*, you mentioned something about monitoring Dalek communications on Vega VI.

**PELLAN** Oh, I see. You really can't keep your mind off that girl of yours, can you? What was her name... Susan Mendes, wasn't it?<sup>72</sup>

**ALBY** Yeah... Suz. Heard anything?

**PELLAN** Well, I know she's important to you, Brook... But I honestly don't think we're going to hear her name mentioned in Dalek dispatches, do you? Hardly their number one concern at the moment, is she?

### 36. Int. Vega VI. Mining Area.

*Background burble of slaves relaxing. Footsteps arrive and stop.*

**KALENDORF** So, what did he have to say for himself this time, your chum the Dalek Supreme?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** (*Concerned*) What's the matter, Suz?

**SUZ** This whole place is bugged. They know everything we say and do the moment it happens. (*Carefully*) So, if there was something... 'personal' I wanted to share with you... It wouldn't be personal anymore.

**KALENDORF** I see. Er... come here.

**SUZ** What?

**KALENDORF** Closer. (*Quiet and close*) Hold me.

*Rustling sound as they hug.*

**SUZ** (*Close*) What's the matter, you want them to think we're lovers? What are we going to do, whisper in each other's ears? I wouldn't like to bet they couldn't hear that either.<sup>73</sup>

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) I'd like to see them try to hear this.

**SUZ** Oh my God, you're -

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Think it, think it, Suz... don't say it.

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) Can - you... hear - me?

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Good girl. Now listen, we probably don't have long before they split us up. I'm an agent from the Knights of Velyshaa... they train us all in telepathy.

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) Knights of...? Didn't we have a war with you once?

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Centuries ago, yes. You beat us hollow, you'll be pleased to hear - but never mind that. What has the Dalek Supreme asked you to do?

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) He wants me to make a speech... to everyone... Organise work patterns... give us hope.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Do you trust him?

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) No. But I don't see what else I can do.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) I see your point. You'll just have to -

**DALEK** Susan Mendes... It is time.

**SUZ** Yes... yes, of course.

**DALEK** Move away from that slave! Move!

*Footsteps.*

**SUZ** All right... all right...

**DALEK** You will stand here... and speak. Speak to the other slaves.

**NARRATOR** The survivors of Vega turned to look at the girl. A dull silence descended in that vast cavern. A simple fear of humiliation welled up inside her... Then she looked at her friend Kalendorf. He nodded the slightest of nods, the corners of his mouth hinting at the most secret of smiles. But his warmth and the sight of a thousand grey faces needing hope made that fear evaporate.<sup>74</sup>

*Suz's voice echoes around the vast cavern.*

**SUZ** (Loudly) My name is Susan! Can you hear me? There's so many of us... Can those who can hear, pass what I say on to the others? Yes?

*Some random shouts of 'yes' etc.*

**SUZ** (Amused for a moment) All right, all right. You'll have to bear with me. (After a deep breath) My name is Susan... you can call me Suz. I am like you. A slave of the Daleks. But I stood up to them. And they noticed. I told them we needed food and rest. They gave it.<sup>75</sup>

*Some muted cheers.*

**SUZ** Now they don't care whether or not we live or die. But they do want us to work. That is their only concern. Now... it's as simple as this... If we work in shifts – eight hours on, eight hours off... and work efficiently, we will have rest and food. We will live. If we defy them, they will work us to death – or just kill us – and replace us with other slaves from other planets they've conquered. Now... I believe in hope. I believe that while we're alive, there's hope. Hope for a better future. To the Daleks, hope is irrelevant. They don't care if we have hope or not. But if they see it makes us work harder... then they will let us hope.<sup>76</sup>

*Begin crossfade to narration...*

**SUZ** They are sure that they will win... that they will conquer our galaxy...<sup>77</sup>

**NARRATOR** And so she spoke to them of hope... that sea of grey faces staring back at her. She told them that it was worth helping the Daleks in order that they, the subjugated human beings, could live to fight another day. She would never know, in her heart, if this was bravery or cowardice. She would think of it often in the years ahead – but she would never be sure. The thought that she was merely clinging to an excuse to justify her instinct to live at any cost... That thought seemed to gnaw at her very soul.<sup>78</sup>

### **37. Int. Vega News Ship. Corridor.**

*An enormous impact explosion. An alarm begins to howl. Sounds of panic from the crew and passengers.*

**TANNOY** Action stations! Action stations! We are under attack! All crew to action stations! Passengers to your emergency disembarkation points immediately!

*More explosions. Screams of distress.*

**ALBY** (Calling) Pellan! Pellan!!!

**PELLAN** Brook! This way.

*They meet, out of breath from pushing through the crowd. (Some vocal improvisation here)*

**ALBY** Looks like Vega News has finally run out of luck.

**PELLAN** (Distressed) I've just come from the comms-monitoring centre... It's a full-scale attack, Brook. The Daleks have suddenly swooped on all the known survivor groups in the Vega System – then they headed straight for us.

**ALBY** God, I knew it!!! Don't you see? They knew where you were all the time, Pellan.

*An explosion. They react.*

**PELLAN** What do you mean?

**ALBY** Come on! We've got to get to my ship! Move it!

**38. Ext. Space.**

*Dalek battle cruiser firing on the Vega ship. Swooping of transolar discs and Dalek gunfire etc.*

**39. Int. Seriphia Galaxy. Dalek Command.**

**DALEK** Report for the Dalek Supreme.

**DALEK SUPREME** Speak!

**DALEK** All pockets of human resistance in the Vega System have been destroyed.

**DALEK SUPREME** Excellent. Continue.

**DALEK** Dalek forces in the Vega System have now engaged the Earth Alliance ship responsible for transmitting anti-Dalek propaganda.

**DALEK SUPREME** Our firepower is superior. It will be destroyed.

**40. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.**

*Door closes. Footsteps of Alby and Pellan entering. They are out of breath.*

**ALBY** Right... power up for immediate take-off, please.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

**PELLAN** Are we just going to leave? What if we manage to - ?

**ALBY** Defeat the Daleks? What are you, mad? It's so bleedin' obvious now I think about it... they've known about this ship for as long as it's been here. And all those call-signs you've been valiantly swapping with the survivor groups... I'll lay money that the Daleks have been picking all that up. They've just been using you to get target information.

**PELLAN** (Defeated) Oh, God.

*A huge impact explosion.*

**ALBY** Right, hang on.

*Controls click.*

**ALBY** Huh, no response on the docking bay door remote activation. I've a funny feeling we're going to have to blast our way out. Strap in, Pellan, old son, strap in.

**41. Ext. Space.**

*Explosion. The whoosh of the scout-ship escaping. Huge explosion of the Vega News ship exploding.*

**42. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.**

*The ship is rocked by the explosion. ALBY and PELLAN cry out.*

**ALBY** Looks like we got out just in time.

**PELLAN** Do you think there'll be any other survivors?

**ALBY** Don't ask stupid questions. Now, our only hope is that the Daleks mistake us for a bit of debris. Cut engine power.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Engines shut down.*

**ALBY** Now... we're adrift.

**PELLAN** No sign of any of them following us.

**ALBY** No... not yet.

*Pause.*

**ALBY** (*Heavy sigh*) But where to now?

**PELLAN** I thought you were on a mission to find that girlfriend of yours.

**ALBY** Don't try to be funny, Pellan.

*Pellan starts to chuckle and laugh.*

**ALBY** Pellan, I'm warning you, I'm not in the mood.

**PELLAN** Sorry... I was just thinking about what I said.<sup>79</sup>

**ALBY** What? When?

**PELLAN** Before... in the studios. That your Susan Mendes was hardly likely to be the Daleks' number one concern at the moment.

**ALBY** What are you getting at?

**PELLAN** Just before all hell broke loose... we monitored a Dalek communication out of Vega VI. A humanoid female, name of Susan Mendes, top priority transport out of the system.<sup>80</sup>

**ALBY** Where to?

**PELLAN** Garazone.

**ALBY** (*Puzzled*) Garazone? Why...? What are they up to...? (*To himself*) Suz, what have you done? What do they want with you?

**PELLAN** Seems she's somehow pretty important to the Daleks.

**ALBY** My little Suz... Well, that's cleared up where we're going, then, hasn't it? Set course for the Garazone System.<sup>81</sup>

**DRUDGER** Complying.

**ALBY** (*To himself*) Hang on, Suz. Alby's coming to get you.<sup>82</sup>

*CLOSING THEME.*

## NOTES

1. Line repeated.
2. Line changed to: 'Bring *Victorious* back to the fleet, captain. I'll deploy our ships in defence formation and appraise Earth Command of the situation before **they have a chance** -'
3. Line changed to: 'We are being fired upon. They've dropped their distortion field, increased speed to an incredible rate. **A few seconds ago they were at three sectors, now they're virtually on top of us and** -'
4. Line changed to: '~~In my mind's eye~~... the air was always fresh, the suns were always high in the sky.'
5. Line changed to: 'I can still taste that air. Still taste it. Never tasted anything like it since... But the girl, the girl, yes... She was only interested in the rocks (*chuckles*)... her precious **minerals**.'
6. This line and the following two, changed to:  
**SUZ** The Reinsberg Institute's paying. **One of the perks of working for a faceless scientific multi-world corporation. Helps to make up for the mind-numbing work.**  
**ALBY** **Do I sense rebellion in the ranks?**  
**SUZ** **I don't know. I shouldn't complain really.**  
**ALBY** **Go on. Enjoy yourself.**  
**SUZ** **Want some of my packed lunch?**  
**ALBY** **This another Reinsberg perk?**  
*She opens a plastic container. Rustle of food parcels. She takes a bite.*  
**SUZ** **No, this is a Susan Mendes special. (Mouth full) Here. Try a pickled onion...**
7. Line changed to: 'Do it. I don't care. (*Munches*) To tell you the truth, I've been thinking **about** moving on anyway.'
8. Line changed to: '(*Affecting nonchalance*) Yeah. **I mean, it's been six months. Not my style to hang around in one place too long.**'
9. Line changed to: '(*Eating*) Where **would** you go? What **would** you do?'
10. Line changed to: '*Temporary* bar manager. But an old mate of mine has been in touch... reckons he can get ~~me~~ something permanent.'
11. Line changed to: '(*Trying to keep calm*) We've spoken to C-in-C Earth Alliance Rapid Response Fleet, Admiral Cheviat, and she confirms that the fleet have engaged an unknown, hostile alien force at co-ordinates... er, just outside our system, the Vega System. Er - (*lost for words, panicking a little*)'
12. Line changed to: '(*Distort*) Is... is there any news on - ? Er, has the Rapid Response Fleet contained the hostile forces? (*Pause*) Ed?'
13. Line changed to: 'No... no, I'm afraid we've definitely lost Ed for the moment. Er... What? **It seems something is interfering with our signal. We apologise if you are having difficulty** -'
14. Line changed to: '(*Distort*) Attention! Attention! Citizens of the Vega System! You are now **subjects** of the Dalek Empire. You will surrender. Resist and you will be exterminated.'
15. Line changed to: '(*The word is unfamiliar to her*) Dalek...? Dalek Empire? What was that thing? **A Dalek?**'
16. Line changed to: 'It was at daybreak, ~~er what passed for daybreak~~ ~~back then~~. A dull, cold glow from Vega Prime filtered through the dust clouds. Thousands lay dying and waiting to die on the barren, gnarled, radioactive plains.'
17. Line changed to: '**Come to finish us off, have you? Well, get on with it**'

18. Line changed to: **'Come on, we're still alive. Don't give up hope.'**
19. Line changed to: 'I can't just - I can't *leave now!* Don't you understand?! My **father** and **mother** - '
20. Line changed to: 'How? How do you know them? **Until this afternoon, Daleks were just something I vaguely remembered from history lessons as a schoolkid.'**
21. Line changed to: 'I can't tell you how **I know** - you just have to trust me!'
22. TANNON's line plays throughout the scene.
23. Line changed to: 'Vega VI Command to Seriphia ~~Galaxy~~ Control.'
24. Added dialogue - DALEK AIDE: **'I obey.'**
25. Line changed to: 'You see that? His ankle is bruised. Bruised! Do you know what that means? It's not broken. The bruising will go away. It'll get better. He'll be able to walk properly soon. Or is there a time limit? How soon do you need us to be able to walk? How many of us do you need? **Do you just kill whenever you feel like it for no reason?** Have you *got* any plans, or are you **just** making this all up as you go along?'
26. Line changed to: '(Groans in defeat) All right, all right... Patch **him** through.'
27. Line changed to:  
**ALBY** Because he's a good old pro from the old school, sir. A Knight of Velyshaa. **Trained in all the ancient arts of Velyshaa: telepathy, espionage, mortal combat...**  
**TANLEE** Yes, all right, Brook.  
**ALBY** **In short**, very good at not being found. Anyway, my contact had got wind of his intention to leave Vega VI on a Star Cruise Line. I was about to go undercover as bar manager on the *Luciana*.'
28. Line changed to: '(Reading) Susan Mendes... known to her friends, **and naturally to you**, as Suz... geologist for the Reinsberg Institute, investigating mineral deposits on Vega VI. Never forget, Brook, there's always someone keeping tabs on you.'
29. Line changed to:  
**TANLEE** You've missed the boat on Kalendorf, Brook. As we speak, the galaxy is descending into very probably the most catastrophic conflict in its long and turgid history.  
**ALBY** **So, it's as bad as we thought? They're going for the whole galaxy.**  
**TANLEE** **We've no reason to think not.** In short, ex-corporal Alby Brook, 2 years' penal servitude pending for petty pilfering... you have other fish to fry.
30. Added dialogue - ALBY: **'Bye!'**
31. Added dialogue - DALEK: **'Move!'**
32. Line changed to: 'That's a point. You! **Dalek!**'
33. Line changed to: 'The Daleks had drilled a series of gigantic shafts deep into the crust of Vega VI. Then they had taken away their sophisticated machinery, **apparently** preferring to set us to work with little more than our bare hands.'
34. Line changed to: 'To hack chunks of blue ~~crystal~~ rock out of a dead world.'
35. Line changed to: 'That's what we called it... ~~for a joke...~~ at the Reinsberg Institute. Rare deposits of it on the surface... we'd only just located a rich underground strata - '
36. Line changed to: **'Silence! Silence!** Do not make that noise! Silence! Robomen will restrain them!'
37. Line changed to: 'Welcome to Scout-Ship X49, agent Alby Brook. I am



your Drudger Pilot. Your flight plan and sealed mission orders are stored in the onboard **terminal** - '

**38.** Line changed to:

**ALBY** Huh, Tanlee's putting me out to grass. That's a long haul... the other side of the galaxy. (Change of thought) And a long way from Vega VI... and you Suz. If you're still alive.

**DRUDGER Coffee.**

**ALBY** Maybe I should just forget -

**39.** Line changed to: '**Woah!** What the hell was that?'

**40.** Line changed to: '(Distort) Attention Earth passenger cruiser! Prepare to be boarded. All humanoids aboard your vessel are now **subjects** of the Dalek Empire. Resist and you will be exterminated.'

**41.** Line changed to: 'The Daleks worked the frightened, exhausted survivors of Vega VI, **without end**... for hours... for longer than seemed possible. Hundreds had already collapsed and died at the rock face. But still the Daleks bellowed their commands, still the Robomen brandished their whips and clubs, often lashing and jabbing at corpses... as if they'd forgotten how to recognise the living. Finally, the last few fell to their knees, unable to work a moment longer, their spirits... broken. Even the Robomen were unable to fight off the all-consuming fatigue.'

**42.** Line changed to: '(Exhausted) Master... they... they will not work. ~~We...~~ we cannot make them work.'

**43.** Line changed to: 'I... I... ~~please,~~ I cannot... **I cannot** make them work. **I cannot**, master...'

**44.** Line changed to: '~~Please~~... master... ~~must~~... must sleep... **please!**'

**45.** Added dialogue - KALENDORF: '**Suz!**'

**46.** Line changed to: 'Activating mineshaft monitor ~~screen!~~'

**47.** Line changed to: '~~Terminated.~~ Are they to be exterminated.'

**48.** Line changed to: 'Correct. You will allow the **humans** to rest.'

**49.** Line changed to:

**DALEK** Report for the Emperor.

**EMPEROR** Enter.

*Door opens.*

**EMPEROR** You have done well.

**50.** Line changed to: 'Yes, Emperor. ~~I must give her... hope!~~'

**51.** Line changed to: '~~The... (stops herself saying "veganite")~~ the... blue ore, **the veganite**, you're making us dig out. It's not exactly friendly to mechanical mining, is it? So you need us to do it. And you obviously haven't got enough of it, have you?'

**52.** Line changed to: 'So... Well, if you understood human beings a **little** better, you'd let us rest.'

**53.** Added dialogue:

**SUZ** But...

**DALEK EMPEROR** Excellent. The human female will now consider what you have said.

**DALEK SUPREME** Her thought processes may have been impaired by fatigue. When she has recovered, she may not prove susceptible.

**DALEK EMPEROR** When she has recovered, she will fear death.

**54.** Line changed to:

**ALBY** Yeah... I knew that too.

**DRUDGER Complying.**

**ALBY** (To himself) Now what... now what? God, what am I doing? Risking extermination just for the sake of a woman? You've got it bad, Alby old son, you've got it bad. And it's only a matter of time before a Dalek ship spots us if I don't think of something soon.

55. Line changed to: '(Laughs) My God. **My God**, they did it! Pellan was right! They did it!'
56. Line changed to: 'What do you know about these creatures? I'd **hardly** heard of them before all this.'
57. Line changed to:  
**KALENDORF** (Secretive) Never mind how I know.  
**SUZ** That's what Alby said.  
**KALENDORF** What?  
**SUZ** Nothing.  
**KALENDORF** So you spoke to the Dalek Supreme. What did you say **to him**?
58. Line changed to: '**I know**, I don't, I don't... But we're alive, aren't we? We've got... hope.'
59. Line changed to: '(Gobsmacked) My God, it's... er... it's... **er**...'
60. Line changed to: 'I just ran. ~~I just~~ ran. You know? It's like I didn't care a damn about anyone else. Those... voices. And the screaming. I remember... climbing over people... people screaming for help. I didn't care. I just wanted to get out. (Sighs, reliving it) Oh, God...'
61. Line changed to:  
**DALEK** **Dalek Supreme now entering War Room.**  
 Door opens.  
**DALEK 1** **All section commanders will enter the War Room.**  
 Doors open.  
**DALEK** Report for the Dalek Supreme **from Logril squadron, leading galactic attack spearhead.**
62. Line changed to: 'Battle computers in all ~~our~~ fleets have anticipated this, but warn of energy and raw material depletion.'
63. Line changed to: 'Not if it is utilised effectively. The Emperor has a plan that will achieve this. Continue with ~~your~~ reports.' Then, added dialogue - **DALEK: 'Vega VI commander reporting via hyperlink.'**
64. Line changed to: 'Because it's what the Daleks do. What do you think happens when **all this's** over? When they've got what they want? Do you think they just say, 'Thanks for the help guys' and ~~then~~ leave?'
65. Line changed to:  
**PELLAN** Well, I told you Vega News persuaded the Earth Alliance to let them have a ship.  
**ALBY** Yeah, how did they manage that?  
**PELLAN** Well, **High Command knew there were surviving pockets of resistance and they knew that a single ship operating covertly might just be a life-line and of course we're able to keep High Command up to date and local Dalek troop movements. So**, when I jettisoned from the Aquitania, I set a course for this system. **Wanted to be part of it, to make a difference.**
66. 'Just - kill - me - and - get - it - over - with' is a replay of **SUZ** saying that line from Scene 27.
67. Line changed to: '(Reluctant) Yes, **of course**... I do.
68. Line changed to: '**Hmm**. Quite an impressive rig you've got here.'
69. Line changed to: '**I'm** sorry... no, I appreciate it, Pellan. Thanks.'
70. Line changed to: 'You mean they're too busy to notice? **That** doesn't sound like the Daleks to me.'
71. Line changed to: '**Oh, and you're suddenly** an expert on the Daleks?'
72. Line changed to: '**Oh**, I see. You really can't keep your mind off that girl of yours, can you? What was her name... Susan Mendes, wasn't it?'
73. Line changed to: '(Close) What's the matter, **do** you want them to think we're lovers? What are we going to do, whisper in each other's ears? I wouldn't like to bet they couldn't hear that either.'
74. Line changed to: 'The survivors of Vega turned to look at the girl. A

dull silence descended in that vast cavern. A simple fear of humiliation welled up inside her... Then she looked at her friend Kalendorf. He nodded the slightest of nods, the corners of his mouth hinting at the most secret of smiles. ~~But~~ his warmth and the sight of a thousand grey faces needing hope made that fear evaporate.'

75. Line changed to: '(Amused for a moment) All right, all right. You'll have to bear with me. (After a deep breath) My name is Susan... you can call me Suz. I am like you. A slave of the Daleks. But I stood up to them. **I don't know why but I did.** And they noticed. I told them we needed food and rest. They gave it.'

76. This monologue was cut in post-production so that it ran as a montage of different takes, with each clip slightly overlapping the preceding one. In the following, [/] is used to separate the clips: 'Now they don't care whether or not we live or die. But they do want us to work. That is their only concern. [/] ~~Now...~~ it's as simple as this... If we work in shifts [/] eight hours on, eight hours off... [/] and work efficiently, we will have rest and food. [/] We will live. [/] If we defy them [/] they will work us to death - or just kill us - and replace us with other slaves from other planets they've conquered. [/] ~~Now...~~ I believe in hope. I believe that while we're alive [/] there's hope. Hope for a better future. To the Daleks [/] hope is irrelevant. They don't care if we have hope or not. But if they see it makes us work harder... then they will *let* us **have** hope.'

77. Line changed to: 'They are sure that they will ~~win...~~ ~~that they will~~ conquer our galaxy...'

78. Line changed to: 'And so ~~the girl~~ spoke to them of hope... that sea of grey faces staring back at her. **Their eyes dry and hollow with fear, thirsting for hope.** She told them that it was worth helping the Daleks in order that they, the subjugated human beings, could live to fight another day. She would never know, in her heart, if this was bravery or cowardice. She would think of it often in the years ahead - but she would never be sure. The thought that she was merely clinging to an excuse to justify her instinct to live at any cost... That thought seemed to gnaw at her very soul.'

79. Line changed to: 'I'm sorry... I was just thinking about what I said.'

80. Line changed to: 'Just before all hell broke loose... we monitored a Dalek communication **from** Vega VI. A humanoid female, name of Susan Mendes, top priority transport out of the system.'

81. Line changed to:

**ALBY** My little Suz... Well, that's cleared up where we're going, then, hasn't it?

**PELLAN** I suppose it has, since this is your ship and I'm just the hitchhiker.

**ALBY** Set course for the Garazone System.

82. Line changed to: '(To himself) Hang on, Suz. **Please. Just hang on.**'

# DALEK EMPIRE

## ORIGINAL PRESS RELEASE

ON SUNDAY 6 MAY 2001, the first part of *Dalek Empire* was recorded at the Moat Studios in South London.

The cast featured some returning voices from Big Finish's ever-expanding repertory company of actors.

Sarah Mowat stars as planetary geologist Susan Mendes. Sarah played the marathon role of the Sirens of Time in Big Finish's debut *Doctor Who* play, *The Sirens of Time*, appearing as five different incarnations of the same being. Nick Briggs: 'Sarah is a very special actress. I've been trying to find a big role for her ever since *Sirens*. We did at one point consider her to play Paul McGann's new assistant in the *Doctor Who* audios before the character of Charley Pollard was devised.'

Sarah says: 'I've encountered the Daleks before, because my godfather is Roger Hancock, whose company sort of "protects" the Daleks. I know Terry Nation didn't want to have the Mickey taken out of them, and I think that's important because the Daleks can still be terrifying. And they are in *Dalek Empire*.'

Sarah describes the Doctors in *The Sirens of Time*: 'All three of the Doctors were very different. Sylvester McCoy almost ad-libbed around what was written, in a very mad way. He was a sort of mad Doctor, which was fun. Colin Baker was jolly and cuddly. Peter Davison was just gorgeous and really enthusiastic.'

Mark McDonnell plays Alby Brook, a slightly less than dynamic space security agent. Mark featured in *The Fearmonger* and will also be appearing in the next season of Paul McGann plays. He's currently working on the second season of his Radio 4 comedy series, *Velvet Cabaret*, which promises to be the next big comedy cult when it migrates to a BBC TV version entitled *Velvet Soup* this summer. Nick Briggs: 'Mark was one of the "crap commandos", as we called them, in the upcoming *The Time of the Daleks*. The moment I started working with him in that, I knew I'd found my *Dalek Empire* leading man.'

Mark says: 'When Nick first spoke to me about this, he hadn't finished writing it. I said I'd like to do it... So now the character's turned out a bit like me in space... always trying to find out where the nearest bar is!'

Gareth Thomas guest stars as the enigmatic Kalendorf. Gareth is, of course, best known as Blake from *Blake's 7*, but it was his performance in McGann's audio debut *Storm Warning* which led to his casting in *Dalek Empire*. Nick Briggs: 'Aside from being a brilliant actor, he's a thoroughly nice bloke.'

Gareth says: 'It's an interesting character. He has a number of special qualities and is a knight in the old fashioned sense of the word, but in the first part he's acting rather against type... but all will no doubt be revealed as the story moves on.'

Other members of the cast include John Wadmore (another *Sirens* veteran) as newsreader Gordon Pellam, Ian Brooker (regularly heard on *The Archers* and many other Radio 4 productions) and Joyce Gibbs (another *Archers* and Radio 4 regular who will also be familiar to viewers of the BBC1 soap *Doctors* in which she plays Violet Appleby).

Once again, Nick Briggs and Alistair Lock will supply their acclaimed Dalek voices.

**Genesis of Dalek Empire** Producer Jason Haigh-Ellery explains the genesis of *Dalek Empire*: 'It came about with a conversation between myself and Nick. He was determined to get some Dalek stories done which would stand alone. I wholeheartedly agreed with him. I thought it was a brilliant idea.'

Writer/director Nick Briggs: 'It was before we had the licence to do *Doctor Who*. At that stage, actually doing *Doctor Who* seemed like a completely unobtainable goal. So my thoughts at that time were that it might be easier just to get the rights to do the Daleks.'

Script editor John Ainsworth explains the premise of the four-part series. '*Dalek Empire* is about presenting an old *Doctor Who* situation in a new way. It's a Dalek invasion. And you could say that's all it's about. But it goes further, exploring the real moral issues that people face in terrible situations as well as the relationships they have. And the horrible decisions they have to make for "the greater good", and what that does to you.'

Nick: 'The characters in the series are not in control of the situation. They've been overrun. The Dalek invasion starts and the Daleks are winning! But there's plenty of action in there! Plenty of Daleks! Intrigue, excitement and... transolar discs!'

Part One, *Invasion of the Daleks*, is slated for release at the end of June. Further parts will be released in August, October and December, additional to Big Finish's *Doctor Who* releases.

# INVASION OF THE DALEKS

**The first episode must have been so important, in terms of helping the audience get into the story. Were there any specific aims you had for the *Invasion of the Daleks*?**

Nicholas Briggs: I had three main aims. I wanted to hit the audience with action from the beginning; hence the first scene when the Daleks attack that spaceship. Then I wanted to establish the emotional core of the story, with Suz and Alby having a gentle, romantic frisson. So, in essence, I wanted to tell the audience that this was a war story and a love story. The third aim was to establish the narrative style by having a narrator. So really, it was all a question of creating the flavour of *Dalek Empire*. You know? You open the packet, expecting to taste *Doctor Who*-with-something-missing, and what you get is not *Doctor Who* at all. Something with, hopefully, a slightly spicier, more mature flavour.

**How much did you think the Daleks had to be in the story? They're not in it that much.**

There wasn't any contractual obligation about how much they had to feature! But it was a difficult balancing act. First off, there's no point playing the 'ooh, who's the monster going to be?' card, since the series is called *Dalek Empire* and there are Daleks all over the CD cover! So I wanted to get them in very early. But the idea was that that should be a sort of tease. Give them the Daleks, then hold them back for a while. It doesn't matter so much if the Daleks don't feature heavily, as long as the drama is shaped by the actions of the Daleks. Everything that happens in that first episode happens because the Daleks have invaded the galaxy. So, even if we're not hearing them, they're always in our thoughts and the thoughts of the characters.

**What advantages, storytelling-wise, does a narrator give you?**

In this case, the narrator added an extra piece of intrigue. Who is she? Why is this person commenting on events? Of course, most people assumed she was an older version of Suz – which made us secure that Suz would survive. But I deliberately gave her lines which referred to Suz in the third person, which, I hope, added to the intrigue. In general terms, a narrator can really help a story. People expect narrators to give information; so rather than have characters awkwardly relate the plot, you can just leave it to the storyteller herself.

One of the great advantages, not so much used in this part, was that you could advance the story quickly by jumping large chunks of time. I suppose the most effective use of this in *Invasion of the Daleks* is when she talks about the underground mining on Vega. It also allows you to explore emotional issues more bluntly, which I'm rather keen on. I was particularly pleased with the 'What is it that makes a person go on?' speech, which I think is horribly stark.

**You must have known who the narrator would turn out to be.**

Yes. I always knew that it would be a creature who had all Suz's memories. I always knew that Alby would one day find this woman and ask her what had been going on. So I always knew that the narration we were hearing was this alien woman telling Alby what had happened to Suz. When I started, I'm not sure if I had named her a Seer of Yaldos yet, but the principles were certainly in place.

**The character in the opening scene – Admiral Cheviat – was originally a woman.**

I've no real recollection of why the sex of Admiral Cheviat was changed. I think I'd forgotten I'd made him a woman until we got into the studio. So we just changed the lines a bit. Massive rewrites, you know. Changing 'she' into 'he'.

**Dalek Empire is a love story – but the two lovers have only five scenes together at the beginning of Invasion of the Daleks. How easily did you think the audience would accept the relationship between these two characters?**

It's a very personal thing. I accepted it. Mark McDonnell and Sarah Mowat accepted it. But it is odd that nothing really happened between them. But, you know, I'm an old romantic at heart. Sometimes there's just a connection between people... or at least, they think there's a connection. The love is very naïve indeed. I think there's a distinct possibility that if the Dalek invasion hadn't happened then Alby and Suz would've had a brief, rather unsatisfactory relationship. But, of course, the Dalek thing is the whole reason it happens the way it does. If it weren't for the threat of the Daleks, Alby wouldn't have been there in the first place. But it's the invasion which gives their brief moment of connection a massive significance. The extreme situation of the war blows their love out of all proportion. It's Alby's flawed character and Suz's need for hope that fuel the love. I also wanted it to be a total contrast to the horrific reality of war. A rather pure, idealised version of love. It also creates anticipation in the audience. Since nothing physical has happened between them, we want to know if it ever will – and how distasteful that'll sound on audio!

**Are Alby and Suz based on anyone in particular? Did you know who would play them when you wrote the scripts.**

Their names are based on my grandparents, which is why 'Nan and Gramp' appear in the 'thank you's on the sleeve. I didn't know who was going to play them when I started writing. I just tried to make them the best characters I'd ever written. However, at some point during the writing of *Invasion of the Daleks*, I met Mark McDonnell and asked him to do it. Then, I started thinking of the little I knew of him and had fun making Alby a bit like Mark. I didn't know Mark very well at that point; but I was very pleased that when he read it, he said, 'This is just me in space!'. I think he was referring to all the mooning over women and always wondering where the nearest bar was. He's a tremendous actor and a lovely bloke. When I'd finished part one, I had a sneaking suspicion that I should cast Sarah Mowat. She's an absolute delight as a person and as an actress. But I worried that I was making too easy a choice and so we did a lot of auditions. But I kept thinking, 'They're not really as good as Sarah, are they?'. That said, Susan is nothing like Sarah. Susan rocks the boat and stomps about the place making trouble. Sarah is sweetness personified. She's the kind of person who always blushes if you tell her a dirty joke. She isn't disapproving of other people's naughtiness, but she'd never be naughty herself!

**‘The Southampton Terminus’? Of all the places for Earth to have a terminus, why Southampton?**

I come from the Southampton area and always used to love seeing the big ships in dock there. I went on board the first *Queen Elizabeth* and I saw the *Queen Mary* set sail for the final time. My Nan actually went aboard the *Titanic* while it was in Southampton. Thankfully, she got off again. My Gramp was a steward on the *Aquitania* – one of the few of those big four-funnelled ships that didn’t have a spectacular death. And once, I worked as a book club salesman, for one day only, in the old Ocean Terminus building in Southampton. It was a magnificent building. A real slice of 1920s design. Then, one day, years later, I was driving by and noticed they’d knocked the whole thing down to build a car park. It makes me cry just to think of it. So I thought I’d immortalise it, in a bizarre sci-fi way, by having something of the sort in *Dalek Empire*. I imagine they built it on that bloody car park and squashed all those bloody cars!

**One change that occurs a couple of times between script and finished audio is that in Dalek dialogue, the word ‘citizens’ is replaced by ‘subjects’.**

I initially toyed with the idea of using ‘subjects’, but thought that word had too much of a ‘royal’ association for the Daleks. I substituted ‘citizens’ because I thought it had a cold, unemotional feel to it. But then I thought, ‘Citizens have rights’. And, of course, the Daleks may be cold, but they’re not unemotional. They’re bursting with emotion. All of it negative! Also, ‘subject’ had an imperial connotation, and it is called *Dalek Empire* after all. Subjects don’t necessarily have rights... and the people conquered by the Daleks would certainly have no rights; so, finally, I thought the word ‘subject’ was more appropriate.

**It’s a very evocative, sci-fi-esque title. Other than its literal description of the plot, does it have any meaning?**

*Invasion of the Daleks* is a bit of a ‘does what it says on the can’ kind of title for the first chapter of *Dalek Empire*; although, I suppose you could think it was about the Daleks being invaded, rather than doing the invading. I used it because it was the opening story of *The Dalek Book*. That lovely piece of artwork of a Dalek blasting away and the words ‘Invasion of the Daleks’ slicing jaggedly across the page is forever burned into my brain. I just had to use that title. I felt compelled.

**The timescale of Dalek Empire seems much more fluid than in, say, a Doctor Who story. There can be months between scenes, and characters talk of events happening years before.**

There’s often a tendency for *Doctor Who* stories to seem as if they happen in one day. The action is more often than not continuous and chronological. In my general desire to be more ‘realistic’ – and I do use the term very loosely – than *Doctor Who*, I wanted to give the impression that, as in life, things take a long time to happen. It gives the whole thing an epic scope and it gives a chance for characters to develop and change. Suz changes quite a lot, for example.

**You drew up character biographies for Alby, Suz and Kalendorf. (See pages 11, 12 & 15.) Were they for your benefit or to help the actors?**

Both. I definitely wanted to help the actors to get a handle on their characters, especially



since they had only one instalment of the script to go on at first. I was particularly concerned that Gareth could see where Kalendorf was going. Unfortunately, telling him that Kalendorf was strong and warrior-like right from the beginning meant that he kept telling me the character wasn't behaving correctly in the first chapter. It's an odd thing to find an actor telling you that the character isn't right, when you created it in the first place. I suppose he was concerned that there weren't enough seeds planted for his later, heroic behaviour to be credible. Basically, I think he liked the character description very much, but was very disappointed that the character as initially described wasn't immediately on display in the script. His concerns did push me into making Kalendorf stronger. I rewrote sections of *The Human Factor* as a result. I did this partially to keep Gareth happy and partially because I thought he had a very good point. He complained right up until the end that he wasn't giving enough orders and wasn't in command enough. I got quite used to it eventually. I think Gareth was looking for a consistent strength in Kalendorf and felt that the character description was describing a man who'd take the lead more often than was written. I think he thought the story was about him; when, of course, it was, at its core, about Suz and Alby. Interestingly, however, I think it was Gareth's passion for the character that led me to make *Dalek War* more or less all about Kalendorf.

But on the general point about the character biogs, I think it's important to give the actors the initial character flavour you want them to go for. I did the same for my *Doctor Who* audio drama *Creatures of Beauty*, and it worked a treat.

### **Kalendorf is a Knight of Velyshaa, the race you'd previously used in the *Doctor Who* audio play, *The Sirens of Time*. Why reuse them?**

I'm not a fan of continuity and everything tying together. I think it makes the universe too small, and I never set out with that as my aim. However, if you have a need in a story for a particular element which is very similar to one you have created before, then as far as I see it, you have two choices; change the idea altogether and start from scratch, or use the thing you created before. That's what happened here. I wanted this 'agent', Kalendorf, to be a member of an ancient, mysterious race which had had a troubled past with Earth. The Velyshaans fitted the bill... likewise the drudgers. They're handy tools to create a story. It's often easier to use tools you've already got rather than build them all from scratch.

### **Talking of continuity, there's mention of the Kar-Charrat Library and the Seriphia Galaxy – elements of *Doctor Who* plays you directed. How did they find their way into *Dalek Empire*?**

The initial idea was for *Dalek Empire* to be linked quite definitely with the *Doctor Who Dalek Empire* stories. That had been Gary Russell's idea. I didn't like it and forgot all about it. However, when I found I needed the Daleks to have a source of information about the human factor, I suddenly remembered the Kar-Charrat Library in *The Genocide Machine* and all the information that could have been downloaded from the super Dalek that went mad. Once again, it was a ready-made tool that fitted the bill. Likewise, the Seriphia Galaxy... I loved that idea Steve Cole had in *The Apocalypse Element* of the Daleks creating a new galaxy, just to make it a base for operations and a launching pad for invasions. Why create something new when the idea is already in existence? And it ended up giving a partial link with the *Doctor Who* stories, which would make Gary happy. I like it when

Gary's happy! I told him about it and he immediately suggested other links, included one which would have tied in to Neverland, involving the Dalek Emperor pleading with Romana for mercy... but I couldn't make that work without slowing the story up.

**There's some dialogue that was added about the Knights of Velyshaa. Alby says that Kalendorf is, 'Trained in all the ancient arts of Velyshaa: telepathy, espionage, mortal combat...'**

I did a lot of last-minute rewrites on this first part, which I just scribbled on my script. I then read these out to the actors in the studio and they copied them down. This was one of them. It was simply a matter of foreshadowing Kalendorf's telepathy. I'd always intended him to be telepathic, but I didn't mention it in the script until he reveals it to Suz. I thought the audience might feel this was a bit too convenient – so I inserted an earlier mention, which is always the best way of dispelling that sort of criticism. And indeed, no one has ever picked up on that as far as I'm aware.

**One of Kalendorf's first lines in the script is, 'As I believe they say on some parts of that old and revered planet Earth... "The top of the morning to you".' This was changed to, 'Come to finish us off, have you? Well, get on with it.' Any reason for the change?**

It was one of those lines that, when you're in the studio and an actor is saying it, you think, 'That's a bloody terrible line! Why did I write that?'. So I said as much to Gareth, he seemed to agree, so we just worked out together what might be better and simpler for him to say. That's the beauty of directing your own stuff. You can change it without offending the writer. And sometimes, it only becomes clear that a line is no good when you hear the actor saying out loud. I try to say all my stuff out loud when I'm writing it, but that one slipped through the net!

**As you were the producer and director as well as the writer, how did that affect the writing process? Did you know how many actors you'd be able to have, for example?**

I established with [co-producer] Jason Haigh-Ellery the number of cast members I could have. Then I worked out a kind of rolling budget which allowed me to spend more on some chapters and save on others. As a result, I came in under budget, then gave Alistair Lock the remainder as a sort of bonus for all the extra work he put in on the Dalek voices. So, yes, knowing the budgetary restrictions as I was writing did make me constantly assess which characters would be doubled-up, *et cetera*. You'll always know when I'm thinking of doubling when I introduce characters with heavy voice effects!

**So, who's David Sax then?**

David Sax is me when I feel like the credits list is overloaded with my name. I'd use more pseudonyms in the *Doctor Whos* if Gary would let me, but he's dead against them. My theory is that if people know it's you doing a voice, they'll say they could tell anyway. If you don't tell them, a large number of the audience won't be able to tell, no matter how obvious it is, simply and hopefully because they're caught up in the fictional world you're presenting them with. I used to do that when I worked for Visual Imagination. I'd answer the phone to someone who wanted to speak to advertising; I'd tell them I was putting them through, then I'd say, 'Hello, advertising?' in exactly the same voice and, because they were expecting to hear someone different, they'd never be able to tell it was me. The same thing can happen in an audio play. Who's playing this mad Spanish/

Greek/French bloke Morebi? Oh, David Sax – can't be Nick Briggs, then! That's the theory... and I think it's quite funny when people guess it. Dave Owen in **Doctor Who Magazine** [DWM] was quite amusing about being able to see David Sax's huge, false moustache during that Morebi scene. I'm sure he was having a laugh at my acting!

**What about the other characters: Tanlee, Pellan, Drudger. Where did they come from?**  
Since I was going down the Harry Palmer route with Alby Brook, I thought I'd make his boss rather like Harry Palmer's Ross. The name Tanlee is a mish-mash somehow constructed from the names of actors who played Ross and James Bond's 'M'. I wanted him to be initially cold and cynical, so that when things really got bad I could actually show him worrying and being quite genuine. I thought this shift of gear would emphasise just how seriously bad things were going in the war with the Daleks. It was John Ainsworth who suggested that I should play him – we're both big Harry Palmer fans.

My brother is a TV newsreader and journalist, so I suppose that was the initial inspiration for Pellan, but there's no other similarity. I cast John Wadmore, because he's always been a great actor and a close friend. The Drudgers are a blatant plot device. In a movie, Alby would just go off in a spaceship on his own. But on audio, he needs to talk to someone. So the Drudgers are close relatives of every irritating robotic device that has ever featured in sci-fi. I thought Ian Brooker did an excellent job of giving them a kind of chirpy, non-offensive arrogance. It was the strength of his performance that made Gary Russell wonder why I didn't give the Drudger a more touching death scene after the crash-landing on Guria. But I was unaffected. No one cries over a fridge breaking down, do they? The Drudgers were just hovering, talking fridges which I created for the Audio Visuals amateur plays all those years ago.

**In the original script, Suz says that she's never heard of the Daleks, but in the play she says, 'Until this afternoon, Daleks were just something I vaguely remembered from history lessons as a schoolkid.' Why the slight change?**

I think this was something suggested by John Ainsworth. He felt that, since there had been other Dalek stories before *Dalek Empire*, we should at least acknowledge past battles between Daleks and humans. I thought that was fair enough. I didn't want to make any precise references to the past, so I thought this was enough of a link.

**Dalek dialogue is famously difficult. How did you approach writing for them, particularly in scenes with only Daleks in them?**

I love writing dialogue for the Daleks. It is difficult in terms of making it interesting, but if you latch on to the idea that they can give out vital plot information, you can have fun giving them revelatory speeches, which makes us think, 'Oh my God, that's what they're up to!'. Also, Dalek scenes where they're planning their tactics give a story a horrible feeling of impending disaster. It doesn't matter what our human friends are up to, the Daleks will always be plotting something dastardly. The challenge is to phrase it all in a Dalek-like way... You must always use 'Dalekese', but the trick is to push the envelope a bit and occasionally include a surprisingly emotional phrase, or have the Daleks discuss something we're not used to them discussing... I think that, in particular, gives a Dalek scene a bit of a dramatic tingle, when they mention 'love' or 'fear'.

**Originally, the mineral being mined on the Vega VI is only called veganite ‘as a joke’, but the reference to veganite only being a nickname was dropped. Also, there was a scripted line of Suz deliberately not using the word veganite in front of the Dalek Supreme; but in the audio, she simply says it – what’s all that about?**

This was all about simplification. While writing, I thought that ‘veganite’ sounded a bit cod, and that it might be more believable as just a nickname... but then I thought that nicknames often stick and become the accepted terminology. So rather than get bogged down in that minor detail, I just called the mineral veganite. Likewise, I was toying with Suz being less forthright with information, but this sent the scene up a bit of a blind alley in dramatic terms. The scene is not about Suz being secretive. It’s about other, more dramatically interesting stuff, so why distract from the point of it? This often happens to me once I hear the dramatic content of an actor’s performance. The piffling little details I’ve put in sometimes feel too pedantic and less realistic. They can interrupt the emotional flow of a scene and make you ask, ‘Would she really have bothered to say that?’.

**When Suz gives her speech to the slaves – ‘I believe that while we’re alive, there’s hope,’ etc – you scripted it as a monologue, but it was recorded and edited as a montage, with different clauses and sentences being taken from different takes.**

The scene was written and recorded as a monologue. I’d always intended to play about with it in post-production, but I wasn’t quite sure how. Again, this is the beauty of being involved in all levels of the production in a very hands-on way. You can leave certain issues until later. You can let an idea bubble around in your head and come up with the solution at just the right time. So, when I came to edit and sound-design that scene, I was developing the idea that I wanted to give more of an impression of the impact the speech was having. In a film, you give that by cutting to reaction shots in the crowd. Here, I wanted to give the impression of hearing the speech from different perspectives.

Sarah did it brilliantly, because I wanted her to do it all on that relentless, shouting level – because that’s what you’d have to do if you had no microphone and a thousand people to communicate with. I hate it in films and TV when actors address massed armies with only a slightly raised voice. I always wonder why the soldiers don’t get bored and start chatting among themselves. To get your words out there, to a vast crowd, you really have to almost exhaust yourself on every sentence. I actually nearly lost my voice demonstrating to Sarah what I wanted her to do.

So, I got this very realistic, shouting delivery from Sarah that had pain and exhaustion in every line. It wasn’t pleasant to listen to and it was relentless. That’s what I wanted. That was realistic and right. My job in post-production was to enhance that and give us other reasons to want to listen to it. That’s why I made it overlap itself and come from different acoustic perspectives. I wanted to make a feature of its length and relentlessness.

**Was it always the intention to use cliffhangers? Dalek Empire was praised for its end-of-episode twists, but the end of Invasion of the Daleks is more of a set-up for The Human Factor than a crisis point to be resolved.**

I suppose I wanted every episode ending to give a reason for listeners to come back for more. It just felt right for the first part to end on the promise of a change of gear, that things were really getting underway. It was a sort of ‘here we go’ ending. I think that

once the story was more underway, it seemed more logical for there to be more 'gasp, what happens next?' type of endings. Both of those in this series were planned in my initial storylining.

# THE HUMAN FACTOR

## 1. Int. Garazone Bazaar.

*The busy atmosphere of the bazaar.*

**SUZ** (Upbeat) Karl! Karl!!!

**KALENDORF** Suz! Over here!!!

*The sounds of Suz struggling through the crowds.*

**SUZ** (Out of breath) Hi.

**KALENDORF** Hi.

**SUZ** Fruitful afternoon? Did you...?

**KALENDORF** (Shared secret) Mmm. Yeah. Yeah.

**SUZ** (Quietly) Do you think the Daleks can still hear us?

**KALENDORF** I wouldn't put it past them. So let's not arouse their suspicions by - [hugging each other/telepathy]

**SUZ** (Cutting in. Artificially bright) Hard to believe that the Garazone System is under their control, isn't it?

**KALENDORF** (Bitterly) And has been for the best part of a year.

**SUZ** (Grave) Yes... yes, but people are still alive, aren't they? Still enjoying some kind of life?

**KALENDORF** Well, that's down to you, isn't it? Down to the Angel of Mercy.

**SUZ** To us.

**KALENDORF** They only let me tag along to keep you happy. Which, I might add, is completely out of character for the Daleks.<sup>1</sup>

**SUZ** Well, they're happy enough at the moment. The local commander just told me... the Garazone mines and construction bays are running at 110 per cent efficiency.

**KALENDORF** You must be pleased. And the war goes on.

**SUZ** It would go on without us, Karl.

**KALENDORF** (Irritable) Don't call me that. It's Kalendorf.

**SUZ** (Playful) How about Dorf, then? Mr Dorf?

**KALENDORF** I'm not in the mood, Suz.

**SUZ** Oh, come on, don't be such a misery!

**KALENDORF** Or what? You'll report me to your chum, the Dalek Supreme?

*Pause.*

**SUZ** (Shaken) Take that back, Karl. Please.

**KALENDORF** It's the truth, isn't it? It's no secret... in fact you seem proud to be working for the Daleks.

**SUZ** We're both working for the Daleks. Everyone here is.

**KALENDORF** But only you volunteered for the cause.

*Music cue as background atmosphere fades.*

**NARRATOR** Those words hurt the girl. And only the truth hurts. As Kalendorf walked off into the crowded Garazone bazaar, the girl thought back to Vega VI and her speech to the survivors of her home planet. That had been six standard Earth months ago. And it was a speech she had since made on many worlds.<sup>2</sup>

*Crossfade into...*

## 2. Int. Vega VI. Mining Area.

*Crossfade the speech from Invasion of the Daleks with later versions of Suz delivering the speech. In these other versions, she speaks into a microphone and is more assured.*

**SUZ** (After a deep breath) My name is Susan... you can call me Suz. I am like you. A slave of the Daleks. But I stood up to them. I don't know why... but I did. And they noticed. I told them we needed food and rest. They gave it.

*Some muted cheers.*

**SUZ** Now they don't care whether or not we live or die. But they do want us to work. That is their only concern. It's as simple as this... If we work in shifts – eight hours on, eight hours off... and work efficiently, we will have rest and food. We will live. If we defy them, they will work us to death – or just kill us – and replace us with other slaves from other planets they've conquered. Now... I believe in hope. I believe that while we're alive, there's hope. Hope for a better future.

*End on the Vega VI version of the speech.*

**SUZ** To the Daleks, hope is irrelevant. They don't care if we have hope or not. But if they see it makes us work harder... then they will let us hope.

*Crossfade into narration.*

**NARRATOR** Six months before... the survivors on Vega VI had agreed and the Daleks had adopted the shift system of work. Everywhere the girl and Kaiendorf had travelled since, on planet after planet, the slaves, often on the brink of starvation and exhaustion, had agreed. Well fed and rested, subjugated species became efficient – given just enough strength and hope to want to see the next day... Whether it was a day under Dalek rule or not seemed irrelevant. They were alive, after all. Standing in the Garazone Bazaar, the girl thought back to those early days of the Dalek War on Vega VI. After months of gruelling work under her own shift system, she remembered, she had once again been called to Dalek Control. Once again, she had faced that screen. The image of the Dalek Supreme had formed before her, the cold light of its staring eye burning into her. Each time she faced this creature, she became more and more certain that it had no soul... And yet it somehow knew how to invade the very heart of her.

## 3. Int. Vega VI. Dalek Control.

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) Susan Mendes.

**SUZ** (Weary) Don't you recognise me?

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) Yes. Do you take pride in what you have done? (Pause) Answer!

**SUZ** I... I don't know.

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) You have saved the lives of thousands.

**SUZ** So that they can work for you! So that you can win the war... invade our galaxy. Kill more of our soldiers... our people...

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) Do you regret what you have done?

**SUZ** I haven't done anything. Your Daleks implemented the shift system.

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) It was your idea.<sup>3</sup>

**SUZ** What, and you couldn't have come up with that?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You gave your idea to the survivors of Vega VI. You gave them hope. They have become efficient.

*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You - are - troubled?

*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Answer!

**SUZ** I wish you'd killed me.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You wish to die, Susan Mendes?

**SUZ** (*Losing it*) Don't say my name! Don't say it! I hate it when you say it! Don't say it! (*She begins to sob*)

*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You know you have saved thousands of lives.

**SUZ** (*Through tears*) Yes... yes, I know. And I hate myself for it.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You could save millions... billions of lives.<sup>4</sup>

*Suz stops sobbing. Pause.*

**SUZ** What do you mean?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You will travel throughout the Dalek Empire in this galaxy. You will speak to the slaves on a thousand conquered worlds. You will save their lives. Give them hope.

**SUZ** And make them more efficient? That's what you really mean, isn't it? I won't do it.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Then - you - will - die.

*Suz starts to sob again... almost angrily.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Susan Mendes?

**SUZ** (*Snapping*) I don't want to die! You know that! I know you know that! Let's stop pretending! So, all right, I'll do your dirty work for you! I'll do it! I'll do it, all right!?! Just leave me alone - and stop saying my name!<sup>5</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Transport arrangements will be made immediately. You will leave at first light. This discussion is at an end.

**SUZ** Wait - Wait a minute! Wait!<sup>6</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Speak quickly.

**SUZ** I'll do this only on one condition.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) No conditions. Obey or die.

**SUZ** I want Kalendorf... I want my friend to come with me.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) No.

**SUZ** And where do I get my hope, then?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Explain!

**SUZ** You want me to give hope to your slaves?

*Pause.*

**SUZ** Well... answer!!!

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Correct.

**SUZ** I can't do it if I have no hope to give. Do you understand? Or aren't you as clever as you thought you were? Don't you know as much about the 'human factor' as you thought you did?

*Pause.*

**SUZ** Well?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Kalendorf gives you hope?

**SUZ** (*Exhausted*) Yes. Yes, he does.

*Pause.*



**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Then he will go with you.  
*Comms-link cuts off.*

#### **4. Int. Garazone. Dalek Control.**

*The sound of the Garazone bazaar distorted on a screen. The Dalek control heartbeat is in evidence. The distorted sound of the bazaar is being filtered by the Daleks, so that they can hear Suz and Kalendorf.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Increase power to the surveillance systems. It is the order of the Dalek Supreme that all conversations between Susan Mendes and Kalendorf are transmitted from this Garazone Control unit to Dalek Control in the Seriphia Galaxy.<sup>7</sup>

**DALEK** Adverse signal conditions in the bazaar are inhibiting our scanners.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Increase the power!!! We must know what they are saying.

*Filtering FX.<sup>8</sup>*

**KALENDORF** (*Heavily distorted*) It's the truth, isn't it? It's no secret... in fact you seem proud to be working for the Daleks.

**SUZ** (*Heavily distorted*) We're both working for the Daleks. Everyone here is.

**KALENDORF** (*Heavily distorted*) But only you volunteered for the cause.

**DALEK** They have parted. There is no more speech.<sup>9</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** The male is unimportant. Hold visual scanners on Susan Mendes. The Dalek Supreme wishes to assess her emotional condition.

#### **5. Int. Seriphia Galaxy. Dalek Emperor's Chamber.**

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Dalek Supreme reporting to Emperor.

**EMPEROR** Enter!

*Door opens.*

**EMPEROR** Speak!

**DALEK SUPREME** Our forces are encountering increased resistance from the Earth Alliance, but the efficiency of our communication and supply network assures that Dalek forces continue to make advances in all sectors.

**EMPEROR** Excellent. Then the Vegan female is serving her purpose well?

**DALEK SUPREME** She is. The slaves call her 'The - Angel - of - Mercy'. She brings them hope. It makes them efficient.

**EMPEROR** Will she continue to help us?

**DALEK SUPREME** It is uncertain.

**EMPEROR** Explain!

**DALEK SUPREME** The emotional complexity of her moral predicament shows the potential to render her inefficient.

**EMPEROR** That is to be expected. Continue monitoring her for any signs of inefficiency.

**DALEK SUPREME** I obey.

**EMPEROR** She may feel compelled to act against us. That is the nature of the Human Factor.

**DALEK SUPREME** In that event, should we exterminate her?

**EMPEROR** Only on my command.

**DALEK SUPREME** Understood.

#### 6. Int. Garazone Bazaar.

*Kalendorf is still in a bad mood from his row with Suz.*

**WERNAY** (*Running, out of breath*) Kalendorf! Kalendorf! Quickly!

**KALENDORF** Wernay? What is it? What's the matter?

**WERNAY** The Angel of Mercy... where is she?

**KALENDORF** Er... I don't know... In the bazaar somewhere. Why?

**WERNAY** There is trouble.

**KALENDORF** What kind of trouble?

**WERNAY** I... I...

**KALENDORF** Well... what?

**WERNAY** I don't know what to say. You tell us *not* to say. (*With difficulty*) It's... On one of the Garazone moons... A group of slaves... They will not work.<sup>10</sup>

**KALENDORF** All right, all right. Forget about Suz. I can deal with this. Can you take me there?

**WERNAY** I landed my skimmer at the docks... I don't know... The Daleks may have impounded it.

**KALENDORF** How long ago did you land?

**WERNAY** I came straight here, I don't know -

**KALENDORF** Not long then. The Daleks are pretty lax here. They think they're sitting pretty. Come on, we should be all right.

#### 7. Int. Wernay's Skimmer.

*Establish whoosh of engines taking off and crossfade to interior.*

**KALENDORF** All right. We're clear.

*Burble of scanners.*

**WERNAY** No sign of their transolar disc patrols.

**KALENDORF** No... not yet. Now give me your hand.

**WERNAY** Here.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Now, can you understand me? Answer with your mind. Remember? Don't speak. Use your mind.

**WERNAY** (*Telepathic echo*) I... understand...<sup>11</sup>

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Good. The Daleks probably don't have your skimmer bugged, but you can never be too sure, can you?

**WERNAY** (*Telepathic echo*) No. Never too sure.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Now tell me, what the hell's going on? Which moon are we heading for?

**WERNAY** (*Telepathic echo*) K5000. There's a young hothead there... Morebi... He heard your message... 'death to the Daleks'. He thinks it's time to act now.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) No!

**WERNAY** (*Telepathic echo*) I know... I know... But he won't listen. He has got a group of slaves together and they will not start their shift. He says the revolution must start now.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) It's too soon! It's too soon, don't you people understand?

**WERNAY** (*Telepathic echo*) We do understand, Kalendorf. But Morebi will not listen.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) Well, he'd better... or we're all finished. *Fade up engines. Music cue. Time passes.*

**WERNAY** We're approaching K5000's artificial atmosphere bubble now.

*Controls operate. A negative beeping sound.*

**WERNAY** Something's wrong.

**KALENDORF** The orbital navigation beacon's not giving off a signal.

**WERNAY** They must have attacked the communications centre.

**KALENDORF** Exactly what is this Morebi capable of, Wernay?

**WERNAY** I don't know... They say that when the Daleks first invaded Garazone, they killed his family... one by one. He surrendered. They say he's never forgiven himself.

**KALENDORF** Hmm. Then he's got something to prove. (*Sighs*) Anything on the visual scanners?

*Buzz of screen clearing.*

**WERNAY** (*Squinting*) I'm getting... That looks like -

**KALENDORF** Fires. Human bodies burning. (*Grave*) Take us down, Wernay.

### 8. Ext. Garazone Moon K5000.

*Wernay's skimmer touches down. Door opens. Landing ramp folds down.*

*Kalendorf and Wernay walk down the ramp. Fires are burning.*

**KALENDORF** My God, what's happened here?

**WERNAY** When I left, they were threatening to attack the Robomen.

**KALENDORF** Well, they did more than threaten. It's a massacre.

*Footsteps over gravel.*

**KALENDORF** How many Robomen were there?

**WERNAY** About fifty, I think.

**KALENDORF** (*Surveying area*) Yes... Looks like your friend Morebi and his merry band have killed them all. The fools.

**WERNAY** They've smashed all the security scanners too.

**KALENDORF** Were there any Daleks stationed here?

**WERNAY** I think.... just one... in the guard post.

*Distant shriek of Dalek creature.*

**KALENDORF** What the hell are they doing?

**WERNAY** It's... it's coming from that warehouse.

**KALENDORF** Come on, Wernay! Come on!

*Footsteps as they run off.*

### 9. Int. Garazone Moon K5000. Warehouse.

*The sound of MOREBI and his cohorts taunting and stabbing at a Dalek creature in its open casing. The Dalek creature squeals in pain. Footsteps of KALENDORF and WERNAY arrive. The sound of their exhausted breathing.*

**KALENDORF** What the hell's going on here?

**WERNAY** Morebi! Morebi!

**MOREBI** Ah, Wernay, you brought Kalendorf. Good. My friend, the revolution starts now. Just as you said, death to the Daleks!!!

*His cohorts all chant 'Death to the Daleks' and give a few more stabs at the Dalek creature.*

**KALENDORF** Shut up! Shut up! Stop it!

*The chanting tails off.*

**WERNAY** Oh, Morebi, what have you done?

**MOREBI** What's the matter?

**KALENDORF** What are you doing to that Dalek?

**MOREBI** (*Morbid amusement*) Huh! Don't look so frightening with the top blown off their machines, do they? Eh? Hello in there! Ha!<sup>12</sup>

*Stabs the Dalek creature. It squeals.*

**MOREBI** You filthy lump of scum! How long can you survive like that, eh?

**DALEK** (*Gurgling*) You... you will be... exterminated.<sup>13</sup>

*Morebi leads his men in raucous laughter.*

**MOREBI** Oh! We will be exterminated, will we? Oh, we're really terrified, aren't we men? Terrified of the little green blob... choking and drowning in its own filth!

*He spits at the Dalek.*

**KALENDORF** It's right, though.

**MOREBI** What? What do you mean? How can it hurt us now?

**WERNAY** Listen to Kalendorf, Morebi.

**KALENDORF** The moment you blew the top off that Dalek, it sent an automatic emergency signal to Dalek Control at Garazone Central.

*Pause.*

**MOREBI** What?

**KALENDORF** The Daleks will be right behind us.

**MOREBI** (*Defiant*) Then we shall fight them! Death to the Daleks! Death to the Daleks!

*His men join in again.*

**WERNAY** You can't, Morebi! *Morebi!*

*The chanting subsides.*

**KALENDORF** (*Topping them*) And how many of you did it take to defeat this one? Hm? How many of you did it kill first? (*Pause*) This warehouse is full of the burnt bodies of half your friends... Isn't it? So how are you going to stand up to a hundred Daleks?

**MOREBI** A hundred, a thousand, a million. It does not matter! We will fight.

**KALENDORF** And you will die. Two Daleks would be enough to deal with all of you. Do you have any ammunition left?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** (*Harsh laugh*) No. What's the matter with you people? Why did you do this?

**MOREBI** It is as you say, Kalendorf. The secret message you give with your mind. I have heard it. Death to the Daleks... We must rise up and destroy them. Be free.

**KALENDORF** Are you just stupid? Is that it? The message... the message the Angel of Mercy and I spread is that you are to listen for those words... One day, you will hear them... when there are enough of us to make a difference. Didn't you understand that?

**MOREBI** (*Suddenly exhausted*) Yes... yes... But... how can we wait...? Every day... working till we drop. We sleep, we eat... and then we work again... We are helping the Daleks. That cannot be right. (*Pause*) That is true, isn't it, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** It isn't a question of right or wrong.

**MOREBI** Not a question - ?

**KALENDORF** It's about survival! Don't you understand? What you're doing here... it's just a pointless gesture! And you're risking the whole plan. If the Daleks suspect that the Angel and I are doing anything except encouraging slaves to work and be content - then it'll be all over! Over! Do you understand? No more rest, no more food! Just work... until you die.

**MOREBI** And you... you and the Angel... They will kill you?

**KALENDORF** Of course.

**MOREBI** Huh. You are frightened, Kalendorf. Like a cringing little child. You are *frightened*.

**KALENDORF** Like you were, when they killed your family?

**MOREBI** (*Suddenly caught off guard*) What...?

**KALENDORF** Now you listen to me, Morebi... I have spent all of my life training to fight for the glory of my people. Since birth, every fibre of me has been attuned to the needs of combat - and yet in all that time my people have been living under the shame of defeat. So, believe you me, I know what that impulse to strike a blow feels like. It lives in my heart as if the battle has never ceased... as if defeat at the hands of the Earth people had never come about. And yet *I* can still wait, Morebi. So you see, I ask nothing of you... of all of us that I haven't asked of myself for as long as I can remember.

*FX: Dalek spaceship landing nearby.*

**WERNAY** It's a Dalek saucer! Landing right outside!

#### 10. Ext. Garazone Moon K5000.

*The saucer completes its landing.*

#### 11. Int. Dalek Saucer. Control Room.

*DALEK 1 is the taskforce leader.*

**DALEK 2** Touchdown effected.

**DALEK 1** Perceptor readings?

**DALEK 2** Perceptors indicate all Robomen destroyed. The Dalek sentry's lifesigns are minimal.

**DALEK 1** Prepare assault force for immediate disembarkation.

**SUZ** Wait.

*Pause. Music cue.*

**SUZ** The Dalek Supreme has ordered that I should speak to these slaves.

**DALEK 1** The slaves have defied the Daleks. They must be punished.

**SUZ** Punished, yes, but not killed. If your assault force attacks, the slaves will fight... and your Daleks will kill them.

**DALEK 1** It is of no consequence.

**SUZ** I have the authority of the Dalek Supreme in this matter! Do you dispute that? (*Pause*) Well?

**DALEK 1** No.

**SUZ** Then do as you are instructed.

**DALEK 1** (*Reluctantly*) I... obey.

**DALEK 2** Alert. Alert. Observe visual scanners.

**SUZ** (*Taken aback*) Karl... It's Kalendorf... and... who's that? Ah, Wernay... one of the elected Garazone foremen.

**DALEK 1** If your associate, Kalendorf, is in league with the rebelling slaves, he will be exterminated.  
**SUZ** He's not in league with them. Wernay must have contacted him... tried to get Karl to persuade the rebels to surrender.  
**DALEK 1** You do not know that.  
**SUZ** I know Kalendorf. And he's under my protection! Now, open the hatch and let me out.  
**DALEK 1** I will accompany you.  
**SUZ** No! You will remain in here. Do you understand?  
**DALEK 1** Very well, but if you fail to convince the slaves to surrender, they will be exterminated.  
**SUZ** Open the hatch!

### 12. Ext. Garazone Moon K5000.

*Hum of saucer's engines ticking over.*

**KALENDORF** (*Reflective*) Beautiful simplicity to the design, isn't there?  
**WERNAY** Mm? The saucer?  
**KALENDORF** Yes. How can something so smooth and graceful have anything to do with such... hatred?  
**WERNAY** I... I don't understand, Kalendorf. I can see no beauty in it. To me... it is just... a Dalek ship. Something... evil.  
**KALENDORF** Yes... yes, you're right, of course. (*To saucer*) Come on, come on, what's keeping you, then?  
**WERNAY** Do you think they have the Angel of Mercy in there?  
**KALENDORF** You can count on it, Wernay.  
*Dalek saucer hatch opens.*  
**KALENDORF** And there she is. Over here!  
**SUZ** (*Approaching, running*) You're *talking* to me now, then?  
**KALENDORF** I see you managed to convince them not to come out, guns blazing.  
**SUZ** Only just. Wernay, how are you?  
**WERNAY** I... as well as can be expected. Under the circumstances.  
**KALENDORF** So, what are you going to do, *Angel of Mercy*?  
**SUZ** You'd better explain the situation for me, Karl.

### 13. Int. Garazone Moon K5000. Warehouse.

**NARRATOR** Have you ever looked into the eyes of someone for whom survival has no meaning? Eyes that betray a fear and desperation which have twisted themselves into an insane, self-destructive anger. It is a pitiful and terrifying sight. Men and women, shaking, sweating... allowing their lives to bleed away into futility. The girl had only just begun to wonder if this would ever happen. If there would be those who could not survive on promises of hope... who could not find it within themselves to have faith that one day the Daleks would be defeated. She could not blame them. She had the same doubts every day.<sup>14</sup>  
**MOREBI** But you cannot tell us *when*, can you? You cannot tell us if this... this great uprising will even happen in my lifetime – *can you?*!  
**SUZ** No. But I can tell you that if you don't surrender, you will die.  
**MOREBI** And if we surrender, what will happen to us? Well?

#### 14. Ext. Garazone Moon K5000

*Fade in MOREBI and his men giving their 'Death to the Daleks' chant in the background. SUZ's footsteps approach.*

**KALENDORF** What happened?

**SUZ** They're brave people.

**KALENDORF** They're insane.

**SUZ** Isn't that what bravery is, in the face of the Daleks? I sometimes wish I was mad. That I couldn't think straight. That I didn't care about life anymore.

**WERNAY** But... Angel of Mercy, it is because you care that so many lives have been saved.

**SUZ** Oh... Wernay... I...

**WERNAY** What?

**KALENDORF** (*Suspicious*) So Morebi decided to sacrifice himself and his people? And he came to that conclusion on his own?

**SUZ** What are you saying?

*Dalek saucer door noise interrupts them.*

**KALENDORF** (*Low and urgent*) And now your Dalek friends are leaving the saucer. Suz, what the hell do you think you're playing at?

**DALEK COMMANDER** (*Approaching*) The rebels have not surrendered.

**SUZ** No, they haven't. So you must kill them... Kill them all!

**KALENDORF** (*Aghast*) Suz?

**WERNAY** But, you can't just -

**SUZ** And him! This one! He's one of the ringleaders. You must kill him as well. (*Savagely*) Kill him!!!

**DALEK COMMANDER** Exterminate.

**KALENDORF** Noooo!!!

*Blast of Dalek gun.*

**WERNAY** (*Screams in agony*) Angel of Mercy!!! (*His words turn into a scream as he dies*)

**DALEK COMMANDER** Assault force will direct maximum firepower at the warehouse. Fire! Fire! Fire!

*Massed Dalek blasts. Massive explosion. Slowly fade mayhem under plaintive music cue. Time passes. Crossfade to:*

#### 15. Int. Dalek Saucer.

*The Dalek heartbeat. Dalek dialogue dips under SUZ and KALENDORF's exchange.*

**DALEK 1** Now on course for Garazone Central.

**DALEK 2** Rangerscope is tracking replacement slave space transport and security force. Moon K5000 will be fully operational within one Garazone day.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) So, are you satisfied with your day's work?

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) There was no other way. If Morebi and his people had been captured, they would have been interrogated. The Daleks would have found out... everything... It would have destroyed everything we've achieved. You know it had to be done.<sup>15</sup>

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) You almost sound like a Dalek.

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) It - had - to - be - done. Tell me you know that. (*Pause*) Karl, please. Please. (*Pause*) Please.

### 16. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship. Hypersleep Module.

*The gentle, undulating hum of the hypersleep units. A wake-up pinging alarm.*

**ALBY** (*Stirring from sleep*) Urrrgh... Ah... that's it, Pellan, m'lad, we're cooked. (*Bad taste in his mouth*) Baargh... Hypersleep. I hate it. Drudger, will you open this damn hyper-pod before I get an attack of claustrophobia.

*Pod opens.*

**DRUDGER** Pod open.

**ALBY** Thank God I've got some human company on this trip. If all I had was you hovering about stating the bleedin' obvious, I think the chances are I'd end up chewing the control panels before I ever got near to finding Suz.

**DRUDGER** Please explain.

**ALBY** And open up Pellan's pod while you're about it, young fella-m'lad.

**DRUDGER** Pod already deactivated. Pellan is in the control room.<sup>16</sup>

**ALBY** How come? Oh forget it. Pellan!<sup>17</sup>

### 17. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship. Control Room.

*Sound of computer chattering. [Plot note: PELLAN has called up the Daleks and told them about ALBY's interest in SUZ.]*

**ALBY** (*Distant, approaching*) Pellan! Pellan! What are you up to? Oh... hi, Alby.

**ALBY** How come you're up already?

**PELLAN** Dunno. My pod... well... It just deactivated early, I suppose.

**ALBY** Oh... well... Er, I see. Are we at the Garazone System?

**PELLAN** Still some way off. But I don't think you're going to like it.

**ALBY** Full of Daleks, you mean? I was expecting that.

**PELLAN** No. I mean... Well, look... I've been intercepting Dalek communications... decoding bits on the computer.

**ALBY** I thought you were a journalist, not a code-cracker.

**PELLAN** Huh... No, I learnt a bit from the lads on the Vega News ship. We used to listen in on Dalek stuff... to relay what info we could glean back to Earth Central.

**ALBY** So... What have you got?

**PELLAN** It's your friend Suz.

**ALBY** What about her?

**PELLAN** They're moving her again. Her and a guy called... er... Kalendorn?

**ALBY** Kalendorf?

**PELLAN** Er...

*Computer bleeps.*

**PELLAN** Oh yeah... dorf... you're right, Kalendorf. Do you know him?

**ALBY** (*Covering*) Well, I've heard of him.

**PELLAN** Who is he?

**ALBY** Wait a minute, do you know where they're being moved?



**PELLAN** Er... The planet Guria.  
**ALBY** Guria...  
*Pressing of computer keys.*  
**ALBY** Guria... Guria... Where's that?  
**PELLAN** Right at the edge of the Dalek advance into the galaxy.  
**ALBY** Are they still advancing?  
**PELLAN** Oh yes. (Grave) Yes. Very much so. Things have got far worse while we've been asleep.  
*Bleep of computer screen readout.*  
**ALBY** Well, will you look at that?  
**PELLAN** What...? Is that Guria?  
**ALBY** Yeah. And she's not all that far away. Drudger, set course for Guria.  
**DRUDGER** Complying.  
**ALBY** When did they set off?  
**PELLAN** Who?  
**ALBY** Suz and... this Kalendorf guy.  
**PELLAN** Er... Not sure. Pretty recently.  
**ALBY** Right... well, maybe this time she won't leave before we get there. Drudger, give us all the power you've got.  
**DRUDGER** Increasing thrust to maximum burn.  
*Rumble of engines.*  
**PELLAN** Er... Alby. Do you mind if I ask you a question?  
**ALBY** Depends. Fire away.  
**PELLAN** What are you going to do when you find her? (Pause)  
 Haven't you thought about that?  
**ALBY** Truth is, Pellan... I've thought about it so much, it doesn't seem real. I'm just hoping that, when I'm confronted with the reality... well...  
**PELLAN** Well what?  
**ALBY** Well... that I'll know what to do.

### 18. Ext. Planet Guria. Oil Rig.

*A storm is blowing. Waves crash against the structure of the oil rig. Crossfade to:*

### 19. Int. Main Guria Rig Control.

*The sounds of the storm are muted.*

**DALEK** Gurian planetary weather conditions are worsening. Ocean wave force is increasing to danger levels.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Will this drilling platform withstand the force?

**DALEK** Structural integrity of all platforms in this oil field is decreasing, but planetary rangerscopes record stress currently within design tolerances.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Oil production is 30 per cent below minimum targets. Production must be increased!

**DALEK** Drilling cannot proceed under these climatic conditions.

**DALEK COMMANDER** And Gurian slave labour is inefficient!!! Where are the slave leaders? I ordered them brought to me!

*Door opens.*

**DALEK 1** Slave leaders will enter.

**HIGHNESS** (*Chuckling nervously*) Greetings... greetings, Dalek Commander... (*Chuckling becomes a little uncontrollable*) May I say, what an honour it is to be... (*chuckling breaks through*) er... summoned into your noble presence. (*More chuckling*)<sup>18</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** Do not make that disagreeable noise!

**HIGHNESS** (*Chuckling even more*) I'm sorry, noble commander of the most honourable Dalek race, but I can't help it. You make me nervous... and when I get nervous. Ha, ha, ha... I just... ha, ha, ha, start to chuckle.<sup>19</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** Silence!!! Silence or you will be exterminated!

*Highness stifles his giggles, but they are still somewhat in evidence.*

**HIGHNESS** Perhaps you'd better speak to Daughter. She is next in line to my throne... such that it is these days. (*Tries to disguise a giggle as a cough*)

**DAUGHTER** (*Mischievous and impish*) Hello.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Your people are an inefficient slave workforce!

**DAUGHTER** Sorry.

**DALEK COMMANDER** You are their leaders! You must instruct them to work harder.

**DAUGHTER** Yes... we are their leaders. (*Quoting*) I am Daughter of Highness, he who has ruled from birth and he who will rule until that day upon which he hands all High duties to his chosen Daughter. That is me. I am Daughter.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Your identity is not in doubt. You must instruct your people to work with more efficiency or they will be exterminated and replaced.<sup>20</sup>

**DAUGHTER** We tell them, noble commander. We tell them, 'Work hard for the noble Daleks. Work hard and all will be well', but it is the bad season. The weather is bad. The great seas of Guria are bad. And when the temper of our biosphere is ill, then its humble inhabitants, the ancient people of Guria, are sick at heart.

**DALEK COMMANDER** They are infected?

**HIGHNESS** (*Erupting into more nervous chuckles*) In a way... yes, noble commander.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Then you must cure their sickness!

*HIGHNESS erupts into chuckles.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Silence!!!

*His chuckles stifle into muffled giggles again.*

**DAUGHTER** Our people are without hope, noble commander.

**DALEK COMMANDER** We allow them food and rest. That is sufficient.

**HIGHNESS** Well... I'm afraid it isn't, noble commander.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Do not dispute with the Daleks!

**DAUGHTER** Noble commander, our people hear rumours... Rumours of... of one who speaks to the peoples of your great empire... There is tell of... of a woman who brings hope and strength wherever she may go.

**DALEK COMMANDER** You refer to the Angel of Mercy.

**HIGHNESS** Ah! Ah! We dared not speak that name. I tell my people... we must close our ears to the rumours spread by those who would foolishly oppose you.<sup>21</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** All resistance groups on Guria will soon be exterminated!

**DAUGHTER** Our humblest apologies for listening to such... such treacherous lies. Please, oh noble commander, we beg you to forgive us.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Tell your people, the Angel of Mercy is coming to Guria. Tell them they will have hope, that they will no longer suffer from the sickness of emotional despair.

**HIGHNESS** (*Giggling with delight*) Oh, noble commander, how can we – [thank you?]<sup>22</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** Leave! Leave now! Both of you! And cease making that noise!

*Highness and Daughter shuffle away giggling and murmuring excitedly. Their footsteps continue until the door closes and the sounds of the control room are shut out.*

**HIGHNESS** (*Confidential. Without a trace of a giggle*) So, the rumours are true. The Angel of Mercy is coming to Guria.

**DAUGHTER** Yes, father. It will be interesting to meet her.

**HIGHNESS** Hmm... I do so love irritating them, don't you?

**DAUGHTER** I could swear that every time you chuckle, those glowing ears of his burn brighter.

*They both burst out laughing.*

## 20. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.

**PELLAN** We're entering the Gurian System.

**ALBY** So far so good. Drudger, slow us to half thrust and scan for security detectors.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Pitch of engines slowly drops. Scanning FX.*

**ALBY** Maintain full visual sweep... And shut down all non-essential systems... even the coffee machine. The less of an energy signature we're giving off, the better.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Whirrs of power shutdown.*

**PELLAN** Doesn't seem to be much Dalek activity out there.

**ALBY** (*Musing*) No... no... If this really is at the tip of their spearhead into our galaxy, you'd expect a bit more fuss and bother going on, wouldn't you? (*Pause*) Hang on a minute, what's that?

**PELLAN** What?

**ALBY** There.

**PELLAN** Oh yeah. It's a long way off... that's what it is. Some sort of navigation buoy... something like that?

**ALBY** Drudger, can you magnify the image a bit?

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Magnification FX. Music cue – 'o-oh'.*

**PELLAN** Oh my God...

**ALBY** A Dalek on a transolar disc. Just one Dalek... Sitting out here. Busy doing nothing.

**PELLAN** (*Nervous*) He's not doing nothing... he's looking straight at us.

*Bleeping alarm.*

**DRUDGER** External communication is being received. Patching through.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Unidentified craft. Halt and identify.

**PELLAN** We're dead. That's it. We're dead. Why the hell did I agree to come with you?

**ALBY** Shut up, Pellan. At least he's not sure we're the good guys yet.

**PELLAN** I could be happily drifting around the Vega System, not worrying about breathing and frozen to death by now.

**ALBY** (*Stern*) Which is what you'll be any second now if you don't stop panicking.

**PELLAN** Sorry... sorry. I'm sorry.<sup>23</sup>

**ALBY** Drudger, send him back a load of audio distortion. Make him think we're having trouble with our comms system.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Distortion FX. In background, Dalek speaks under Alby and Pellan's lines.*

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Unidentified space craft. I am unable to interpret your callsign, you must clarify. I repeat, clarify!

**PELLAN** Do you think maybe if one of us was to pretend to be a Dalek... Maybe - no that's a stupid idea - He'd expect a special callsign or something.

**ALBY** Shut up, Pellan - whoa, whoa, wait a minute... You said you worked with the code-cracker boys back on Vega?

**PELLAN** Well, yeah.

**ALBY** You monitored Dalek transmissions?

**PELLAN** Yeah, but -

**ALBY** Can you remember anything... *anything*...

**PELLAN** Like what?

**ALBY** Like a Dalek call sign...? Something to put him off the scent for a moment? Give us time to get away.

*Pause.*

**PELLAN** Well... er...

**ALBY** Come on, think, man.

**PELLAN** All right... I'll give it a go. Er...<sup>24</sup>

*Starts typing on computer. Various bleeps.*

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Identify or I will open fire.

**ALBY** Come on, Gordon! He's not going to wait forever, mate.

**PELLAN** Er... I think... I think...

*Computer burble.*

**PELLAN** (*Triumphant*) That's it!

## 21. Int. Main Guria Rig Control.

*Establish exterior then crossfade into control room.*

**DALEK CMDR** Report!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Unidentified craft has transmitted Vega VI control callsign.

**DALEK 1** No arrivals from Vega VI are scheduled.

**DALEK CMDR** Has the craft's design configuration been matched to existing security data?

*Computer bleeps.*

**DALEK 1** Matching... now.

*Alarm sounds.*

**DALEK 1** (*Excited*) It is an Earth Alliance security scout-ship. Alert! Alert!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) The ship is moving away at speed.

**DALEK CMDR** Intercept it immediately! Alert all transolar disc patrols in Gurian orbit. This ship is to be totally destroyed!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) I obey.

## 22. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.

*Rise of engine power.*

**DRUDGER** Velocity increasing.

**ALBY** Steady now. Steady. That's it... I can't believe it, Pellan.

You did it.

**PELLAN** (*Incredulous*) Yeah... yeah... I think I did.

*Huge explosion.*

**ALBY** What the hell - ?!

*Another explosion. Pellan cries out.*

**DRUDGER** Under fire! Under fire! Squadron of Dalek transolar discs on attack run.

**ALBY** Pellan, are you okay?

**PELLAN** (*Recovering*) Yeah... yeah, I think so... argh... my back...

**ALBY** Drudger, increase speed to emergency thrust. Head for Guria.

**DRUDGER** Complying.

*Power of engines increases again.*

**PELLAN** You must be kidding. We can't land on Guria now. They'll be waiting for us.

**ALBY** I've not come all this way just to give up now.

*Another explosion.*

**ALBY** Drudger, select targets and open fire.

**DRUDGER** Firing.

*Guns firing. More explosions. Alby and Pellan cry out.*

## 23. Int. Main Guria Rig Control.

**DALEK** Earth Security scout-ship is heading for this planet.

**DALEK CMDR** Annihilate it!

*Door opens.*

**DALEK 1** Report for Dalek Commander.

**DALEK CMDR** Speak!

**DALEK 1** Hyperlink communication is being received from the Dalek Supreme.

**DALEK CMDR** Activate hyperlink.

*Screen clears.*

**DALEK SUPREME** This is the Dalek Supreme. These are your instructions...

## 24. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.

*The ship streaks past. Crossfade to interior ship.*

**ALBY** We seem to be outrunning them! I don't believe it!

**PELLAN** Neither do I.

**ALBY** How long to planetfall, Drudger?

**DRUDGER** At current velocity, planetfall -

*Bleeping alarm.*

**PELLAN** It's the comms system. Someone's sending us a signal.  
**ALBY** Who? What, the Daleks again?  
**PELLAN** I dunno. It's in code.  
**ALBY** Well you're the code-cracker now, Pellan. Find out what it says.<sup>25</sup>  
**PELLAN** Right. Er... here goes...  
*Typing of computer keys and bleeps etc. A muted explosion.*  
**DRUDGER** Dalek transolar discs still maintaining pursuit. Estimated atmosphere breach in two minutes. Activating heat shield.  
*Heat shield activation. Crossfade to thrusters firing.*

### 25. Int. Main Guria Rig Control.

**DALEK** Rangerscope readings indicate Earth Security scout-ship now entering Gurian atmosphere.  
**DALEK CMDR** Instruct squadron four to continue with pursuit.  
**DALEK** I obey.

### 26. Int. Alby's Scout-Ship.

*Crack of thunder. Ship swoops through storm. Crossfade to interior.*

**ALBY** Now that's what I call *really* bad weather.  
*Explosion.*  
**DRUDGER** Transolar discs closing.  
**ALBY** How's it going with the code-cracking, Pellan?  
**PELLAN** I think... Yes, it's co-ordinates. Someone's sent us co-ordinates for a landing site.  
**ALBY** Eh? Who sent it?  
*Tapping of computer keys and bleeps.*  
**PELLAN** I don't believe it.  
**ALBY** What?  
**PELLAN** It's a resistance group... They're saying we have to change course so that they can give covering fire.  
**ALBY** Covering fire? Fantastic! Drudger, read co-ordinates from the decoded message and feed them into the nav computer. Now!  
**DRUDGER** Complying. Course changing.  
*Explosions.*  
**PELLAN** Will you look at that. They're as good as their word! They're destroying the Daleks.  
*ALBY and PELLAN cheer triumphantly.*

### 27. Int. Dalek Transport Ship.

*Rumble of engines in space as it approaches. Crossfade to interior. Door opens. SUZ's footsteps on metal.*

**SUZ** Hi. *(Pause)* What are you doing? Counting them?  
**KALENDORF** I wonder what they're thinking down there. Thousands of Daleks... patiently waiting for the order to disembark. Probably itching to fight the good fight.  
**SUZ** Do you think that's how they see it?  
**KALENDORF** Isn't that how every army sees it during a war?  
**SUZ** Why the sudden interest in Dalek psychology?

**KALENDORF** It isn't sudden. I've been thinking about it ever since they let me live... on Vega VI.

*Rumble of engines drops in pitch.*

**KALENDORF** Engines are slowing.

**SUZ** We can't have reached Guria yet. Something must be wrong.

**KALENDORF** And there she goes again. Thinking like a Dalek.

**SUZ** Please, Karl... Can't you just give me a moment's peace? If you feel so morally superior, maybe you should have joined Morebi for a futile gesture.<sup>26</sup>

**KALENDORF** I meant... something must be *right*. If Guria's on the front line, and we're slowing down... maybe the Earth Alliance's forces are on the move.

*Alarm Sounds.*

**DALEK** (Tannoy) Emergency! Emergency! Battle alert!  
(Continues)

**SUZ** Looks like you're right.

**KALENDORF** It'll be ironic, won't it?

**SUZ** If the Angel of Mercy is blown to pieces by an Earth battle cruiser? I'd welcome it.

**KALENDORF** Oh, you don't get off that easily, Suz. Life's not like that.

**SUZ** No. You're probably right.

### 28. Ext. Guria Coastline.

*Waves crash against rocks. The wind howls. Alby's ship streaks down and crashes into the sea with a huge splash. Crossfade to:*

### 29. Int. Scout-Ship.

*Alarms sounding. Muted gurgle of water and sounds of sea lapping against the hull. Controls fizzing and fusing.*

**PELLAN** Alby! Alby! Are you all right?

**ALBY** Aaargh! Yeah... no... I dunno. Power cut out on the final descent.

**PELLAN** Lucky we crashed in the sea.

**ALBY** Yeah... Drudger! Status report! Drudger? Where is it?

**PELLAN** Can't see it... any chance you can get the lighting up to full strength?

**ALBY** That, among other things, is what I'm trying to find out, dear Gordon. Drudger!

*Strangled sounds from Drudger. Its motor whirrs uncertainly.*

**DRUDGER** Drive systems burnt out. Power minimal.

**PELLAN** Yeah, but we're in the sea, aren't we? I mean, are we sinking or what?

**DRUDGER** External detectors are offline.

**ALBY** We've got to see what kind of mess we're in. Drudger - can you open the main viewport shutters?

**DRUDGER** Com... complying

*A fizz and a pop as the Drudger shuts down.*

**ALBY** Drudger?

**PELLAN** He's had it.

**ALBY** What about the shutters, though?

*The shutters open. The sea wash sounds are now louder.*

**PELLAN** At least we're afloat.

**ALBY** Just about. Can you see any land?

**PELLAN** Look, we must've come down near enough to those coordinates the Resistance gave us.

**ALBY** So?

**PELLAN** So - they wouldn't have wanted us to come down in the middle of the sea, would they?

**ALBY** Why not?

**PELLAN** Well... because... Oh, I don't know. Look, just think of something to get us out of this, will you?

**ALBY** Why's that just *my* responsibility all of a sudden?

**PELLAN** Because you're the reason we're in this mess! Anyone sensible would have headed straight for Earth Alliance territory - but oh no, not you. You wanted to chase around the galaxy after some bint.

**ALBY** Gordon... I'm going to ignore that because I know you're frightened and a bit stressed out.

**PELLAN** Stressed out? Well funnily enough I am. Because I'm risking life and limb... and for what? Your sex life.

*A big metallic crunch.*

**PELLAN** What was that?

**ALBY** I think the ship's bumped into something.

**PELLAN** Some - what?

**ALBY** We'll have to open the top hatch and have a look. Er... the atmosphere *is* breathable on Guria, isn't it?

**PELLAN** What? I dunno - er, yes... yes, I think so.<sup>27</sup>

**ALBY** You *think* so? Ah well... (*Vocal noise of effort*)

*Hatch opens. Wind whistles in, spray dribbles down.*

**ALBY** (*Sniffs*) Well, smells breathable to me. Right...

*Vocal sounds of effort and FX as he climbs the metal ladder. Crossfade to:*

### **30. Ext. Scoutship. Guria Coastline.**

*Crashing of waves on rocks. Huge crunch. They shout above the noise.*

**ALBY** Gordon! Get up here! Now!

**PELLAN** (*Approaching up ladder*) What is it?

*Another huge crunch as the ship hits the rocks.*

**ALBY** We're hitting a load of rocks.

**PELLAN** What? (*Arriving on deck*) Oh no!

**ALBY** That, I believe, is the coastline. And we've got to get ashore or we'll be smashed to pieces with the ship.

**PELLAN** Oh come on! What's your ship made of? Glass?

**ALBY** Pellan, the power's gone. Remember? So the structural defence barriers are off! Am I getting through to you now?

**PELLAN** Well, I'm not climbing up there!

**ALBY** Well stay here and sink then. It's your choice, Gordon, old son!

### **31. Int. Guria Dalek Control.**

*Bleeping.*



**DALEK COMMANDER** The landing site of the Earth Alliance ship is registering on the rangerscope. Dispatch transolar disc patrol Nine-Zero to capture the intruders.

**DALEK** I obey.

**DALEK COMMANDER** They are to be brought here for interrogation.

**DALEK** Understood.

### 32. Int. Dalek Transport Ship.

*Doors opening and shutting. Dalek chatter in the background: 'Section 493 secured. All damage control units are now in position. Security patrol 79 to forward weaponry launch stations.' etc.*

**SUZ** Getting pretty agitated, aren't they?

**KALENDORF** Gearing up for a major engagement by the looks of it. A door opens. *The hum of an electric engine approaches.*

**DALEK** Move out of the way! Move!

**KALENDORF** All right, all right!

*The engine gets louder as it approaches.*

**SUZ** *(Over the noise)* What is that thing?

*The 'engine' passes by, noisily. A door closes, shutting the noise off.*

**KALENDORF** Some sort of torpedo... I think.

**SUZ** Then they're preparing for a space battle. Things are hotting up.

**KALENDORF** And we're right on the front line.

*Door opens.*

**DALEK** You two will come with me.

**SUZ** Why?

**DALEK** Silence! You will accompany me to the command deck. Now! Move!

### 33. Ext. Guria Coastline.

*Sea crashing against rocks. Vocal and foot sounds of ALBY and PELLAN struggling up the last few feet. PELLAN is really fed up. ALBY is pulling him up. Vocal improvisation here.*

**ALBY** Come on... that's it...<sup>28</sup>

**PELLAN** *(Exhausted)* Aaargh... *(Getting breath back)* Well... this Susan Mendes better be worth all this.

**ALBY** Shut up, Pellan or I'll push you back down there.

*Distant metallic crunch on rocks.*

**ALBY** That's the end of the ship. Lucky we got out in time.

**PELLAN** Lucky?! Huh!

**ALBY** Pellan... I'm warning you.

**PELLAN** Warning me... what? You mean you're really going to push me down the cliff?

**ALBY** Look, we're soaked through. We've got to find this Resistance group or some shelter before we catch our deaths out here.

**PELLAN** Is she rich or something?

**ALBY** What?

**PELLAN** This Mendes woman.

**ALBY** You really don't give up, do you? What is it with you?

**PELLAN** With me? You're the one who's nearly got us killed for the

sake of a woman. Come on, what does she do for a living? Has she got money? Did she steal something from you? What?

*Thump.*

**PELLAN** Aaargh!

**ALBY** Now just shut up, Pellan!

**PELLAN** She must've really got to you... whatever she did.

**ALBY** All right... all right. I'll tell you what she did. It's very simple. She made me happy.

*PELLAN gives a dirty laugh.*

**ALBY** Oh, Pellan... don't make me have to hit you again.

**PELLAN** Are you for real?

**ALBY** What do you think?

*Pause.*

**PELLAN** I think... There was some pretty high-security stuff going down on Vega VI.

**ALBY** *(Puzzled)* What?

**PELLAN** Oh... you can learn a lot if you keep your ear to the ground in a news station.

**ALBY** And what did you learn?

**PELLAN** Ever heard of the Reinsberg Corporation?

*Pause.*

**ALBY** Well... yeah. Suz worked for them.

**PELLAN** Uh-huh... Doesn't surprise me.

**ALBY** What about Reinsberg?

**PELLAN** I heard they had some big, top-secret contract with the Earth Alliance Space Security Service. Something called Project Infinity.

**ALBY** Never heard of it. Look, Suz was just a geologist... fairly bored with her job.

**PELLAN** And what are you, Alby Brook?

**ALBY** What do you mean? What's it to you, anyways?<sup>29</sup>

**PELLAN** Well, we're stuck on a Dalek-occupied planet. We're probably going to die here. I'd just like to know who I'm going to die with and what I'm dying for.

#### **34. Int. Dalek Transport Ship. Command Deck.**

*Busy sounds of activity. Dalek chatter. Door opens.*

**DALEK** Enter!

*Footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** What do you want with us now?

**DALEK COMMANDER** Silence!

**SUZ** We have a right to know!

**DALEK COMMANDER** You will observe the screen.

**KALENDORF** That's the planet Guria.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Correct.

**SUZ** Are those your ships moving towards it?

**KALENDORF** No... it's the Earth Alliance forces, isn't it?

**DALEK COMMANDER** Correct.

*Comms-alarm sounds.*

**DALEK** Incoming hyperlink communication from the Dalek Supreme.

**KALENDORF** *(Quietly, to SUZ)* Ah... he must be missing you.

**SUZ** Shut up, Karl.

*Screen clearing FX.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) This is the Dalek Supreme. Battle computers confirm the unexpected advance of Earth Alliance forces into the Gurian System.

**DALEK COMMANDER** What are your instructions?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The Earth force is superior in number and firepower. You will *not* engage them. The life of Susan Mendes is of greater importance to the Daleks. You will protect her.

**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey.

**KALENDORF** Very touching. You really are their star pupil, aren't you?

**SUZ** And the reason you're still alive.

**DALEK** Rangerscopes now show Earth forces engaging Dalek patrols orbiting Guria.

### 35. Int. Gurian Slave Quarters.

*Chatter of slaves on a rest period. Dripping water. Coughing. Not a pleasant place. HIGHNESS is snoring.*

**HIGHNESS** (*Waking*) Ah... Daughter... Did you get that food?<sup>30</sup>

**DAUGHTER** No...

**HIGHNESS** But, you said... (*Sighs*) The Resistance are so ungrateful these days.

**DAUGHTER** Never mind that - listen. They've had word from an approaching Earth fleet. The Earth Alliance are going to retake Guria, so the Resistance -

**HIGHNESS** But - are you sure?<sup>31</sup>

**DAUGHTER** Yes. They've already engaged the Dalek orbital defences. Father, they have the Daleks outnumbered. We could be liberated within hours. So, the Resistance -

*Distant explosion. Alarm starts. Distant Dalek Tannoy: 'Emergency'.<sup>32</sup>*

**HIGHNESS** What's that? The Earth forces attacking already?

**DAUGHTER** No - but it won't be long. No, that's what I'm trying to tell you, it's the Resistance. They're sabotaging the Dalek ships - blowing them up.

**HIGHNESS** Oh... I don't like it, Daughter. They'll turn this planet into a battleground. And our people will suffer the consequences.<sup>33</sup>

**DAUGHTER** They haven't exactly been enjoying the best of times under Dalek rule, have they?

**HIGHNESS** No... no... I suppose not. But what do we do now? The Daleks are bound to take reprisals. We're all in danger now.<sup>34</sup>

**DAUGHTER** There's a safe place the Resistance have -

**HIGHNESS** Look out!

**DALEK** Do not move!

**HIGHNESS** Oh dear.

### 36. Ext. Guria Coastline. Cave.

*Distant seawash. Footsteps and exhausted breathing of Alby and Pellan. Both shivering with cold as they sit.*

**ALBY** Still no sign of the Resistance.

**PELLAN** No... no...

**ALBY** I'm beginning to think that call you deciphered was some kind of hoax... from a Dalek with a bad sense of humour.

**PELLAN** Seemed pretty genuine to me.

**ALBY** Yeah... well... At least this cave gives us some shelter from that damn wind.

**PELLAN** God... I've lost all feeling in my hands.

**ALBY** Come here.  
*Rubs his hands.*

**ALBY** Any better?

**PELLAN** No.  
*Stops rubbing.*

**ALBY** Well... tough.  
*Pause. Pellan starts snivelling.*

**ALBY** Oh... pull yourself together, Gordon.

**PELLAN** (*Blubbing*) Why should I? We're going to die here, aren't we? (*Continues crying*) One way or another. No food... no proper shelter - or the Daleks'll get us first. I don't know how you can be so calm about it.

**ALBY** You're wrong about Suz, you know.

**PELLAN** What...? You mean she didn't work for Reinsberg?

**ALBY** No... I mean yes, she did. But I don't know anything about all that. Huh, ironic really.

**PELLAN** Why?

**ALBY** Because... well, because I'm... (*Laughs*)

**PELLAN** You're what?

**ALBY** I'm a spy, Gordon. A security operative for the Earth Alliance. But I just happened to meet her while I was doing my cover job.

**PELLAN** What was that?

**ALBY** Oh, I'm afraid I'd have to kill you and eat you if I told you that, old son.

**PELLAN** You, a spy? I'm not sure I believe you.

**ALBY** I'm not sure I ever believed it either, really. It was just the latest chapter in a pretty pathetic little life story. Cue violins.

**PELLAN** Eh?

**ALBY** Broken home, lived in a slum on Proxima Major, bad education, juvenile criminal - joined the army to escape. Got into trouble in the army - got my sentence suspended for agreeing to work for the security service. A life with no real hope... and certainly... no beauty. Until I met her.

**PELLAN** But you never told her how you felt.

**ALBY** That's right. So... I have to tell her. I know it sounds... pathetic. But it's like... she woke me up. And then I lost her. It made me realise that, all my life, other people have been making the decisions for me. But now, I know what I have to do. Take control. Find Suz.

**PELLAN** You may not ever find her.

**ALBY** Then I'll die trying.  
*Transolar disc descends.*

**PELLAN** What's that sound? Must be the Resistance... coming to find us. Hey! We're in here! Hey!

**ALBY** Oh God, no.

**PELLAN** What's the matter?

**ALBY** Daleks.

**DALEKS** Do not move! Do not move! You are our prisoners!  
*Build transolar disc FX.*

### 37. Int. Guria Dalek Control.

**DALEK** Patrol Nine-Zero reports capture of intruders.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Excellent. The Dalek Supreme orders that they must be transported with us when we evacuate this planet.  
**DALEK** Understood.  
*Distant explosion.*  
**DALEK** Gurian rebels are still at liberty. Launch bays on three drilling platforms have been severely damaged.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Have the Gurian leaders been captured?  
**DALEK** They are being brought here now.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Dispatch further security units to quell insurrection.  
**DALEK** I obey.

### 38. Ext. Transolar Disc. In flight.

*Distant seas sounds. Disc whooshes towards us... then, we're aboard!  
Hum of transolar disc motor. Voices raised over the engine sound.*

**PELLAN** Where are they taking us?  
**ALBY** No idea.  
**PELLAN** At least they don't want to kill us.  
**ALBY** Not yet, apparently.  
*Disc whooshes, descending.*  
**DALEK** Transolar disc patrol Nine-Zero. Final descent to control platform.<sup>35</sup>  
**PELLAN** Quite an operation the Daleks've got going here! I've counted fifty drilling platforms so far.  
**ALBY** They were here before the Daleks invaded. Guria used to be one of the Alliance's biggest fossil fuel suppliers.<sup>36</sup>  
*Distant explosion. Gunfire.*  
**ALBY** Whoah! What's going on down there?  
**DALEK** Gurian rebels are attempting sabotage, but they can never defeat the Daleks.  
**ALBY** Right... right... Well, good for you.  
**DALEK** Silence!  
*Whoosh of disc. Crossfade to:*

### 39. Ext. Guria. Drilling Platform.

*Explosion.*

**DALEK 1** Gurian rebel device has destroyed this launch pad's elevation control units.  
**DALEK 2** Seek out those responsible and exterminate them!  
*Gunfire.*  
**DALEK 1** Under attack! Under attack!  
**DALEK 2** Exterminate Gurian rebels! Exterminate!  
*Dalek guns fire. Gurian gunfire. Explosion.*  
**DALEKS** Vision impaired! Vision impaired. Motive units inoperative. Assist! Assist! Under attack! Under attack! Exterminate!

**GURIAN** Attack! Destroy them all! Charge!!!  
*Much screaming and battle cries etc. Gunfire, explosions and Dalek guns. Huge explosion.*

#### 40. Int. Dalek Transport Ship. Command Deck.

**SUZ** Why are you holding us here on the command deck?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** I think you may have overestimated your authority here. They don't seem to be listening.

**SUZ** The Dalek Supreme said we were to be protected! So let us go to our quarters! *(To KARLENDORF)* This is ridiculous. *(Aloud)* I demand that -

**DALEK COMMANDER** It is the order of the Dalek Supreme that you remain here. Observe the screen.

**SUZ** The screen? *(To KARLENDORF)* What's so important about the screen?

**KALENDORF** Well... At the moment it's showing the Dalek forces around Guria being well and truly defeated. I'm happy to watch that.

**SUZ** But why does the Dalek Supreme want me to watch this?

#### 41. Int. Gurian Drilling Rig.

*Door opens. Wind and spray etc.*

**DALEK 3** Move. Now.

*Footsteps on metal. Door closes.*

**DALEK 3** Forward.<sup>37</sup>

**ALBY** Nice to be inside at last, anyway.

**PELLAN** I still can't feel my hands.

*Distant explosion and gunfire.*

**ALBY** Sounds like more sabotage from the locals.

**DALEK 3** Silence. Keep moving.

#### 42. Int. Guria. Dalek Control .

**DALEK** *(Distort - breaking up)* Dalek casualties at 75 per cent. Earth Alliance battle cruisers now breaking through Gurian orbital defences. Battle computer predicts enemy assault craft will breach atmosphere within 500 rels.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Understood. Planetary evacuation procedures are now underway. But you must fight until your force has been totally exterminated to gain maximum time for our evacuation.

**DALEK** *(Distort)* I obey.

*Comms bleep off. Distant explosions and gunfire. They continue throughout the scene.*

**DALEK** Evacuation procedures are being obstructed by Gurian rebel sabotage.

**DALEK COMMANDER** They must be stopped.

*Door opens.*

**DALEK 2** The Gurian leaders.

**HIGHNESS** *(Chuckling)* Noble commander. May I humbly ask the meaning of -<sup>38</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** Silence!

*HIGHNESS stifles a giggle.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Broadcast this message on all frequency wavelengths and on all audio amplification units on this planet.

**DALEK** I obey.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Attention! Attention! All Gurian rebels. We have your leader, the one known as Highness. Speak to confirm this. (*Pause*) Speak!<sup>39</sup>

**HIGHNESS** I... I am here... my people.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Rebels of Guria, if you do not lay down your arms and surrender immediately, your leader will be exterminated.

*Distant explosions and gunfire continue.*

**DALEK** Fighting still continues.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Exterminate him.

**DAUGHTER** No - father!!!

*Dalek gun fires.*

**HIGHNESS** AAAAaaaargh!

*His body falls to the floor. Daughter howls in anguish.*

**DAUGHTER** You monsters!!! (*Sobbing*) Father... Father...

**DALEK COMMANDER** Confirm that he is dead.

*DAUGHTER sobs, unable to speak.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Speak!!!

**DAUGHTER** He's dead! You've killed my father, Highness of Guria.

*Fighting in the background fades.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Attention! If you do not lay down your weapons and surrender immediately, we will kill the female known as Daughter.

**DAUGHTER** I am no longer Daughter. By the death of my father, I am now Highness of Guria. And my first command to my people is to avenge my father's death. Fight on!

**DALEK** Silence!

**DALEK COMMANDER** Cut broadcast.

**DALEK** I obey.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) All Dalek units report Gurian rebels surrendering.

**DAUGHTER** No!!!

**DALEK COMMANDER** Isolate next transmission to internal Dalek command network only.

**DALEK** I obey.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Attention all Dalek units. When Gurian rebels have been captured, kill them. Kill them all!

**DAUGHTER** Nooo!!! (*Sobs uncontrollably*) Why do you do such things? Why are you so... so evil? Why? (*Sobs*)

*Door opens.*

**DALEK 3** Enter!

*Footsteps.*

**PELLAN** (*To ALBY*) What the hell's been going on here?

**ALBY** Best not to ask, old son. Best not to ask.

**DALEK 3** These are the intruders.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Activate video link with Dalek transport ship.

**DALEK** I obey.

#### 43. Int. Dalek Transport Ship. Command Deck.

**DALEK** Video link with Dalek Control on Guria now established.<sup>40</sup>  
**KALENDORF** What are they up to now?  
**SUZ** (*Quietly*) Alby? Is that... Alby?  
**KALENDORF** What...? I don't understand.  
**SUZ** That man on the screen... I - I know him.<sup>41</sup>  
**ALBY** (*Distort*) Suz? Suz! Is that you? Oh my God! Suz, it's me...  
Alby, I - I -  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Cut transmission.  
*Transmission cuts off.*  
**SUZ** Alby!!!  
**DALEK COMMANDER** Take her! Take her!  
**SUZ** Argh - get off me!  
**KALENDORF** Where are you taking her? Whe- ?  
**DALEK** Silence, or you will be exterminated!

#### 44. Int. Guria. Dalek control.

**ALBY** No! Bring her back! Why did you cut the link?! Suz!!!  
Suz!!!  
*A huge explosion. Human and Dalek screams. Slow fade.*

#### 45. Int. Dalek Transport Ship. Comms Centre.

*Slow fade up on Dalek heartbeat during narration.*

**NARRATOR** They took the girl... me... They took me to a room. It was much like that room on Vega VI. A chair. A screen. And the Dalek Supreme... staring out of it... Watching me. Dissecting my humanity with mechanical precision.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You recognised that human. (*Pause*) Answer! (*Pause*) Answer! Answer!!!

**SUZ** (*Subdued*) Yes.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Who is he? (*Pause*) Who is he? (*Pause*) You will answer! Who is he? You will answer! Who? Who? Who? Answer!

**SUZ** (*Bawling*) Someone I thought was dead! (*Pause. Quietly realising*) Someone... Someone I'd fallen in love with. But you wouldn't understand that, would you? (*Venomously*) Just put it down to the human factor. (*A sudden thought*) Why did you show him to me?

#### 46. Int. Earth Assault Craft. Med-Centre.

*Bleep of life support monitors etc. General hospital hubbub.*

**ALBY** (*Coming round. Much groaning*) Any danger of getting a drink?

**DAUGHTER** What sort of drink would you like?

**ALBY** (*Snaps to*) Wh - ? What happened? Who are you? Oh yeah, I remember. You were there when I saw Suz on that screen and when... what happened?<sup>42</sup>

**DAUGHTER** The Earth Alliance broke through. An assault craft, much like the one we are in now, scored a direct hit on the rig. You were... injured. You've been unconscious for days.



**ALBY** Days? Oh... Ooooooh... well, I feel... er...

**DAUGHTER** Sedated. Heavily.

**ALBY** Ah... yes. That'd explain the mild euphoria. (*Giggles*) Hey, where's Pellan?

**DAUGHTER** Your friend?

**ALBY** Friend? Yeah... yeah, I suppose he is my friend.

**DAUGHTER** Helping out with restoring the communications systems on the drilling platform.

**ALBY** Have we taken off and left him behind?

**DAUGHTER** No. I would not desert my people. They need me more than ever now. Now that the Daleks have gone. There's much rebuilding to do.

**ALBY** (*Taking it all in*) I... I see. Can I get up?

**DAUGHTER** No... no. Not yet. They've haven't finished... treating your wounds.

**ALBY** (*Suddenly groggy again*) Oh... oh...

**DAUGHTER** That woman on the screen. You know her?

**ALBY** Suz? Did that really happen? Did I really see Suz?

**DAUGHTER** You did.

**ALBY** Why was she on that screen?

**DAUGHTER** I don't know. She seemed to be important to you.

**ALBY** Yes. I... I've been looking for her.

**DAUGHTER** Then I will pray that you will find her.

**ALBY** That's very nice of you... but why should you do that?

**DAUGHTER** Because I know the empty pain of being apart from a loved one.

**ALBY** Loved one?

**DAUGHTER** The Daleks killed my father. I feel... dead, inside without him. There is no... joy any more.

**ALBY** I'm sorry.

**DAUGHTER** It is clear this Suz is the joy in your life.

**ALBY** Is it?

**DAUGHTER** It is. And that you love her.

**ALBY** I... didn't say that.

**DAUGHTER** No. You didn't say that.

*Door opens.*

**PELLAN** Ah! Awake at last. How are the new legs?

**DAUGHTER** I thought it best not to -

**ALBY** What? New...? Oh my God.

**PELLAN** Don't worry. They say you'll be running around in no time. Apparently they're almost as good as the old ones - maybe better.

**ALBY** (*In shock*) Er... what *happened* to the old ones? I was rather fond of them.

**PELLAN** Blown clean off, old son. You nearly bled to death. Didn't he, Highness?

**ALBY** Highness?

**PELLAN** Would have done if she hadn't helped you. I was out for the count.

**ALBY** Oh, God...

**PELLAN** laughs (*annoyingly*).

#### 47. Ext. Guria. Drilling Platform.

*Brisk wind blows. Approaching, awkward footsteps of Alby. Vocal sounds of him struggling. Sound of Alby grabbing a railing and gasping in relief.*

**ALBY** Now... let me get this straight -

**DAUGHTER** You're improving.

**ALBY** What? Oh, it doesn't feel like it. Huh... another month and I'll really get the hang of it... so they tell me.

**DAUGHTER** You're lucky to be alive.

**ALBY** Thanks to you. Anyway... I want to get this straight... You're telling me that this Angel of Mercy of yours and my Suz are one and the same person?

**DAUGHTER** It would seem so. My contacts in the Resistance tell me the Angel's real name is Susan Mendes.<sup>43</sup>

**ALBY** (*Almost to himself*) How the hell did she get herself mixed up with the Daleks?

**DAUGHTER** Daleks don't tend to give people much of a choice.

**ALBY** No... that's true. But... I just don't get it. What's she up to? And why was she on that screen... just there, for me to see? It's like the Daleks did it on purpose.

**DAUGHTER** Perhaps they did.

**ALBY** What do you mean?

*Alarm klaxon sounds.*

**ALBY** What's all that about?

*Sounds of general panic.*

**PELLAN** (*Approaching*) Alby! Alby! (*Arrives, out of breath*) Alby! We're screwed!<sup>44</sup>

**ALBY** What?

**DAUGHTER** What do you mean?

**PELLAN** The Daleks... They're finally making a counter-attack.

**DAUGHTER** When did this happen?

**PELLAN** Just now.

**ALBY** What about the orbital defence fleet the Alliance left to guard this planet?<sup>45</sup>

**PELLAN** Just got knocked out - Alby, the Daleks have been amassing a gigantic attack force ever since they evacuated.

**ALBY** How come they weren't detected by the long-range trackers?

**PELLAN** Er... I dunno. I heard something about a faulty transmitter interfering with the tracker beams, but look, we - !

**ALBY** We've got to get off this planet - fast!

**PELLAN** We can't! The last transport just left. They couldn't wait. Earth Alliance haven't got reinforcements within ten light years of this place. The Daleks will be here any minute.

*Explosions.*

**ALBY** Oh no... I don't believe this. Losing my legs I can cope with. But being captured by the Daleks twice in two months - Wait a minute!

**PELLAN** What?

**ALBY** There's one of those Dalek saucers they left behind still on the launch pad, isn't there?

**PELLAN** Well, yes, but we can't. I mean, we don't know how to fly -

**ALBY** I can fly anything. That's how I got into trouble in the forces. Come on – you too, Highness.

**DAUGHTER** I can't leave my people.

**ALBY** But –

**DAUGHTER** I think you know it is a waste of your breath and time to argue, Alby.

**ALBY** I suppose I do. Yeah.

**DAUGHTER** Go!

**ALBY** Well... look after yourself. Promise me.

**DAUGHTER** You know I cannot.

**ALBY** No more than I can, I suppose.

**PELLAN** Look – if we're going, we'd better –

**DAUGHTER** – Alby, if the Daleks invade again, it is more than likely the Angel of Mercy will come too.

**PELLAN** Angel of Mercy?

**ALBY** Suz... she means Suz. Look, Highness, if you see her –

*Explosion nearby. Vocal reactions.*

**PELLAN** Come on, Alby!

*Explosion.*

**ALBY** If you see her... tell her... tell her –

*A Dalek ship swoops in low, fires its weapons. Another explosion.*

**PELLAN** Come on, Alby! Move it!!!

**ALBY** All right!

**DAUGHTER** I'll tell her you love her, Alby.

*Explosions.*

#### 48. Int. Dalek Saucer.

*Door closes.*

**ALBY** Right... er... This looks like the main drive system... don't you think?

**PELLAN** I don't know. You're the expert – apparently. Try it.

*Control activates. Engines fire. Rising power hum.*

**ALBY** (*Jubilant*) That's it! I was right!

**PELLAN** Does that thing gauge the altitude?

**ALBY** Er... maybe – could do – Yes!

**PELLAN** Then it looks like we're going up pretty fast. What's this do?

*Control bleep.*

**ALBY** Don't touch anything... Aha!

*Screen activation FX.*

**ALBY** Main viewer screen. My God, you were right... We're already out of the atmosphere. We must've taken off at a fair lick. Better slow down before we bump into something.

*Controls activate. Power hum falls. Buzzing starts.*

**PELLAN** What does that mean?

**ALBY** Er... Er... Dunno. No, wait a minute. None of these controls are responding now. Er... I'd say we were locked onto some kind of homing beam. Oh no... look at the screen. We're heading straight for the Dalek fleet.<sup>46</sup>

*Massive jolt.*

**PELLAN** Was that them?

*Alarm sounds.*

**ALBY** No... we... we're changing course. Something's got hold of us. Probably a retrieval net of some kind.

*Dalek ship gunfire.*

**PELLAN** The Daleks are going to blow us to pieces whatever.

**ALBY** No... wait a minute... No, look, they're missing us. They're firing at whoever's got hold of us. Whoever's pulling us in.

**PELLAN** But who's pulling us in?

**ALBY** Let's hope it's someone friendly.

*Crossfade to sound of docking. Massive doors close. Crossfade back to interior of the saucer... Pause.*

**PELLAN** (*Nervous*) Now what?

**TANNOY** Attention! You are inside the Earth Alliance battle cruiser *Horatio*. Your vessel is surrounded by heavily armed personnel. You will open the airlock and surrender.<sup>47</sup>

**ALBY** Oh my God - they think we're Daleks.

**PELLAN** Well... tell them we're not.

**ALBY** I would - but I've no idea where the comm-link controls are... unless you're suddenly an expert on Dalek technology.

*FX: burning through bulkhead.*

**ALBY** Ah... now that's what I call impatient. They're cutting their way through the bulkhead.

*FX: burning stops. Metallic clunk as bulkhead section crashes to the floor. Pause.*

**ALBY** Hello? Hello! No Daleks in here! I'm Alby Brook... Earth Alliance Space Security operative. My friend and I are unarmed.

**TANNOY** Move to the opening with your hands up.

**ALBY** Come on, Gordon. Do as he says.

**PELLAN** (*Nervous*) Right.

*Footsteps and stop.*

**ALBY** This far enough?

**TANNOY** Fire!<sup>48</sup>

*Gunfire. Both cry out. ('Get down!!!' etc. Improvise.)*

*CLOSING THEME.*

## NOTES

1. Line changed to: 'They only let me tag along **with you** to keep you happy. Which, I might add, is completely out of character for the Daleks.'

2. This line – and Scene 2 – runs in a differing order, and as a montage of different takes, with each clip slightly overlapping the preceeding one. In the following, [/] is used to separate the clips:

**NARRATOR** Those words hurt the girl. And only the truth hurts. As Kalendorf walked off into the crowded Garazone bazaar, the girl thought back to Vega VI and her speech to the survivors of her home planet.

**SUZ** (*After a deep breath*) My name is Susan... you can call me Suz. I am like you. A slave of the Daleks. But I...

**NARRATOR** That had been six standard Earth months ago. And it was a speech she had since made on many worlds.

**SUZ** ~~...stood up to them. I don't know why... but I did. And they noticed.~~ I told them we needed food and rest. They gave it. *Some muted cheers.*

**SUZ** ~~Now they don't care whether or not we live or die.~~ But they do want us to work. That is their only concern. It's as simple as this... [/] If we work in shifts – eight hours on, eight hours off... and work efficiently [/] we will have rest and food. We will live. [/] If we defy them, they will work us to death – or just kill us [/] and replace us with other slaves from other planets they've conquered. [/] ~~Now...~~ I believe in hope. I believe that while we're alive, there's hope. [/] Hope for a better future.

*End on the Vega VI version of the speech.*

**SUZ** ~~To the Daleks, hope is irrelevant. They don't care if we have hope or not. But if they see it makes us work harder... then they will let us hope.~~

*Crossfade into narration.*

**NARRATOR** ~~Six months before...~~ the survivors on Vega VI had agreed and the Daleks had adopted the shift system of work. Everywhere the girl and Kalendorf had travelled since, on planet after planet, the slaves, often on the brink of starvation and exhaustion, had agreed. Well fed and rested, subjugated species became efficient – given just enough strength and hope to want to see the next day... Whether it was a day under Dalek rule or not seemed irrelevant. They were alive, after all. Standing in the Garazone Bazaar, the girl thought back to those early days of the Dalek War on Vega VI. After months of gruelling work ~~under her own shift system~~, she remembered, she had once again been called to Dalek Control. Once again, she had faced that screen. The image of the Dalek Supreme had formed before her, the cold light of its staring eye burning into her. Each time she faced this creature, she became more and more certain that it had no soul... And yet it somehow knew how to invade the very heart of her.

3. Line changed to: '(Distort) **The idea was originated by you.**'

4. Line changed to: '(Distort) **It is possible for you** to save millions... billions of lives.'

5. Line changed to: '(Snapping) I don't want to die! You know that! I know you know that! **Look**, let's stop pretending! So, all right, I'll do your dirty work for you! I'll do it! I'll do it, all right?! Just leave me alone – and stop saying my name!'

6. This line and the preceding reordered to:

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Transport arrangements will be made immediately. You will leave at first light.

**SUZ** Wait!

**DALEK SUPREME** This discussion is at an end.

**SUZ** Wait a minute! Wait!

7. Line changed to: '~~Increase power to the surveillance systems.~~ It is the order of the Dalek Supreme that all conversations between Susan Mendes and Kalendorf are transmitted from the Garazone Control unit to Dalek Control in the Seriphia Galaxy.'

8. Added dialogue - DALEK: '**I obey.**'

9. Deleted dialogue - DALEK: '~~They have parted. There is no more speech.~~'

10. Line changed to: 'I don't know what to say. You tell us not to say. (With difficulty) It's... ~~On~~ one of the Garazone moons... A group of slaves... They will not work.'

11. Line changed to: '(Telepathic echo) ~~I--~~ I understand.'

12. Line changed to: '(*Morbid amusement*) Huh! Don't look so frightening now with the top blown off their machines, do they? Eh? Hello in there! Ha!'

13. Line changed to: '(*Gurgling*) ~~You--~~ you will be... exterminated.'

14. Line changed to: 'Have you ever looked into the eyes of someone for whom survival has no meaning? ~~Eyes that betray a fear and desperation which have twisted themselves into an insane, self-destructive anger.~~ It is a pitiful and terrifying sight. Men and women, ~~shaking, sweating...~~ allowing their lives to bleed away into futility. The girl had only just begun to wonder if this would ever happen. If there would be those who **couldn't** survive on promises of hope... who **couldn't** find it within themselves to have faith that one day the Daleks would be defeated. She **couldn't** blame them. She had the same doubts every day.'

15. This line and the following two were reordered as:

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) There was no other way. If Morebi and his people had been captured, they would have been interrogated. The Daleks would have found out... everything... It would have destroyed everything we've achieved. You know it had to be done. It - had - to - be - done.

**KALENDORF** (*Telepathic echo*) You almost sound like a Dalek.

**SUZ** (*Telepathic echo*) Tell me you know that. (*Pause*) Karl, please. Please. (*Pause*) Please.

16. Line changed to: '~~Ped already deactivated.~~ Pellán is in the control room.'

17. Line changed to: 'How come? Oh forget it. Pellán! **Pellán!**'

18. Line changed to: '(*Chuckling nervously*) Greetings... greetings, Dalek Commander... (*Chuckling becomes a little uncontrollable*) May I say, what an honour it is to be... (*chuckling breaks through*) er... **to be** summoned into your noble presence. (*More chuckling*)'

19. Line changed to: '(*Chuckling even more*) I'm sorry, noble commander of the most honourable Dalek race, but I can't help it. **You see**, you make me nervous... and when I get nervous. Ha, ha, ha... I just... ha, ha, ha, **I just** start to chuckle.'

20. Line changed to: 'Your identity is not in **question**. You must instruct your people to work with more efficiency or they will be exterminated and replaced.'

21. Line changed to: 'Ah! **Now!** We dared not speak that name. I tell my people that we must close our ears to the rumours spread by those who would foolishly oppose you.'

22. This line and the next one changed to:

**DALEK CMDR** Leave!

**HIGHNESS** (*Giggling with delight*) Oh, noble commander, how can we thank you?

- DALEK COMANDER** Leave me! Both of you! And cease making that noise!
23. Line changed to: 'Sorry... sorry, **sorry**. I'm sorry.'
24. Line changed to: 'All right... **All right**... I'll give it a go. Er...'
25. Line changed to: 'Well you're the code-cracker now. Pellan. Find out what it says. **Right?**'
26. Line changed to: '**Oh**, please, Karl... Can't you just give me a moment's peace? If you feel so morally superior, maybe you should have joined Morebi for a futile gesture.'
27. Line changed to: 'What? I dunno - er, yes... **no**... yes, I think so.'
28. Line changed to: 'Come on, **come on**... that's it...'
29. Line changed to: 'What do you mean? What's it too you, **anyway?**'
30. Line changed to: '(Waking) Ah... **Ah**... Daughter... Did you get that food?'
31. Line changed to: 'But, **but, but** - are you sure?'
32. Deleted dialogue - DALEK TANNOY: '**Emergency**.'
33. Line changed to: 'Oh... I don't like it, Daughter. They'll turn this planet into a battleground. And all our people will suffer the consequences.'
34. Line changed to: 'No... no... I suppose not. **But** what do we do now? **I mean**, the Daleks are bound to take reprisals. We'll all **be** in danger now.'
35. Line changed to:
- DALEK** (*Distort*) **Control** to Transolar disc patrol Nine-Zero. **You will now make** final descent to control platform.
- DALEK 2** I obey.
36. Line changed to: 'They were here before the Daleks invaded. I'm sure Guria used to be one of the Alliance's biggest fossil fuel suppliers.'
37. Line changed to: 'Forward! **Forward!**'
38. Line changed to: '(Chuckling) Noble commander. May I humbly ask the meaning of **this** - '
39. Line changed to: 'Attention! Attention! All Gurian rebels. We have your leader, the one known as Highness. **He will** speak to confirm this. (Pause) Speak!'
40. Line changed to: 'Video link with Dalek Control on Guria **is** now established.'
41. Line changed to: 'That man on ~~the~~ screen... I - I know him.'
42. Line changed to: '(Snaps to) Wh - ? What happened? Who are you? Oh yeah, I remember. You were there when I saw Suz on that screen and... and when... what happened?'
43. Line changed to: 'It would seem so. ~~My contacts in the Resistance tell me the Angel's real name is Susan Mendee.~~'
44. Line changed to: '(Approaching) Alby! Alby! (Arrives, out of breath) Alby! **Alby!** We're screwed!'
45. Line changed to: 'What about the orbital defence fleet the Alliance left to guard **the** planet?'
46. Line changed to: 'Er... **I**... Dunno. No, no, wait a minute. None of these controls are responding now. Er... I'd say we were locked onto some kind of homing beam. Oh no... look at the screen. We're heading straight for the Dalek fleet.'
47. Line changed to: 'Attention! **Attention!** You are **now** inside the Earth Alliance battle cruiser *Horatio*. Your vessel is surrounded by heavily armed personnel. You will open the airlock and surrender.'
48. Line changed to: '**Open** fire!'

# THE HUMAN FACTOR

**Is *The Human Factor* a reference to the 1967 *Doctor Who* serial *The Evil of the Daleks*?**

Nicholas Briggs: It's not specifically a reference to *The Evil of the Daleks*, but obviously it's a term that was invented for that story. Like so much other stuff about the Daleks, I was borrowing it. Since these Daleks were being more cunning about their analysis of human behaviour and I was hoping to investigate human behaviour more deeply, I thought it was an apposite title.

**You wrote *The Human Factor* after the recording of *Invasion of the Daleks*. How do you think that affected the script? Did the actors' performances influence where you went? You could presumably hear their voices as you wrote.**

Having worked with the actors on the first episode gave me a great impetus. I now knew for sure that I had cast the right people, thank goodness! I knew I could make the dialogue as truthful as possible within the context of this space opera... I'd discovered that this cast could cope with that as well as I'd hoped they would. In particular, it made me write that big speech that Kalendorf gives to the slaves on the Garazone moon; when he talks about how much he wants to destroy the Daleks and can't stand the humiliation of defeat and servitude. I wrote that while I was waiting for a delayed press screening of some ghastly Japanese film I had to review. Having written that speech was the only thing that made the trip worthwhile!

**Early scenes are set in the Garazone Bazaar – again, an element from a previous *Doctor Who* audio play.**

I'm always keen on making alien planets seem sort of grubby and busy and not all about gleaming corridors and sliding doors. I'd already spent a huge amount of time creating that Garazone Bazaar sound effect for *Sword of Orion* [2001 *Doctor Who* audio play] so, yes, I confess... I took a short cut! I was very proud of that sound effect. It sort of sums up the whole culture in one huge noise. I thought it was also useful in the sense that all that noise very much made Suz and Karl sound as if they were 'in the thick' of something.

**Where did the phrase 'Angel of Mercy' come from?**

I don't think 'Angel of Mercy' is a particularly original phrase, but it just seemed so right... and so beautifully wrong for the Daleks to say. There were never any alternatives as far as I remember. But I do love phrases that sound wrong when the Daleks say them. You just have to really go for them and make them sound weird, like the Dalek is kind of twitching when it has to say something it would not normally say. 'Angel' and 'Mercy' are words that a Dalek would hardly ever use in any other context. It makes them stand out and gives them greater weight in the story.



**The sequence with Morebi and his mob ends with a shock: Suz ordering their deaths.** There was quite a bit of John Ainsworth's very welcome influence here. We talked a lot about the characters, particularly Suz and Alby. As I've said before, John was very much thinking of the Alec Guinness character in *Bridge on the River Kwai*. That character became too good at working with the enemy. He saw it was the only way for his men to survive and in the process forgot about the greater good.

It's not quite that simple with Suz, but John and I certainly wanted her to waver a bit and, as a result, make the audience and Kalendorf feel a little uneasy about the direction in which she was going. I am fascinated by that whole argument about whether or not you immediately try to smash injustice wherever you see it and risk defeat, or play the long game and ignore suffering and injustice along the road to a greater and long-lasting victory. That was the crux of the Suz dilemma.

What made it more interesting was having Kalendorf disapprove of her actions. That created a real tension between them. There's that point when she begs him to tell her she's done the right thing, but he simply says nothing. I thought it was appropriate to push the drama to this level, because it's that kind of thing – when friendships fall apart – that really hits home emotionally.

**The characters do come across as 'real'. Alby gets drunk and belches, people argue and have bad moods. It's a leap away from *The Dalek Book*, surely? Are you more interested in flawed characters than all-shining sci-fi heroes?**

Of course I'm more interested in flawed characters, because that's reality! Even if you're writing space opera, your characters must be real, not just because that's more honest and creates more engaging drama, but because real characters with real motivations push your plot in interesting directions. Alby's flaws get him into all sorts of dramatically interesting trouble. It's the whole reason he ends up on Guria, for example. If he was some kind of idealised, heroic character, he'd simply obey orders and you'd end up with a pretty standard, emotionless and boring plot.

**In the stage directions, it says Pellán 'has called up the Daleks and told them about Alby's interest in Suz'. How much information did you give to the actors concerning their character's true motives? Did John Wadmore – and later Teresa Gallagher – know that their characters were Dalek agents?**

This is an example of something I thought John Wadmore needed to know in order to play the scene in question. I wrote it into the script to remind myself to tell him this, because I knew John would never find out from reading his scripts that he was a Dalek agent, because he dies before that information is revealed. I don't think I told Tree she was linked to the Dalek Emperor when she was doing "Death to the Daleks!". At that stage, I thought I was going to kill her off anyway (when the link between her and the Emperor was broken). But, of course, she found out when she read *Project Infinity*. But the point was that Mirana didn't actually know she was working for the Daleks. The control over her mind was more subtle than that.

**How important is science fact? How much thought do you put into the practicalities of space ships and the like?**

In this context, it's almost totally unimportant. The whole problem with travelling over vast distances of space is the time dilation effect... all that business of the faster you go,

the slower time moves for you. So people who've gone off into space might come back and find everyone they knew had aged 50 years when they'd only aged three years. Now, all that stuff would make a story in itself, but *Dalek Empire* ain't that story. I mean, they try to be relatively scientifically accurate in *Star Trek*, and even they ignore that whole time dilation issue. So the 'science' I use is the kind of assumed, bad science that has been accumulating ever since science fiction began. It's the kind of thing that makes scientists grind their teeth in anger. All I do is try to create an internal consistency in the fantasy logic of my science. I go by a gut feeling of what sounds right and what works in terms of what I've already set up. These stories are not about science. They're about characters in a fantasy situation which has some degree of emotional reality. It is not predictive or extrapolating scientific trends.

**The two characters introduced in Scene 19 – Highness and Daughter – seem to come in to the story from a different series. What's that all about? Comic relief? A change of tone?** They were certainly introduced to create a change of tone after the terrible business of Suz having all those slaves in Garazone executed. But they were new characters, and, in a sense, all new characters arrive from their own fictional reality. I was looking for a race who'd have a reaction to the Daleks which wasn't the norm. I thought of actors who I could cast, and remembered my good friend Adrian Lloyd-James, who's a terrible giggler... suddenly, Highness was born!

**The cliffhanger's another corker, and although we don't discover this until "Death to the Daleks!", it kills off Pellán. Did you feel liberated, in that you could kill off your characters, unlike, say, in *Doctor Who* where the regulars are pretty much assured of their survival?**

It was liberating. Jason likes to paint this picture of me being some kind of serial-character-killing writer who he had to restrain in order to prolong the life of the series. I only amended my plans to kill Mirana because Tree turned out to be such a good actress, by the way. But the liberation is more to do with the audience's expectations. They know the series is finite. It is not a continuing format. It doesn't have to end with our heroes moving on to new adventures; but killing Pellán was a useful way of reminding them of that. *Doctor Who* always toys with the idea that the Doctor may die; but we all know that's just a lie, fun though it is. In *Dalek Empire*, I could toy with the audience about whether or not my characters would die, and the audience would genuinely not know what to believe. That's more exciting, isn't it?

# DALEK VOICES

**Was there ever any doubt that you'd play the Dalek voices? Did you ever give any thought to casting actors who'd played the Daleks on TV?**

Nicholas Briggs: No. You must be joking. I love it. Why would I give that job to someone else? Get real.

**Tell me about how you recorded the voices in the first series.**

As has been said many times before, the 'real' Dalek voices were recorded later. In the main studio session with the 'human' cast, we used 'stunt' Daleks. John Ainsworth would read-in with some rudimentary ring modulation effect on his voice. There were a couple of scenes, especially the Suz and Dalek Supreme scenes in which I actually read the Dalek lines myself, because I wanted to give Sarah something nearer the finished Dalek performance to bounce off. Thinking back to this later is what would convince me that it could work with me actually playing the Daleks in studio with the other actors. However, at this point we recorded them later.

Alistair Lock and I – and later Steven Allen and Robert Lock – would go through the scenes in order, and I'd allocate the lines as we went. I'd worked most of this out in advance, although I was open to a certain amount of 'Oh, can't I do that one too?' from Alistair. Another factor (beyond the financial concerns) which convinced me to do all the Dalek voices myself was that, during some of these sessions, Alistair commented that it was uncanny how I could do the Dalek voices he could do. At one point, he said something like, 'It's like listening to me, but I'm not speaking'.

Strangely, thinking back, no one read in the human lines, we would just read them in our heads and carry on. Another factor that deterred me from using this technique again was my purchasing of my own ring modulator. Unlike Alistair's, mine was an analogue one, far closer to the kind of thing the BBC would have been using all those years ago. Unusually for analogue technology, one of the by-products of this was that I could always set the modulation accurately at the same rate. Alistair's digital set-up would, inexplicably, change every time we did a Dalek session. The result is that the voices are slightly different in each episode of the first series.

**Were you impersonating Dalek voices from the TV show? Were you deliberately using a 'Roy Skelton' voice, for example?**

Our starting point was always emulating our favourite television Dalek voices. Alistair's forte was doing Roy Skelton and Brian Miller. We called the Brian Miller voice the 'naughty schoolboy' Dalek, because he always sounded pretty pleased with himself in an evil sort of way – like he'd just nicked all the other boys' gobstoppers! Roy Skelton's Dalek is very much like his Zippy voice from *Rainbow*... and both Alistair and I could do that. I learnt the Brian Miller one by listening to Alistair. My mainstay was Peter

Hawkins, which Alistair couldn't do; but he was very good at the Michael Wisser Dalek, which I could do, but I found it hard to sustain – Alistair really had that one nailed... and even created an extension of it when he did an 'Alec Guinness' Dalek. The Dalek Supreme is very much based on the voices Peter Hawkins did from *The Chase* [1965] onwards. The only one I've never really got a handle on is David Graham, although I feel I came pretty close to him in *Dalek War*. But the fact is that, from these starting points, we kind of made the voices our own, because once you get caught up in the manic passion of the Daleks, you start creating your own characters within that rigid, staccato delivery.

### **Is the voice recorded with the effect on it, or is that done in post-production?**

The best way to do a Dalek voice is to hear the modulation while you're doing it. There's something about the way the human voice reacts with the modulation that really informs what you're doing vocally. If you can't hear that interaction between voice and electronic distortion, you can never do a Dalek really effectively.

### **How much of the voice is the effect, and how much is the performance?**

I think it's fifty-fifty. Without the right modulation, a Dalek voice just sounds naff. *Day of the Daleks* [1972] and *Revelation of the Daleks* [1985] are disasters from that point of view. Without any modulation at all, they just sound really, really stupid. But the right modulation with a bad performance just sounds like a bloke with a slightly wobbly voice. All that manic, mechanical delivery has to be done by the actor. It's like playing any part, you kind of have to believe you are a Dalek. I've always found my best, most chilling Dalek voices have come out of those moments when, mentally, I'm totally in the zone... a living, bubbling lump of hate. What I've tried to do over the years – and some listeners have spotted it and liked or loathed it – is push the envelope with the expressive range of the Daleks. By its nature, that range has to be limited, but since this is audio, I feel you just need that extra bit of light and shade to effectively ram home the image of a horrible machine-creature. It also harks back to the Daleks of the mid-Sixties, when Peter Hawkins did a lot of playing around with extending vowel sounds and varying the tempo of his delivery. I think there are a lot of younger fans who are not so familiar with these Daleks, but for my money, these earlier versions are far more interesting and engaging. They actually sound like they're scheming and plotting and thinking of the next nasty thing to do rather than just barking and obeying orders.

### **Did lots of people want to do the voices?**

Lots and lots. Everyone thinks they can be a Dalek. They all want to do it for no money, just so they can say they did one. Rob Shearman just won't shut up about it. I just say yes, then 'forget' to tell him when the studio session is. Maria McErlane was recording [Doctor Who audio play] *The Wormery* when I was doing the last session for *Dalek War*. She came bounding in and said, 'Colin Baker tells me you're the man who's doing Dalek voices! Can I have a go?' So we made her day by letting her do a few silly voices... just for fun.

### **For Dalek War, what were your thoughts about the Alliance Dalek voices? They had to be slightly different, didn't they?**

The Alliance Dalek voices were worked out at the end of the *Project Infinity* Dalek session.

Alistair, Steve and Robert helped by listening and giving their opinions. It was a sort of Dalek mini-workshop!

### **What about the Mentor?**

I originally described her voice as 'lightly brushed' with a Dalek effect, but I wasn't sure about what I'd do with it in post-production. In studio, I recorded one track with Hannah Smith's voice fully effected with a slightly lower rate of modulation, and one track with no effect at all. I thought that would leave options open to me. The fact that it was effected in studio gave Hannah something interesting to play with as she did the voice. As it turned out, I kept that effected track, but then added a duplicate of that track underneath, pitched down a few semitones, which gave it a more threatening quality.

# "DEATH TO THE DALEKS!"

## 1. Int. Earth Transport Ship. Loading Bay.

Guns firing. Body falls.

**TANNOY** (Distort through mask) Cease firing!  
*ALBY's scared breathing. Footsteps approach and stop.*

**ALBY** Who are you?

**TANLEE** (Through mask) Sadly, the man who's responsible for looking after annoying little excretions like you.  
*Servo hiss of helmet being taken off. TANLEE gasps in relief.*

**ALBY** (Taken aback) Tanlee?

**TANLEE** Mr Tanlee to you, Brook.

**ALBY** (Suppressed anger) I take it you have an explanation for what you've just done.

**TANLEE** Righteous indignation from you? Congratulations. I never thought I'd see the day.

**ALBY** (Angry) Why did - ?

**TANLEE** Why did we shoot your friend Pellam? (Pause) He's got a small metal disc somewhere in his brain.

**ALBY** A...? What are you saying?

**TANLEE** (Impatient) The Daleks put it there.

**ALBY** (Penny drops) You mean he was working for them?

**TANLEE** Controlled by them. A slightly more sophisticated version of a Roboman, if you like.

**ALBY** (Incredulous) Roboman...

**TANLEE** If you'd paid any attention to your pocket computer download on Dalek methodology -

**ALBY** (Snapping back) It got left behind on Vega VI - but I did read it and I do know what a Roboman is, thank you. I'm just trying to get used to the idea that I've spent the best part of a year getting to know a Roboman.

**TANLEE** (Ignoring him) Sergeant, search the craft for Dalek bugging devices.

**SERGEANT** (Distorted through mask) Sir. (Moving off) Right, you three, with me!  
*Heavy footsteps as soldiers depart.*

**ALBY** Did you have to shoot him? Couldn't you have - ?'

**TANLEE** The process is irreversible, I'm afraid. The Daleks have seen to that.

**ALBY** I see... It's just that... I'd just got round to liking him.

**TANLEE** Don't punish yourself unnecessarily. The Daleks are good at what they do. And your friend Pellam here was a key element of the Dalek counter-attack upon Guria.

**ALBY** What?

**TANLEE** Didn't you wonder how the Dalek fleet got so close without setting off the planetary alarms?

**ALBY** He said something about a faulty transmitter interfering with the tracker beams, but I - My God.

**TANLEE** Yes. We believe it was Pellan who disabled the systems.  
**ALBY** (To himself) Pellan... Huh, and you seemed like such a harmless prat.  
**TANLEE** (Ignoring him) This way...  
**ALBY** Oh... right...  
*Sound of ALBY's efforts to walk with his new false legs.*  
**TANLEE** If you can manage to walk with those wretched new legs of yours.  
**ALBY** (In some discomfort) I'm trying, sir... I'm trying...

## 2. Dalek Transport Ship. Control Room.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Signals from the agent Pellan have now ceased.  
**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) It is of no consequence. Proceed with recapture of the planet Guria.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** I obey.  
**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) The Angel of Mercy...

## 3. Int. Seriphia Galaxy. Emperor's Chamber.

**DALEK SUPREME** ...must speak to the inhabitants of Guria. Efficiency of the slave workforce must be increased.  
**DALEK COMMANDER** (Distort) I obey.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Hyperlink terminating.  
*Hyperlink termination FX.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Our agent was unable to determine the significance of the relationship between Alby Brook and Susan Mendes.  
**EMPEROR** The emotional connection between them is enough.  
**DALEK SUPREME** It is a weakness we can exploit.  
**EMPEROR** It will play its part in our plan. Report on veganite status.  
**DALEK SUPREME** All veganite deposits from Vega VI have been refined and secured in Imperial Command Ship storage bays.  
**EMPEROR** Then we must depart for the Lopra System immediately. Transfer this chamber to Imperial Command Ship.  
**DALEK SUPREME** I obey.  
*Comms bleep.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Dalek Supreme to Command Ship.  
**DALEK** (Distort) Command Ship receiving.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Open docking bay doors. Imperial Chamber Module will now enter Command Ship.  
**DALEK** (Distort) I obey.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Activating Imperial Module motive power.  
*A huge clunk and rumbling.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Emperor, we are now proceeding towards Command Ship. Docking will be completed in 30 rels. Blast-off will take place in 50 rels.  
**EMPEROR** Set galactic circumnavigation course co-ordinates.  
*FX of co-ordinates being set.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Co-ordinates are now set.  
**EMPEROR** Excellent. It is time for us to fulfil the true destiny of the Daleks!

#### 4. Int. Tanlee's Cabin.

Door opens, footsteps. ALBY is struggling with his legs.

**TANLEE** Do sit down, for God's sake. And try not to look quite so sour in the presence of your commanding officer.

**ALBY** (Sullen) Any chance of a drink?

**TANLEE** Brook, this isn't one of your sordid rendezvous in a seedy nightclub.

**ALBY** (Sullen) Pity.

Pause.

**TANLEE** Dear me... Feeling a little love-sick, no doubt.

**ALBY** (Aggressive) What do you mean?

**TANLEE** Tell me, was she worth the risk of being shot for desertion of duty?

**ALBY** Who?

**TANLEE** Don't be tiresome.

**ALBY** You mean Suz. (Pause) So are you going to have me shot?

**TANLEE** Regrettably, no.

**ALBY** How did you know about Gordon?

**TANLEE** Pellan? Oh... We picked up his transmissions to the Daleks when he arrived on the Vega Free News ship. We were about to have him killed by our agents on board when you dropped in. He seemed to show some interest in you; we wanted to know why. After the Vega ship was destroyed, we finally traced his signals here.

**ALBY** Why would the Daleks be interested in me?

**TANLEE** Because, it seems, they are very much interested in your precious Susan Mendes. That's something you have in common with them. Isn't that cosy?

**ALBY** Is it... to do with... (Remembering) Project Infinity?

**TANLEE** (Sharp) And what would you know about Project Infinity? (Pause) Come on, speak up.

Pause.

**ALBY** (Thinking hard) Er... Well, the mission you sent me on after Vega VI. I was about to set off for the... er... the Lopra System, wasn't it? But the Aquitania was attacked by the Daleks and... and... well...

**TANLEE** And who was to be your contact in the Lopra System?

**ALBY** Er... contact... contact... (Remembers) 'Contact Espeelius', that's what the computer said, anyway. But that's all I know.'

**TANLEE** Hmm... Let's keep it that way, shall we?

**ALBY** (Taken aback) What?

Rumble of impact on ship.

**TANLEE** Ah... the battle doesn't seem to be going well. Do excuse me.

Comms bleep.

**TANLEE** Patch me through to Admiral Elisonford, please.

Burst of static.

**ELISONFORD** (Distort) Tanlee?

**TANLEE** Admiral... How are things looking?

**ELISONFORD** (Distort) We're outnumbered and outflanked. The Daleks have retaken Guria.

**TANLEE** Pretty much as predicted then. I take it you intend to retreat.



**ELISONFORD** (*Distort*) If your... er, business here is concluded.  
*Rumble of another impact.*

**TANLEE** Oh... please, let's not stay here on my account. The ride's getting far too bumpy for my liking.

**ELISONFORD** (*Distort*) I'll give the order for the fleet to withdraw. Out.  
*Comms bleep. Another rumble of impact.*

**ALBY** So that's it... you just leave the people of Guria to the Daleks.

**TANLEE** Well, we could all stay here and get killed, if you'd prefer.  
*Comms bleep.*

**TANLEE** Excuse me. Tanlee.

**TECHNICIAN** (*Distort*) It's ready, sir.

**TANLEE** So soon? I am impressed. Very well.  
*Bleep.*

**TANLEE** Now then... Time is short. It seems we've established what you don't know. Let's find out what you do know. This way.

*Door opens. TANLEE's footsteps move off. ALBY struggles with his new legs.*

**TANLEE** (*Distant*) Oh do come along, Brook!

### 5. Int. Earth Transport Ship. Lift.

*Door closes. Lift starts.*

**ALBY** (*Leg discomfort*) Where are we going?

**TANLEE** You'll find out.

*ALBY makes a grunt of discomfort.*

**TANLEE** If we had time, I'd suggest having those legs of yours replaced. Obviously the field surgeon was playing some sort of practical joke on you.

**ALBY** (*Dubious*) Er, thank you for the thought, sir.

**TANLEE** Now then... Susan Mendes. What can you tell me about her?

**ALBY** Well...

**TANLEE** And spare me any romantic glorification.

**ALBY** They call her the Angel of Mercy, apparently. As far as I can gather, she and Kalendorf are being taken on some kind of... well, tour of Dalek occupied planets.

**TANLEE** Why?

**ALBY** To improve the morale of the slaves...

*Crossfade to:*

### 6. Ext. Guria.

*Dalek transport ship landing. Crossfade to:*

### 7. Int. Dalek Transport Ship. Suz's Quarters.

*Door opens.*

**KALENDORF** Suz? Suz, are you in here?

**SUZ** (*Morose*) What do you want?

**KALENDORF** We've landed on Guria. The Daleks want their Angel of Mercy outside. There are slaves to cheer up. (*Pause*) Suz? (*Sighs. Gentle*) Are you going to tell me about him?

**SUZ** Who?

**KALENDORF** Alby? The man you saw on the screen.

**SUZ** *(Almost as if she's talking to ALBY)* Alby? *(Drifting back to reality)* Alby... *(Pause)* No.

*Crossfade to:*

### **8. Int. Earth Transport Ship. Lift.**

**TANLEE** So she's a traitor?

**ALBY** Not necessarily.

**TANLEE** *(Pointedly)* And what makes you say that?

**ALBY** I was told by the ruler of Guria that, apparently, Suz has been saving lives. That she's getting better working conditions, proper food and healthcare for people who would otherwise die.

**TANLEE** And why would the Daleks be interested in that?

**ALBY** I... I don't know.

**TANLEE** And why is Kalendorf involved? What's in this for the Knights of Velyshaa?

**ALBY** I don't know.

**TANLEE** He was due to begin unofficial negotiations with us to form an anti-Dalek pact with the Velyshaans. We were going to allow the Knights of Velyshaa to re-arm. They would have been formidable allies... like Earth, Velyshaa is an ancient enemy of Dalek power. And now, the chief Velyshaan emissary, Kalendorf, is apparently working *with* the Daleks. It doesn't make sense.

**ALBY** No, sir.

**TANLEE** None of this damn business does.

**ALBY** No...

*Lift door opens.*

### **9. Int. Earth Transport Ship. Launch Bay.**

*Footsteps.*

**TANLEE** This is your new ship.

**ALBY** *(Impressed)* What... this one?

**TANLEE** Yes, I agree... far too impressive for the likes of you. It's the latest thing, an experimental prototype... packed full of everything the top-flight Special Space Security agent should need.

**ALBY** So why are you giving it to me?

**TANLEE** Because I want you to find Susan Mendes.

**ALBY** Find her? She'll be on Guria by now.

**TANLEE** Yes. And going there now would be a suicide mission. You'll have to wait until she leaves, then track her down. Find some way of... at least speaking to her. We intercepted the video link from Guria to the Dalek transport ship... She saw you, Brook. She knows you're still alive. Maybe she'll try to contact you.

**ALBY** She may not be able to.

**TANLEE** Look, you're the security operative who, according to your file, works best under conditions of extreme pressure. So live up to your reputation.'

**ALBY** What do you want me to do?

**TANLEE** I want you to find out what *she* knows about Project Infinity.

**ALBY** How am I going to do that, if I don't know anything about it myself?

**TANLEE** She trusts you. She'll tell you the truth.

**ALBY** Maybe.

**TANLEE** If she knows anything about it... kill her.

**ALBY** But... *(Pause)* You've got to be kidding.

**TANLEE** I feel I need hardly ask you if I *look* like I'm 'kidding'.

**ALBY** I won't do it!

**TANLEE** *(Sighs)* Brook, I'm not entirely without feelings. You could have fooled me.

**TANLEE** I know you have an affection for this woman... And... And I don't ask you to do this lightly.

**ALBY** Then tell me what Project Infinity is.

**TANLEE** It's better you don't know.

**ALBY** Why?

**TANLEE** It's too dangerous.

**ALBY** What? The project, or me knowing about it?

**TANLEE** Both. *(Pause)* Project Infinity may be our only hope of defeating the Daleks. If they were to find out about it... find a way of destroying it... then... Well, I'm afraid it leaves very little hope for the freedom of the galaxy.

**ALBY** But Suz was just a geologist. *(Remembering)* I mean, when Pellan said that the Reinsberg Corporation were involved in Project -

**TANLEE** *(Urgent)* Pellan? Pellan knew about the Reinsberg Corporation?

**ALBY** Oh my God... That means the Daleks -

**TANLEE** - it really depends on how *much* they know. And if your friend Mendes is working for them, with whatever good intentions, she may - even inadvertently - give them the vital piece of information they need.

**ALBY** But she may not know anything about it.

**TANLEE** Then why are the Daleks so interested in her?

**ALBY** I... I don't know.

**TANLEE** Then find out.

**ALBY** And kill her if she does know?

**TANLEE** If she's betrayed the secrets of Project Infinity to the Daleks, you might as well kill *yourself* as well.

**ALBY** It's really that important?

**TANLEE** Yes... yes it is...

**ALBY** *(Grave)* I see.

*Pause.*

**TANLEE** So what's it to be... Alby Brook?

## 10. Narration.

**NARRATOR** The years passed... The Angel of Mercy did her job well. The Dalek war machine had never been so efficient. Slavery was its lifeblood, the force which created its power, leaving every particle of technological might free for the purposes of destruction. The scale of the war increased. Nobody ever knew how many billions died. There wasn't the time to stop and count. For every Dalek defeat, the Earth Alliance suffered ten. No matter how ingenious, inventive and determined the

humans were, it seemed they couldn't stand against the endless metallic onslaught. While Earth's commanders begged and scavenged for reinforcements... there were always more Dalek ships... Always more Daleks... Always... And for the Angel of Mercy... the work was becoming her life... my life. Worlds without end... hard to remember their names. All of them, planets conquered by the Daleks... populations enslaved.

### 11. Int. Celatron. Suz's Office.

*Fade in on...*

**DALEK** ...and production quotas have exceeded productivity targets by 27 per cent.'

**SUZ** Good. Has the Dalek Supreme been informed?

**DALEK** The Dalek Supreme is informed of all developments.

**SUZ** Where is he? I haven't spoken to him for some time.

**DALEK** I have no information.

**SUZ** Well... find out.

**DALEK** I... obey.

**SUZ** That's all. You can go.

**DALEK** The Supreme Controller of this sector is arriving on this planet at zero-four-five-zero hours.

**SUZ** Supreme Controller? Who's that?

**DALEK** The Supreme Controller commands all Dalek forces in this sector of the empire.

**SUZ** (*Unimpressed*) How fascinating.

**DALEK** You will report to the Supreme Controller.

**SUZ** I don't deal with underlings. I was sent on this mission by the Dalek Supreme, under direct orders from your Emperor. If your 'Supreme Controller' wishes to see me, it will have to report to me.

**DALEK** That is not acceptable.

**SUZ** Well, it'll have to be. Now get out!

**DALEK** You must obey -

**SUZ** - 'obey the Daleks'? Is that what you were going to say? Well, I do obey the Daleks... I obey the Emperor and no one else. So, what are you going to do now? Kill me? (*Pause*) I thought not. Now, get out of my sight.

**DALEK** I... obey.

*Door opens and closes. SUZ takes a deep breath. Comms bleep.*

**SUZ** (*Startled, then recovers*) Yes?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) It's Kalendorf.

**SUZ** Oh... come in.

*Door opens. KALENDORF's footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** The local commander was looking a little twitchy as he left your office, just then. Did you say something to agitate him?'

**SUZ** (*Superior*) Er... I might have done.

**KALENDORF** Don't push them too far, Suz.

**SUZ** Don't patronise me, Karl. Did you speak to the mine-workers in the outer provinces?

**KALENDORF** (*Cautious*) Suz, I don't think -

**SUZ** It's all right, we can talk freely. I had a slave maintenance detail check this office from top to bottom and remove all the surveillance devices.

**KALENDORF** That may be, but you can't be sure that -  
**SUZ** Oh, the Celatrons are brilliant technicians. They used to have a reputation as the galaxy's technocrats.

**KALENDORF** Before the Daleks invaded.  
**SUZ** Yes, before the Daleks invaded. So, you see, we are free to -

**KALENDORF** Free to what? Take stupid risks? Suz, please, take my hand. (Pause) What's the matter?  
**SUZ** I would've thought you'd be relieved not to have to make telepathic contact with me -

**KALENDORF** (Reacting to mention of 'telepathic') Suz!  
**SUZ** (Continuing) not to have to touch me.

**KALENDORF** Suz, please, you must -  
**SUZ** Don't deny it. Remember, I've been inside your mind, Kalendorf. I can sense... the resentment you feel towards me. (Pause) No... you don't deny it. (Pause) Why are you looking at me like that?

**KALENDORF** Suz, please -  
**SUZ** (Snapping) Keep away from me! I've told you. We can speak aloud here. There's no need for us to project clandestine thoughts into each other's minds. We don't need your... your special powers!

**KALENDORF** And I'm telling you... that if we're not careful... if the Daleks -  
**SUZ** - were to find out that as well as making their slave empire run efficiently we were planting the seeds of its downfall ...? (Pause) There. I've said it. Have the alarms gone off? Have the walls come tumbling down? Have a thousand Daleks descended on us, screaming for our blood? Well?!

**KALENDORF** Obviously not.  
**SUZ** No. Because no matter how careful we've been over all these years, there've been countless opportunities for the Daleks to find us out. But they haven't. And do you know why?

**KALENDORF** (Sighs) Why?  
**SUZ** Because they trust me.  
**KALENDORF** starts to laugh. His laugh gets bigger and more derisive.  
**SUZ** (Over him) They trust me!!!

**KALENDORF** If you could just hear yourself! The Daleks don't trust. They're using us, Suz."  
**SUZ** And we're using them.

**KALENDORF** Are you? (Pause) Doesn't it ever occur to you that you're being rather too efficient on the Daleks' behalf?  
**SUZ** If I held back, they might suspect -

**KALENDORF** I'm not saying you should hold back. But you've been doing... you are doing more than your best, Suz. Whole sectors of the galaxy have been lost to the Daleks because of your zealous devotion to duty. I sometimes think there are more Dalek communication relays drifting in space than there are stars in the sky. And they seem to have very nearly as many ships at their disposal. And who is it who's responsible for the high morale of the slaves - the efficiency of their factories? You.  
**SUZ** We agreed we had to convince the Daleks we were working for them -

**KALENDORF** Yes, but not -

**SUZ** (Continuing) - wholeheartedly. No small, subtle acts of sabotage, nothing that could be interpreted as even the slightest undermining of their operations. No holding back. Total obedience.

**KALENDORF** (Bitter) Total obedience to the Daleks.

**SUZ** Until we can be sure that we have enough support to make a difference - to throw their empire into chaos.

**KALENDORF** And when is that going to be, Suz? In your judgement... as the legendary Angel of Mercy?

Pause.

**SUZ** Not yet.

**KALENDORF** Not yet. And what happens in the meantime?

Door bleep. Intercom click.

**SUZ** Yes? What is it?

**DALEK** (Distort) You must open the door and come with us.

**SUZ** Why?

**DALEK** (Distort) You must report to the Supreme Controller.

**SUZ** I've already told you, I won't -

**DALEK** (Distort) You will obey. You will -

Bleep as SUZ cuts the comms-link.

**SUZ** (To herself) Who do they think they are?

**KALENDORF** Your masters. Let them in. What was it you were saying? No holding back? Total obedience?

**SUZ** This is different.

**KALENDORF** How?

**SUZ** This is a question of... of...

**KALENDORF** Of authority? Power?

**SUZ** Yes, power!!! I have power over the Daleks. I've made their empire a success, you're right! They couldn't have done it without me!

**KALENDORF** They could. It would have just taken them a lot longer.'

**SUZ** They need me!!!

Muffled Dalek blasts.

**SUZ** What the hell are they - ?

Door explodes. Dust settles.

**SUZ** How dare you - ?!

**DALEK** Silence!

**DALEK 1** You will come with us! Now!

**SUZ** And if I refuse?

**DALEK** We will kill Kalendorf.

Pause.

**KALENDORF** You see? You don't have power over the Daleks. You just have power over the rest of us. Every slave in their empire. The Daleks may never kill you... they don't have to.

## 12. Int. Orearlis Comms Relay. Control Control.

The Orearlisians are an insectoid life-form. They make various chirruping and screeching sounds during their speech. I mention this here, as the fact that they are insects is not mentioned for some some time in the dialogue. Bleeping of tracking system.

**KARIK** This is the signal I reported, Hive Leader Stralos.  
Bleeping frequency increases.

**STRALOS** You acted correctly, Karik.  
**KARIK** The space vessel is now changing course, heading towards us.  
*Bleeping.*  
**KARIK** It seems to be in something of a hurry.  
**STRALOS** Quite so. Quite so. We must warn it. Activate a signal beam.  
*Beam FX. Sustain.*  
**KARIK** It is done.  
**STRALOS** This is Hive Leader Stralos of the Orearlis Communications Relay Platform, calling approaching vessel. This space platform is protected by high-intensity molecular disrupter fields. Please do not encroach further into our territory, or your ship will sustain damage.  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) This is Officer 274 Mirana of Earth's Interplanetary Police. Sorry to disturb you, Hive Leader, but I've reason to believe you've an intruder onboard.  
**STRALOS** Intruder? That is not possible. Nothing can enter through the disrupter fields... and I can assure you that they are intact.  
*Bleep.*  
**STRALOS** (*Urgent*) Karik - check that the fields are intact!  
**KARIK** Right away, Hive Leader.  
*Bleeps.*  
**STRALOS** Well?  
**KARIK** All defence fields unbroken.  
*Bleep.*  
**STRALOS** Officer Mirana, there is no sign of incursion.  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) I don't doubt it, Hive Leader. But I've been tracking this suspect for some time. I believe he has the means to overcome such defence systems and remain undetected.  
**STRALOS** I presume your objective is to arrest your suspect?  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Er... yes, it is... Hive Leader.  
**STRALOS** *STRALOS makes some agitated insectoid noises.*  
**STRALOS** It is forbidden to allow civilians on board this platform without prior authorisation from the Space Security Service.  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) I'm sure I need hardly remind you that your government and mine have a well-established extradition treaty relating to the arrest of known and suspected criminals.  
**STRALOS** And I need hardly remind you, Officer, that this is a time of war. This platform is a vital communications relay for transmissions containing classified material.  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Which is why this matter is so urgent, Hive Leader. I have firm evidence that my suspect is in possession of a stolen hyperlink beam decoder. If he is on board your platform, he may be gaining access to classified transmissions as we speak.  
**STRALOS** What course of action do you propose?  
**MIRANA** (*Distort*) In light of the security issues involved, I would not suggest that you should lower your defence field to allow my ship to dock, but... perhaps you might consider transmatting me over to your space platform so we can investigate the issue further?  
**STRALOS** What is the exact purpose of this supposed intruder's incursion?

**MIRANA** (Distort) Well... I'm not sure. But if his intentions are lawful, wouldn't he have contacted you openly?

**STRALOS** clicks and tuts as he considers the matter.

**STRALOS** Your point is well taken, Officer Mirana.

**MIRANA** (Distort) I'm obliged to you, Hive Leader.

**STRALOS** Very well. We will transmatt you through our defence shield. But be warned, if this is a deception on your part, Orearlisian justice is swift and ruthless.

**MIRANA** (Distort) Er... your point is well taken, also, Hive Leader Stralos. I'm ready to transmatt at your earliest convenience.

**STRALOS** Karik.

**KARIK** Activating transmatt beam... now.

*Transmatt FX.*

**MIRANA** (Recovering) Ah... thank you, Hive Leader.

**STRALOS** Welcome aboard, Officer 274 Mirana. And now perhaps you would care to explain how we track down this intruder of yours if his methods are sophisticated enough to overcome our defences?

*Click of a device. Some beeps.*

**MIRANA** I have a stored record of a DNA sample I was able to take from him some time ago. Perhaps if we were to enter this into your security systems, we might be able to find him.

**STRALOS** Very wise.

*FX: whirr of computer.*

**STRALOS** Please inject your sample into this data tray.

**KARIK** (Jittery) Security tracer now activating.

**MIRANA** (To herself) Now, let's see precisely what you're up to, Alby Brook.

### 13. Int. Celatron. Dalek Control.

*Door opens.*

**DALEK** Enter.

*Footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** (Quietly to SUZ) What's the set-up here? Is this shiny red chap more or less important than your chum the Dalek Supreme?

**SUZ** Less.

**KALENDORF** You hope.

**DALEK** Silence!

**DALEK 1** Supreme Controller, this is the Mendes woman and her associate, Kalendorf.

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Report!

**SUZ** (Sullen) What is it you want to know?

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Do not question the Daleks. Make your report.

**SUZ** All your productivity targets have been exceeded. If you want any more detail than that, I suggest you download the full report from your command net. I'm not a walking computer and I don't see why I should report to you -

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Silence!

**SUZ** I want to speak to the Dalek Supreme!

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Silence! What is the purpose of this humanoid, Kalendorf?



**SUZ** He is under my protection.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** That does not answer the question.  
**SUZ** If you want to know more, talk to the Dalek Supreme.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Silence!  
**KALENDORF** I can speak for myself!  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Silence! Explain your purpose!  
**KALENDORF** Well make your mind up. What do you want? Silence or an explanation?  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** You have been observed with slaves on many of our conquered planets. Often there is no audible conversation between you. What is the meaning of this? *(Pause)* Answer!  
**KALENDORF** We're praying.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** A meaningless religious ritual?  
**KALENDORF** That's your opinion.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Why do you pray?  
**KALENDORF** Why? Why does anyone pray?  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Answer!  
**KALENDORF** I don't know... We pray for the day when every last Dalek has been smashed into the ground. Is that what you want to hear? We pray... we hope that one day... we shall be rid of you.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** And you believe that this will happen? *(Pause)* Answer!  
**KALENDORF** *(Pointedly to SUZ)* What do you think, Angel of Mercy?  
**SUZ** It's asking you the question.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Do not communicate with each other! Answer the question!  
**SUZ** Well?  
**KALENDORF** Yes. We... I believe that one day we shall be rid of you.  
**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Your belief is mistaken.  
**KALENDORF** We shall see.

#### 14. Int. Orearlis Platform.

*Breathing and footsteps of Mirana in spacesuit.*

**MIRANA** Which way now, Stralos?  
**STRALOS** *(Distort)* Take care, Officer Mirana. You are now traversing this platform's central power grid. If you were to fracture any part of the superstructure, the release of energy would destroy you.  
**MIRANA** Er... right. I'll... er... I'll be careful then.  
**STRALOS** *(Distort)* Proceed to the third conduit on your left.  
**MIRANA** What's the security tracer showing now?  
**STRALOS** *(Distort)* The intruder Alby Brook has moved further out into the deep-space transceiver array. It may be that he is aware of your approach, and is attempting to evade you.  
**MIRANA** Or he may just be up to more mischief. Right... here we go.  
*Footsteps and breathing.*  
**STRALOS** *(Distort. Alarmed)* Officer Mirana!!!  
**MIRANA** What is it? What's the matter?  
**STRALOS** *(Distort)* Alby Brook's signal has vanished from the tracer.  
**MIRANA** *(To herself)* What the hell's going on now? *(Aloud)* Brook!

Do you hear me? If you don't give yourself up now, you won't get off this platform alive! Brook? (Pause) Any sign of him, Stralos? (Pause) Stralos?

**ALBY** Stralos can't hear you, Mirana. I'm jamming your suit comm - don't turn round! I've got a gun -

**MIRANA** - at the back of my head?

**ALBY** You guessed it.

**MIRANA** Brook, you're just making it worse for yourself.<sup>10</sup>

**ALBY** Oh, shut up and get moving. I haven't got time for this. Go on, move.

**MIRANA** Why are you in such a hurry?

**ALBY** I'm expecting a call. And when you hear it, I'm hoping you'll realise that it's best not to poke your snooty little nose into my business. Now, move.

### 15. Int. Celatron. Dalek Control.

**KALENDORF** (*Impatient*) This is ridiculous. What's it doing? Contemplating its metallic navel? How long are we supposed to wait here?

**SUZ** It must be accessing the command net, checking up on me.

(*Aloud to DALEK*) Er... if you've finished with us, 'Supreme Controller', I have duties to perform.

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Stay where you are! Both of you!

**KALENDORF** What do you want with us? We've answered your 'fascinating' questions. Just let us get on with our work.

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Mendes! We know you had the surveillance devices removed from your office. A security squad of Daleks is currently installing further surveillance devices. Any Celatron slave ordered by you to remove *these* new devices will be exterminated.

**SUZ** (*Defiant*) I don't know what you're talking about.

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Observe the screen.

*Screen activates.*

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Are those the slaves you ordered to remove the first surveillance devices? (Pause) Exterminate them!

**SUZ** Noooo!!!

*Onscreen distort FX of Dalek guns and screaming of Celatrons dying.*

*Pause.*

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** Do you wish to cause more deaths?

(Pause) Answer!

**SUZ** (*Subdued*) No. I don't. (Pause) Can we go now?

**DALEK SUPREME CONTROLLER** No. A hyperlink communication beam is being established. You will await commands from the Dalek Supreme.

### 16. Int. Orearlis Platform. Deep-Space Array.

*Burbles of comms-net in background. Hovering motor of drudger robot.*

*Footsteps and breathing of MIRANA.*

**ALBY** Right. Stop there.

**MIRANA** Is this *your* drudger connected to the deep-space array, or does it belong to the Orearlisians?

**ALBY** It's mine.

**MIRANA** Can I ask what it's doing?

**ALBY** How's it going, Drudger?

**DRUDGER**      Hyperlink beam still scanning for control call sign. Dalek interference is considerable in this sector.

**ALBY**              Keep at it.

**DRUDGER**      Complying, Alby Brook.

**MIRANA**        Who are you trying to call up? And why did you have to come here to do it?

**ALBY**              I've got the gun, so I think I'll be asking the questions, Mirana.

**MIRANA**        What could you possibly want to ask *me*?

**ALBY**              Well, for starters... Hasn't an interplanetary police officer anything better to do than follow me through four star systems?

**MIRANA**        Not when my informant on Orearlis III told me you were prepared to pay any amount for a hyperlink decoder... no questions asked."

**ALBY**              (*Chuckle*) God. I knew you were trouble when you tried to arrest me in that bar on Quelador.

*Crossfade to flashback. Busy bar.*

**ALBY**              Sorry. Someone's already sitting there."

**MIRANA**        Doesn't look like it to me.

*Sounds of her sitting.*

**ALBY**              Look. I'm expecting someone... and gorgeous and irresistible though you are, darling, he's not going to be very pleased to find you in his chair.

**MIRANA**        Ah... you mean Mr Auderlon.

*Pause.*

**ALBY**              Wha...? Who are you? Did he send you?

**MIRANA**        I've come straight from him.

**ALBY**              So... What's the deal?

**MIRANA**        The deal is, you come with me; I show you the merchandise, then you pay me.

**ALBY**              When?

**MIRANA**        Now.

*Crossfade to exterior bar. Footsteps.*

**ALBY**              So where exactly are you taking - ?

*Footsteps stop.*

**ALBY**              You - "

**MIRANA**        - ve got a gun pointing at the back of your head, yes. Alby Brook, off-world immigrant of no fixed abode, you are under arrest.

**ALBY**              What for?

**MIRANA**        You don't have to say anything, but I am now recording all your responses for the purposes of evidence. What for? Illegal trade in Earth Alliance government property, namely a stolen hyperlink decoder. And I've a funny feeling that's just for starters. (*Pause*) Nothing to say? Have it your own way."

*Crossfade to INT. INTERROGATION CELL. Cell door opens and closes. Footsteps to table. Chair drag. Sit down.*

**MIRANA**        It's been 36 hours. Thought of anything to say yet?

**ALBY**              No. But you'd be saying something a bit more substantial if you actually had any evidence you could back up. (*Pause*) Let me guess... Having trouble finding Mr Auderlon? (*Pause*) Thought so.

**MIRANA**        All right. You can go.

**ALBY**              Thanks.

*Drag of chair as he gets up. Hiss and click of DNA sampler activated.*

**ALBY** Argh! Ow, that hurt! What the hell was that?

**MIRANA** *(Defiant)* What was *what*?

*Crossfade back to Orearlis platform.*

**ALBY** You took a DNA sample that night, didn't you? Isn't that illegal?

**MIRANA** These are unconventional times – and I had a bad feeling about you.<sup>15</sup>

**ALBY** Well, I can't fault your instincts. I got my hyperlink decoder and you followed my trail.

**MIRANA** And what did happen to your Mr Auderlon?

**ALBY** Oh... people like him are very good at disappearing when they need to.

**MIRANA** So what are you up to?

**ALBY** Trying to beat Dalek jamming signals.

**MIRANA** Why?

**ALBY** There's a war on, or haven't you heard?

**MIRANA** And what's that got to do with you?

**ALBY** Something well beyond your jurisdiction, darling. And if I was any good at my job, I'd have already blown a hole in your head.

*DRUDGER bleeps.*

**DRUDGER** Attention, Alby Brook. Message decoding.

**ALBY** Is it Tanlee?

*Bleeps.*

**DRUDGER** Negative correlation. Message is of Dalek origin.

**MIRANA** Why would the Daleks be sending us a message?

**ALBY** This is a relay station, right? The cheeky beggars are using an Earth Alliance relay station to boost their signal. Drudger, where's the message being beamed from?

**DRUDGER** Co-ordinates 847348493 –

**ALBY** – No! *Where?! I was never good with numbers.*

*Bleeps and buzzes of an electronic diagram appearing on a screen.*

**DRUDGER** Please observe star map.

**ALBY** Wait a minute... the source is showing up somewhere outside the galaxy.

**DRUDGER** Correct.

**ALBY** Where's it being transmitted to?

**DRUDGER** The Planet Celatron.

**ALBY** Let's see what they've got to say for themselves.

*Minor alarms start up.*

**DRUDGER** Call sign decoded. Transmission commencing.

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* This is the Dalek Supreme.

**ALBY** Bingo. Big time.

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Susan Mendes.

**ALBY** What?

**MIRANA** Who?

**ALBY** Shut up!

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* You wished to speak to me?

## 17. Int. Celatron. Dalek Control.

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Answer!

**SUZ** (Taken aback) Er... er, yes. Yes, I did.

**DALEK SUPREME** Then speak!

**KALENDORF** (To *SUZ*) Well, say *something*. Perhaps you should do your little speech about how the Daleks trust you. He'll love that.

**DALEK SUPREME** Speak!

**SUZ** You sent me on this mission. I... I... was merely... concerned that - I thought that I should report directly to you.<sup>16</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** All Daleks are responsible to the Dalek Supreme. The Dalek Supreme obeys the Emperor.

**SUZ** (Feeling stupid) Yes... yes... I understand. I... I'm sorry.

**KALENDORF** (Concerned) Suz... are you all right?

**SUZ** (To *KALENDORF*) Shut up.

**DALEK SUPREME** You wish for... emotional support?

**KALENDORF** (To himself) What? Well... I never thought I'd see the day -

**SUZ** (To *KALENDORF*) What do you mean?

**DALEK SUPREME** Answer!

**KALENDORF** (To *SUZ*) Daleks don't discuss emotions.

**SUZ** (To *KALENDORF*) Well, he does. He always has done.

**DALEK SUPREME** Answer!!!

**SUZ** Yes... yes, I suppose I do. But you can't help with that, can you?

**DALEK SUPREME** Reports of surveillance data indicate there is animosity between you and Kalendorf. Is that correct?

**SUZ** Well... Yes. There is... animosity.

**DALEK SUPREME** Then he will be exterminated.

**SUZ** No!

**DALEK SUPREME** If he is not giving you hope, he is not fulfilling his purpose. He is useless.

**SUZ** He isn't useless!

**KALENDORF** Oh, thanks.

**SUZ** He... We just... (Runs out of words)

**DALEK SUPREME** Explain! (Pause) Explain!!!

**SUZ** Relationships between human beings -

**KALENDORF** I'm not human.

**SUZ** All right - relationships between *people*! Friendships don't always... well, they don't always run smoothly.

**DALEK SUPREME** Your relationship is not efficient.

**KALENDORF** I really can't believe we're having this discussion.

**DALEK SUPREME** Silence! If we could replace Kalendorf with the human being called Alby Brook -

**SUZ** What?

**KALENDORF** Alby Brook... the man you saw on the screen back in the Guria System? The man you won't talk about?

**SUZ** Yes.

**DALEK SUPREME** The man you love.

Pause.

**SUZ** (Aloud) Why do you mention him?

**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes, intelligence reports indicate he is attempting to locate you.

**SUZ** You know where he is?

**DALEK SUPREME** Yes.

*During above section, crossfade to.*

### **18. Int. Orearlis Platform. Deep-Space Array.**

**ALBY** You lying piece of scum!  
**MIRANA** What the hell is all this about?  
**ALBY** Just shut it!  
*Gradually crossfade back to...*

### **19. Int. Celatron. Dalek Control.**

**DALEK SUPREME** We could have him brought to you. He is of the same race. You love him. He will give you hope. He would then replace Kalendorf.  
**KALENDORF** Ah, so you're still threatening to kill me. At least we're back on familiar Dalek territory.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Silence!  
**SUZ** You're asking me to choose?  
**DALEK SUPREME** We only wish you to be efficient.  
**SUZ** I don't believe you know where Alby is. You're trying to trick me. Why are you doing this?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Alby Brook is an Earth Security agent. He is intercepting this conversation.  
**SUZ** What?  
*Crossfade to...*

### **20. Int. Orearlis Platform. Deep-Space Array.**

**ALBY** How the hell did he know that? Drudger! Disconnect! They must have a trace on us!  
**DRUDGER** Disconnecting.  
*Buzz FX.*  
**MIRANA** So, you're a security agent. Is that true?  
**ALBY** Do you always believe what Daleks say? They are the enemy, you know. Anyway, it's none of your business, darling. And you've seen and heard too much already.  
**MIRANA** (*Panicked*) What are...? No - wait a minute. Can't we talk this over - er...?  
**ALBY** No! Drudger, get to the ship - fire her up for launch! Go!  
**DRUDGER** Complying.  
*FX: DRUDGER hovers off.*  
**ALBY** All right, Officer. I think I've amply demonstrated how crap I am at my job by leaving you alive. So, let me compound that admission. Come on, I need one good reason why I shouldn't kill you. Come on.  
**MIRANA** Er... you like women in uniform?  
**ALBY** Ah... clever move. Using humour to deflate my murderous intent. But not good enough. Try again.  
**MIRANA** Er...  
**STRALOS** (*With a screech*) Drop the weapon, Earth creature."  
**ALBY** Wha - Aaargh!  
*Gun fires. Screech from STRALOS.*

## 21. Int. Celatron. Dalek Control.

**DALEK SUPREME** Then you wish Kalendorf to live?

**SUZ** I do.

**DALEK SUPREME** You do not wish him to be replaced by the man you love.

**SUZ** No.

**DALEK SUPREME** There is no discernible reason to your emotional responses.

**SUZ** I... I know.

**DALEK SUPREME** You and Kalendorf will continue with your work. But your relationship must be efficient. The Dalek Empire needs your total obedience. Is that understood? (Pause) Answer!

**SUZ** (Bitter) Yes... It is... understood.

## 22. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

**EMPEROR** This confirms my theory of Kalendorf's significance. He is a Knight of Velyshaa. He has telepathic capabilities. The Mendes woman needs him for her plan.

**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes and Kalendorf are plotting against the Daleks?

**EMPEROR** Correct.

**DALEK SUPREME** Shall I order their extermination?

**EMPEROR** It is not necessary. Now that they know we have suspicions, they will redouble their efforts to convince us of their loyalty to the Dalek cause. It will make them more efficient.

**DALEK SUPREME** But in time, they will betray the Daleks - attempt to overthrow our empire.

**EMPEROR** And that attempt will serve its purpose in our plans. Time to arrival in the Lopra System?

**DALEK SUPREME** On this course, at current velocity, planetfall will be achieved in one solar year.

**EMPEROR** Excellent. Nothing Susan Mendes and Kalendorf can do will harm us now. Victory for the Daleks is assured.

## 23. Int. Alby's Ship.

*ALBY's ship shoots past. Crossfade to interior. Buzzes and fizzes of DRUDGER performing 'surgery' on ALBY's artificial legs.*

**ALBY** How are the repairs to my legs going, Drudger?

**DRUDGER** Almost complete.

**ALBY** Lucky that damn insect went for my legs, eh? I don't think my head would be *quite* so easy to fix.

**DRUDGER** Please elaborate.

**ALBY** Any sign of that Mirana woman pursuing?

**DRUDGER** No vessels pursuing.

**ALBY** Good. I've never been a fan of the police... and that woman is beginning to irritate me. I shall be very happy if I never see her again."

**DRUDGER** Security shield is functioning. This vessel cannot be detected by any known scanning system.

**ALBY** Thank God for top-of-the-range gadgets. Ow!

**DRUDGER** Apologies.  
**ALBY** Just be careful with that laser thing, will you?  
**DRUDGER** Please keep still.  
*Fizz of laser.*  
**ALBY** Drudger, do you think it's possible the Dalek Supreme really could have known we were listening in?  
**DRUDGER** It is possible, if the Daleks were aware that they were using the Orearlis Platform to relay their hyperlink signal.<sup>40</sup>  
**ALBY** Hmm. (*Reflective*) It was... weird, hearing her voice. Suz. After all these years. She sounded... I don't know... different. Harder. Suppose it's nice to know she hasn't forgotten me...  
**DRUDGER** Do you require a response?  
**ALBY** No. (*Back to reflecting*) No, no easy answers... And no way of getting to the planet Celatron. That's *deep* in Dalek waters.  
**DRUDGER** Repairs to your leg are now complete.  
**ALBY** Thanks.  
**DRUDGER** Do you require coffee, Alby Brook?  
**ALBY** I require... something stronger. Set course for Carson's Planet. I know a good bar there.  
**DRUDGER** Complying. Course set.  
**ALBY** One thing's for sure. Without that hyperlink decoder, and a transmitter as powerful as that Orearlis array, I'm never going to be able to report back to control. Sorry, Mr Tanlee... but I tried my best... and failed.

#### **24. Int. Earth Transport Ship. Tanlee's Cabin.**

**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort. Signal breaking up*) Tanlee! Tanlee! Are you reading me? Are you reading me?  
**TANLEE** Just about, your presidency. But the signal carrier is getting weaker by the moment.<sup>41</sup>  
**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort*) The Daleks are jamming us. We're using all available power to send this last message. Now listen to me, Tanlee. I've ordered the home fleet to evacuate the solar system. Do you hear me?  
**TANLEE** Yes, but - ?  
**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort*) The fight is lost here, Tanlee. Our bases in Jupiter and Saturn orbit have been destroyed. The Mars colony is fighting a Dalek invasion force that outnumbers them 100 to 1. The fight is lost. Our only option is surrender. Do you understand?  
**TANLEE** I... Surrender the Earth?  
**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort*) Tanlee? Tanlee? Are you reading me?  
**TANLEE** Er... Yes, your presidency. Yes. Proceed.<sup>42</sup>  
**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort*) I'm transferring operational command of all Earth forces to you. Do you know what that means?  
**TANLEE** Understood, your presidency. I understand. Good luck.<sup>43</sup>  
**EARTH PRESIDENT** (*Distort*) If the home fleet gets through, I suggest you add them to the outer planet flotillas... but the decisions are yours now, Tanlee. Do your best. You must go to final phase at all costs. The future of the -  
*Transmission cuts out in a cacophony of static. A deep sigh from TANLEE.*  
**TANLEE** My God...



*Comms bleep.*

**TANLEE** Comms centre. Do you have that link-up with the Lopra System yet?

*Comms bleep.*

**TANLEE** Comms centre! Comms!

**COMMS** (*Distort*) We're just pinpointing now, sir, but -

**TANLEE** Earth is surrendering to the Daleks... Get me that link-up at all costs. Comms.

**COMMS** (*Distort*) Er... yes, sir. (*Pause*) Link-up has just been established, Mr Tanlee. But we're not certain how long we can hold off Dalek jamming signals.

**TANLEE** I want this beam encrypted with our best codes. Do you understand?

**COMMS** (*Distort*) Sir. Signal incoming.

*Much crackling and cutting-in and out of signal etc during ESPEELIUS's speech.*

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) This is Project Director Espeelius.

**TANLEE** Espeelius. We must keep information to a minimum. This message is encrypted, but no hyperlink beams can be considered secure now. The Daleks comms-network is... well, they've pretty much got the galaxy sewn up.<sup>24</sup>

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) Understood. Proceed.

**TANLEE** The President of Earth has transferred all operational authority to me. You must go to final phase as soon as possible. Do you understand?

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) Understood... but power supplies are low.

**TANLEE** You must conserve as best you can.

*Violent interference and crackles fade in.*

**TANLEE** (*Over the crackling*) Espeelius? Espeelius, do you hear me? Conserve power and go to final phase immediately.

*Crackles crescendo.*

## **25. Int. Planet Lopra Minor. Project Infinity Operations Room.**

*Equipment ticking over. Chatter of scientists etc. Static of message cuts out.*

**ASSISTANT** We've lost the signal, Director.

**ESPEELIUS** You heard what Tanlee said?

**ASSISTANT** Yes, Director. Then the Earth is lost.

**ESPEELIUS** But not the galaxy. Not yet.

**ASSISTANT** No, but -

**ESPEELIUS** Now... Our supply of veganite is too low for the full testing schedule. We can proceed with only one run-up to full power before final phase. (*Sighs*) All personnel to their stations. Prepare Infinity Scan. Activate central power.

**ASSISTANT** But, Director - !

**ESPEELIUS** I know! It is madness. But the only alternative... is destruction.

## **26. Int. Carson's Planet. Bar.**

*Sleazy music playing in background. Clinking of drinks etc. (BARMAN is alien.)*

**BARMAN** So you know this Angel of Mercy dolly, then?  
**ALBY** (*Drunk*) Hmm.  
**BARMAN** How come? I mean... she's been with the Daleks for years.  
**ALBY** Before all that.  
**BARMAN** Before? You wanna move on, mate. Get yourself a life. Stop chasing around after some dolly who's probably forgotten all about you.  
**ALBY** Stop chasing? Huh... I haven't got within a planetary system of her for three years. She's probably so deep in Dalek territory now, I wouldn't be able to get near her even if I painted meself silver and started (*Dalek impression*) 'talking like this'.  
**BARMAN** And if I were you, I wouldn't go shootin' me mouth off about her here on Carson's Planet either.  
**ALBY** Why not?  
**BARMAN** We're right on the frontier. We had the Daleks running this planet a couple of years ago, you know.  
**ALBY** You did?  
**BARMAN** Oh yeah. Then the Earth bods retook us. Terrible fighting, there was. Terrible. Left me half blind and homeless. I thought I was a goner, you know? Then I got this job here. Up until then, all I could do was beg on the streets.  
**ALBY** Oh...  
**BARMAN** Oh yeah. But the point is, this place is a kind of halfway house now. Meant to be neutral. But it's not only full of thieves and murderers now... there are spies from... well (*whispers*) spies from both sides. I swear half me customers are Dalek replicants.<sup>25</sup>  
**ALBY** Really?  
**BARMAN** For sure. I mean, you might be one for all I know. Oh. (*Pause*) Er... and, er, well, no offence if you are. (*Suddenly nervous*) I mean, takes all sorts to make a galaxy. Ha, ha. Drink on the house?  
**ALBY** I'm not a Dalek replicant.  
**BARMAN** Ah, but you see... now I'm confused, aren't I? I mean, you *could* be, but you're just not saying. Get my drift?<sup>26</sup>  
**ALBY** I think I'm drifting off.  
**BARMAN** No... no... Don't take offence. Go on, have another drink anyway. You can pay for it if you like. I... I don't mind either way. *Bar stool screeches and ALBY's footsteps.*  
**ALBY** No thanks. I'm away back to my ship. Reality seems to be getting more confusing than drunkenness. Night!

## 27. Ext. Carson's Planet. Backstreet.

*Dog barks in distance etc. ALBY hums drunkenly as he walks. He trips over something.*

**ALBY** Argh! Who put that there?  
*He struggles noisily to his feet.*  
**ALBY** (*Seeing someone*) Oh. Who are you two? Ah... wait a minute guys - no need for the hardware. Look, what d'you want? Money? *TANLEE's footsteps.*  
**TANLEE** (*Approaching*) And before you try to shoot them while pretending to find your wallet, please bear in mind we're all on the same side.<sup>27</sup>

**ALBY** (Aghast) Mr Tanlee? What the hell are you doing on Carson's Planet?

**TANLEE** Looking for you.

**ALBY** I tried to call you, you know?

**TANLEE** No. But it doesn't surprise me. Presumably you were unable to cut through all the Dalek jamming signals.

**ALBY** (Hiccoughs) Er... yeah. Something like that. Seemed like the Daleks were on to me. Anyway, why are you looking for me?<sup>28</sup>

**TANLEE** God help us... I know it's been a long time Brook, and you're evidently ridiculously drunk, but I'm your commanding officer.

**ALBY** Yeah - I mean, obviously I know that. Obviously.

**TANLEE** (Sighs) Give me strength. Now listen to me carefully, Brook. And if *this* doesn't sober you up, nothing ever will...

### 28. Ext. Yaldos. The Lakes.

*Gentle lapping of water. Footsteps on shoreline approach and stop.*

**KALENDORF** I've been sent to get you. They're expecting a hyperlink from the Dalek Supreme in five hours. Apparently he wants to talk to you.

**SUZ** If I close my eyes and just dip my hand in the water... wash it around gently...  
*Washing of water FX.*

**SUZ** I can believe I'm back on Vega VI.

**KALENDORF** I'm surprised they let you come out here on your own in the first place.

**SUZ** Well, the Daleks are full of surprises, aren't they? Have they set the time for the broadcast yet?

**KALENDORF** No. But it must be any day now.

*SUZ sighs, relaxing.*

**KALENDORF** You know, after what happened on Celatron, I thought they'd never let us out of their sight again.

**SUZ** Hmm. (Pause) Have you ever considered...? (*She stops*)

**KALENDORF** Considered what?

**SUZ** That they might know what we're up to?

**KALENDORF** That wouldn't make sense.

**SUZ** Perhaps not.

**KALENDORF** If they had even the slightest suspicion, why would they give you the chance to make a live broadcast to every planet in the Dalek Empire? To let you do that... they must be absolutely sure that you'll do nothing but toe the party line. Praise the slaves for all they've achieved. Tell them how many lives they've saved.<sup>29</sup>

**SUZ** And I shall say all that... to begin with.

**KALENDORF** So... You think it's time?<sup>30</sup>

**SUZ** You know it is.

**KALENDORF** I *had* come to that conclusion. (*Warm*) But, as I've been told on many occasions, the final decision is yours.

**SUZ** Hmm.

**KALENDORF** Suz, I know it must have been difficult for you, back on Celatron... When the Dalek Supreme - <sup>31</sup>

**SUZ** - offered to kill you and replace you with Alby Brook?  
(Pause) Karl... listen... I know we haven't always... (*Sighs*) There've been bad times.<sup>32</sup>

**KALENDORF** Suz, you don't have to say -

**SUZ** I don't have to, but I want to. (Pause) What you've done... over all these years... What you have done is what may save... all of us. You are the important one. I've just been... the window dressing. The public face of our... deception... of our betrayal of the Daleks.

**KALENDORF** No. You can't dismiss it that easily -

**SUZ** And anyway, even if the Dalek Supreme hadn't been bluffing, even if he really had known where Alby was, even if I had been prepared to see you die... what would've been the point of that?

**KALENDORF** Being with someone you love? You tell me.

**SUZ** And how would Alby and I have ever been happy... as slaves of the Daleks? With probably the whole galaxy enslaved?

**KALENDORF** But you love him.

**SUZ** Alby Brook. My feelings for him are like... a very old fantasy - replayed so many times. And yet... in reality... it never really started. And if it had, it would probably have been over long ago.

**KALENDORF** You don't know that.

**SUZ** No. But that's what I feel.

**KALENDORF** No, that's what you want to feel - because it makes what you've got to do easier.

**SUZ** I don't think this is helping me, Karl.

**KALENDORF** Suz, listen. We both know that when you stand up in front of all those billions of slaves and say those words -

**SUZ** 'Death to the Daleks'.

**KALENDORF** You'll be killed - immediately. The Daleks will turn on you without a thought."

**SUZ** But it will have begun. As soon as they hear those words, 'Death to the Daleks', billions of slaves will know that I'm asking them to sacrifice themselves. Lay down their lives in a struggle where their only chance of winning is based on sheer numbers... They can only win, or at least make a difference if the Daleks are overwhelmed. And to achieve that, they must just keep on fighting... without fear of death. (Pause) Karl... It's my job to inspire them to do that.

**KALENDORF** But you love Alby. I know that. I know what's in your heart and mind. You can't hide it from me.

**SUZ** All right. So?

**KALENDORF** You have a reason to live.

**SUZ** I can't think about that now -

**KALENDORF** You must, Suz. You must have hope. You must be there to lead everyone, when it's all over. When we've won.

**SUZ** What are you saying?

**KALENDORF** Tell the Daleks you want me to oversee security in the transmission centre. From there, I can interrupt the broadcast.

**SUZ** You want to deliver the message? But then the Daleks will kill you.

**KALENDORF** There can be no greater glory for a Knight of Velyshaa. For all of my people. (Pause) Well? Suz... I'm begging you. What we've been doing has been a living hell for me. Hating the Daleks. Standing by and... just watching atrocity after atrocity being committed. Hating myself. Hating you. Hating life itself. Wishing for it all to go wrong, for us to be found out and killed... just so all of this would come to an end.

**SUZ** Karl...

**KALENDORF** Give me the chance to make sense of all these years of betrayal... of working for the enemies of civilisation.

*Pause.*

**SUZ** Give me two hours. I'll meet you back here.

**KALENDORF** Where are you going?

**SUZ** (*Mysteriously*) I need solitude. One of the privileges of the Angel of Mercy. And this is just the right place to give me real peace of mind.

## **29. Ext. Carson's Planet. Backstreet.**

**ALBY** So when is this broadcast likely to happen? And what's she going to say?

**TANLEE** Soon. And we're not sure. Sober now?

**ALBY** Getting there.

**TANLEE** Good - now, listen to me. All we know is that something big is about to happen.

**ALBY** About Project Infinity?

**TANLEE** We don't know. But you have to get to her first and find out. If you leave now, at maximum speed, you should make the planet Yaldos in two days.

**ALBY** Yaldos?

**TANLEE** That's where she is. And, Alby, you'd better pray that's quick enough.

**ALBY** You still want me to kill her?

**TANLEE** If necessary. I'd order an attack on Yaldos if I had a big enough force within striking distance.

**ALBY** But you haven't?

**TANLEE** There's virtually nothing left of our forces. But there's just a chance you may get through.

**ALBY** Huh, 'a chance'... Well, why not...

**TANLEE** (*Confidentially*) The fact is... we are losing the war with the Daleks. Our fleets have been decimated... and the Daleks command all the major space lanes and have accessed every communications network in the galaxy. Last month... Earth surrendered after being besieged for years.

**ALBY** (*Shocked*) What?

**TANLEE** So, Alby... it's up to you. Get straight to your ship. There's not a moment to lose. And be careful, for God's sake. As we landed here, we picked up Dalek readings.

**ALBY** Daleks? Here on Carson's Planet?

**TANLEE** They're either after you or me... or both... or just up to no good. So, please, just get the hell out of here. Go!

**ALBY** Yes, sir.

**TANLEE** Good luck, Alby. You are our last hope.

**ALBY** Oh... great.

*Footsteps as ALBY walks off.*

**TANLEE** Right, you two, let's get back to the ship.

*A Dalek gun blast.*

**TANLEE** Get down!!!

*Two more blasts and the men are killed.*

**DALEK** Do not move."

**TANLEE** I'm not moving.  
**DALEK** Proceed to space dock. Capture the one known as Alby Brook.  
**DALEK 1** I obey.

### 30. Int. Alby's Ship.

*Door opens and shuts. Fast footsteps of ALBY running in. ALBY is out of breath.*

**ALBY** Drudger! Immediate take-off - and don't wait for clearance from traffic control.  
**DRUDGER** Complying.  
**MIRANA** You're not going anywhere.  
**ALBY** Oh, God, not you again.  
**MIRANA** More criminal activity? I already have you booked on seven counts of traffic and excise violations.  
**ALBY** You just can't leave me alone, can you?  
**MIRANA** And this time, I have the gun. It occurred to me that you didn't offer a shred of proof for your -  
**ALBY** Drudger - Protocol 5!!!  
*Drudger gun fires. Gun clangs to floor, fizzing.*  
**MIRANA** Argh!!!  
**DRUDGER** Protocol 5 carried out. Intruder's weapon destroyed.  
**ALBY** What were you saying about a gun?  
**MIRANA** Are you going to kill me?  
**ALBY** Ah, that old chestnut again.  
*Alarms sound.*  
**DRUDGER** External detectors indicate Daleks approaching.  
**ALBY** Let's go! Move it!

### 31. Ext. Carson's Planet. Spaceport.

**DALEK** Open fire on that ship, immediately! Fire! Fire! Fire!  
*Dalek blasts. ALBY's ship takes off.*  
**DALEK 1** Squad 4 to transolar disc patrol in planetary orbit. Intercept escaping vessel.

### 32. Int. Alby's Ship.

*Engines rising in pitch. Various alarms.*

**DRUDGER** Dalek transolar disc patrols closing.  
**MIRANA** What the hell's happening?  
**ALBY** You're witnessing some proof of what I told you last time we met.  
*Impact explosion. Vocal reaction from both.*  
**MIRANA** I thought Carson's Planet was neutral.  
**ALBY** Perhaps someone forgot to tell the Daleks that! You'd better hold onto something, my lovely."  
*Impact explosion. Vocal reaction.*  
**DRUDGER** Transolar discs attacking - port and starboard.  
**ALBY** Switch on security shield.  
*Buzz of activation.*

**DRUDGER** Shield activated.

### 33. Ext. Space. Carson's Planet Orbit.

**DALEK** Escaping ship no longer detectable. Lay down wide-angle blast pattern. Maximum power. Fire! Fire! Fire!!!  
*Dalek guns fire.*

### 34. Int. Alby's Ship.

*Buffeted by impacts.*

**DRUDGER** Daleks firing blind. Attempting to hit us.

**ALBY** Steer us away. Set course for Yaldos.

*Bleeps.*

**DRUDGER** Complying.

**MIRANA** Yaldos?

**DRUDGER** Dalek fire successfully evaded.

**MIRANA** I suppose you realise that kidnapping an interplanetary police officer is a crime, punishable by -

**ALBY** And I suppose it hasn't escaped your attention that there is a war going on? I mean, you are aware of that fact, are you? Considering we've just been shot at by a squadron of Daleks on transolar discs. That fact did penetrate your shiny red police helmet, did it? (*Pause*) Nothing to say? No citations to issue?

**DRUDGER** Maximum velocity achieved.

**MIRANA** (*Subdued*) Why are we going to Yaldos? Are you into ancient cultures or something?

**ALBY** What?

**MIRANA** You've heard of the Seers of Yaldos...?

**ALBY** No. Who the hell are they?

**MIRANA** Nobody really knows. Legend has it they're... well, sorcerers... that they bring the dead back to life.

**ALBY** (*Dismissible chuckle*) Yeah... right. Then we might be needing them soon.

**MIRANA** What do you mean? What are you going to do on Yaldos?

**ALBY** Er... I don't actually know. Funny that. But... very probably... I shall have to kill the woman I love.

**MIRANA** Why?

**ALBY** Oh, to save the galaxy from the Daleks. How's that for you?

**MIRANA** How's that for you?

**ALBY** It stinks.

### 35. Narration.

**NARRATOR** The Seers of Yaldos... I had heard of them a long time ago. And then, one day, the Daleks had told me that our next planetfall would be on Yaldos. This was my chance. Chance. My only chance... to speak to Alby... to speak... to history. That sounds rather grand, doesn't it? (*A little chuckle*) Perhaps I have been a little grand. Some may say this whole terrible business has filled a vacuum in what I had begun to feel was a rather empty life. They may say I seized upon my role as the Angel of Mercy with a little more vigour than was perhaps necessary. They may

be right. But, Alby, I did love you. Do love you. No matter how much I've tried to deny it, to be tough... ruthless. Underneath it all, I've always felt that you were... with me somehow. That girl on Guria told me about you, that you'd said you loved me and were prepared to die finding me. She said I would find a way to be with you forever. And I have found that way, my love. Here I am.

### 36. Int. Yaldos. Dalek Control.

**DALEK**           Hyperlink beam from Imperial Command Ship to Yaldos Dalek Control now established.

*Door opens.*

**DALEK 2**           Enter.

*Footsteps.*

**DALEK**           The Dalek Supreme wishes to speak to you.

**SUZ**               I know. Leave us.

**DALEKS**          We obey.

*Door closes. Hyperlink activates.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Susan Mendes.

**SUZ**               So... Why do you want me to make this broadcast?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Earth has fallen.

**SUZ**               Earth...?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The Daleks are victorious. This galaxy is now under our control. It is the new Dalek Empire.

**SUZ**               You... you've conquered every planet in the galaxy?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) All planets not yet occupied by the Daleks pose no military threat. They will be unable to defend themselves.

**SUZ**               So it's over, then. How does that make you feel?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You will tell the citizens of the new Dalek Empire that the war is ended. You will tell them that their work has hastened our victory. That they will obey the Daleks forever.

**SUZ**               And that's it? That's what it's all been about? Why didn't you answer my question? How does it make you feel?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The Emperor of the Daleks will now speak to you.

**SUZ**               The Emperor...? Why?

*Hyperlink signal readjusts.*

**EMPEROR**       (*Distort*) Susan Mendes.

**SUZ**               (*Afraid*) You... you are the Emperor?

**EMPEROR**       (*Distort*) I am.

**SUZ**               You've never spoken to me before. Why are you speaking to me now?

**EMPEROR**       (*Distort*) Because you have reached the end of your long journey.

### 37. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity Operations Room.

**ESPEELIUS**     (*Over speakers*) May I have your attention, please?

*Bustle in the room settles.*

**ESPEELIUS**     (*Over speakers*) This is Project Director Espeelius. The Infinity Scan is prepared for its first and only test run. We had hoped for more supplies of veganite to give us power for more tests... but the Dalek



conquest of the Vega System has prevented this... and now the galactic situation is critical. If this test run is successful, we will have justified centuries of painstaking research and work. We will, God willing, have begun the last journey towards saving the galaxy. I know you will all do your best. Good luck to us all.

*Clicks off.*

**ASSISTANT** Director. The Scan Probe is now targeted on the dimensional fissure's weakest point.

**ESPELIUS** Hmm. Good. Begin!

*Scan Probe activates. A high-power, piercing sound.*

**ESPELIUS** Increase energy levels. Set cut-off at 120 units.

*Rise of power hum. Electronic tinkle of data.*

**ASSISTANT** (*Gobsmacked*) D... Director... It's incredible... The data banks - They're... they're uploading. They're... Oh my God. It's working... The sheer volume of data is... incredible.

**ESPELIUS** Well, we are dealing with infinity, are we not?

*Comms bleep.*

**COMMS** (*Distort*) Director! Director! We've picked up transmissions coming from the Yaldos System.

**ESPELIUS** What? That's of no concern to me. Don't bother me now.

**COMMS** But, Director... there's been a rebellion.

**ASSISTANT** A rebellion? What are the transmissions saying?

**COMMS** 'Death to the Daleks'... we're hearing those words, transmitted over and over again. It's like it's some prearranged call to arms. All over the Dalek Empire, slaves are turning on the Daleks, taking control of communications and supply networks. It's ... it's just... chaos.

**ASSISTANT** Do you think the tide is turning against the Daleks?

**ESPELIUS** I doubt it. Hm. Perhaps in the short term, yes... But whatever has happened in the Yaldos System... it's just a sideshow. Project Infinity is the main event.<sup>46</sup>

### 38. Ext. Yaldos.

*Millions cheering. Firing of guns. Sporadic chants of 'Death to the Daleks'. ALBY's ship comes in to land.*

### 39. Int. Yaldos. Comms Centre.

*Cheering is muted in the background. Door opens. Cheering volume up slightly.*

**SLAVE** (*Out of breath*) Kalendorf! Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** (*Brooding*) What is it?

**SLAVE** There is a ship... an Earth Alliance ship.

**KALENDORF** So?

**SLAVE** An agent... His name is Alby Brook. He's asking for you... and... and (*tails off*)

**KALENDORF** The Angel of Mercy?

**SLAVE** (*Subdued*) Yes... yes, I'm sorry.

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) The Angel of Mercy.

*ALBY and MIRANA's lines in the distance, coming closer.*

**ALBY** Look, just let me through.

**MIRANA** I'm an interplanetary police officer... Do you know the penalty for...?

**ALBY** Are they in here... Ah.  
**MIRANA** Is that him?  
**ALBY** Kalendorf? Are you Kalendorf?  
**KALENDORF** Yes. And you are the 'legendary' Alby Brook. I remember your face.  
**ALBY** You look very different from the pictures I saw of you.  
**KALENDORF** Huh. We were supposed to meet on Vega VI, weren't we?  
**ALBY** You were very good at avoiding me, I seem to remember.  
**KALENDORF** I was... biding my time.  
**ALBY** Are you and Suz responsible for this... revolution that's taking place?  
**KALENDORF** It's something we'd planned and worked at for a long time.  
**MIRANA** Well... you've caused quite a stir. On the way in, we were picking up nothing but 'Death to the Daleks' on all frequencies. It's like the galaxy's gone mad.  
**KALENDORF** We've certainly given the Daleks something to think about.  
**ALBY** They'll counter-attack, that's for sure.  
**KALENDORF** Yes. Yes. That's for sure. *(Pause)* Alby Brook. You don't ask. I know you want to. Are you afraid to ask?  
*Pause.*  
**ALBY** *(Quietly)* Yes. I am afraid.  
**KALENDORF** Do you want me to tell you?  
**ALBY** *(Breaking down)* Oh, God, no...  
**KALENDORF** They killed her, Alby. The Angel of Mercy is dead.

*CLOSING THEME.*

## NOTES

1. Line changed to: 'If you'd paid any attention to your pocket computer download on Dalek methodology, **you'd know** - '
2. Line changed to: 'Did you have to shoot him? Couldn't you **just** - ?'
3. Line changed to: 'Er... contact... ~~contact~~... (*Remembers*) 'Contact Espeelius', that's what the computer said, anyway. But that's all I know.'
4. Line changed to: 'Look, you're the security operative who, according to your file, **which I wrote**, works best under conditions of extreme pressure. So live up to your reputation.'
5. Line changed to: '~~...and production~~ quotas have exceeded productivity targets by 27 per cent.'
6. Line changed to: 'The local commander was looking a little twitchy as he left your office, just **now**. Did you say something to **agitate** him?'
7. Line changed to: 'Free to what? Take stupid risks? Suz, please, take my hand. (*Pause*) **Why won't you take it?**'
8. Line changed to: 'If you could just hear yourself! The Daleks **can't** trust. They're *using* us, Suz.'
9. Line changed to: 'They could. It would have just taken them a **little** longer.'
10. 'Oh,' added at the beginning of the line.
11. Line changed to: 'Not when my informant on Orearlis III told me you **would pay anything** for a hyperlink decoder.'
12. Line changed to: 'Sorry, **love**. Someone's already sitting there.'
13. The switch between this line and the following line was actually:  
**ALBY** You've got -  
**MIRANA** - ~~we get~~ a gun pointing at the back of your head, yes. Alby Brook, off-world immigrant of no fixed abode, you are under arrest.
14. Line changed to: 'You don't have to say anything, but I am now recording all your responses for the purposes of evidence. What for? Illegal trade in Earth Alliance government property, namely a stolen hyperlink decoder. And I've a funny feeling **that** that's just for starters. (*Pause*) Nothing to say? Have it your own way.'
15. Line changed to: 'These are unconventionally times - ~~and~~ I had a bad feeling about you.'
16. Line changed to: 'You sent me on this mission. I... I... was merely... concerned that - **well**, I thought that I should report directly to you.'
17. Line changed to: '(*Panicked*) What are...? No - wait a minute. Can't we talk this over - ~~er...~~'
18. This line was moved to after the following line.
19. Line changed to: 'Good. ~~I've~~ never been a fan of the police... and that woman is beginning to irritate me. I shall be very happy if I never see her again.'
20. Line changed to: 'It is possible, ~~if the Daleks were aware that they were using the Orearlis Platform to relay their hyperlink signal.~~'
21. Line changed to: 'Just about, **Madam President**. But the signal carrier is getting weaker by the moment.'
22. Line changed to: 'Er... Yes, **Madam President**. Yes. Proceed.'
23. Line changed to: 'Understood, **Madam President**. I understand. Good luck.'
24. Line changed to: 'Espeelius. We must keep information to a minimum. This message is encrypted, but no hyperlink beams can be considered secure now. The Daleks comms-network is... well, they've pretty much got the **whole** galaxy sewn up.'

**25.** Line changed to: 'Oh yeah. But the point is, this place is a kind of halfway house now. Meant to be neutral. **That actually means the place is such a mess, no one bothers with it.** But it's ~~not only~~ full of thieves and murderers ~~now...~~ **and of course**, there are spies from... well (*whispers*) spies from both sides. I swear half me customers are Dalek replicants.'

**26.** Line changed to: 'Ah, but you see... ~~now~~ I'm confused, aren't I? I mean, you *could* be, but you're just not saying. Get my drift?'

**27.** Line changed to: '(Approaching) And before you try to shoot them while **you're** pretending to find your wallet, please bear in mind we're all on the same side.'

**28.** Line changed to: '(Hiccoughs) **Yeah...** yeah. Something like that. Seemed like the Daleks were on to me. Anyway, why are you looking for me?'

**29.** Line changed to: 'If they **even had** the slightest suspicion, why would they give you the chance to make a live broadcast to every planet in the Dalek Empire? To let you do that... they must be absolutely sure that you'll do nothing but toe the party line. Praise the slaves for all they've achieved. Tell them how many lives they've saved.'

**30.** Line changed to: '**Ah...** So... You think it's time.'

**31.** Line changed to: 'Suz, I know it must have been difficult for you, back on Celatron... **I mean**, when the Dalek Supreme - '

**32.** Line changed to: ' - offered to kill you and replace you with Alby Brook? (Pause) Karl... listen... I know we haven't always... (*Sighs*) **Well**, there've been bad times.'

**33.** Line changed to: '**Yes.** You'll be killed - immediately. The Daleks will turn on you without a thought.'

**34.** Line changed to: 'Do not move. **Do not move.**'

**35.** Line changed to: '**Well**, perhaps someone forgot to tell the Daleks that! You'd better hold on to something, my **love.**'

**36.** Line changed to: 'I doubt it, Hm. Perhaps in the short term, yes... But whatever has happened in the Yaldos System... ~~it's just a side show.~~ Project Infinity is the main event.'



# "DEATH TO THE DALEKS!"

**By the time you came to record "Death to the Daleks!", the first two CDs had been released. How did the reaction to those plays affect your writing, recording or post-production?**

Nicholas Briggs: Well, the initial review-reaction to the series was quite bad. *Dreamwatch* and *SFX* just didn't get it and simply moaned that Daleks were boring and where was Doctor Who anyway? The positive reaction started to filter through to me from people who read the reviews on the internet and through personal contact with other fans. But I'm not sure when that kicked in. The review in **Doctor Who Magazine** seemed to take ages to come out, because they'd just adopted their policy of not reviewing things in advance... That was very lovely when it came, but I can't exactly remember when that was. I think, at this stage, I was still just beavering away, trying to get everything done on time. I had a theatre job in the summer and another one in the autumn, so it all got a bit tight time-wise. Also, when I'm away doing theatre, I tend to become very disconnected from the *Doctor Who* world; so I don't think the reaction was affecting the way I worked at all, at this stage.

**What were your writing habits like for Dalek Empire?**

I wrote *Dalek Empire* at my home in South-East London and at my parents' place down in the New Forest. When I was writing at home, I think I was using my Mac G4 and when I was at my parents', I used pen and paper. I also did a lot of strolling in the park near where I live, writing in exercise books. I used to do this a lot back in the Audio Visuals days, and it's a method of writing that I've re-adopted more and more ever since I discovered that Rob Shearman writes like this! Just trying to emulate his genius, of course. But writing out in the open air can free your imagination quite a bit. I tend to feel stifled if I stay indoors all the time – which I do a lot! It's the reason I couldn't just be a writer. I have to go out and work with other people, for the sake of my sanity. Oh, and by the way, I wrote it in Microsoft Word. I love my hanging indents.

**How long did it take?**

It took most of 2001. I always take lots of breaks, because people generally are more productive just before and just after a break. Between these times, productivity sags somewhat. So I do a little and very often, which seems to work well. I do my longest periods of concentrated work very late at night – or in the early hours of the morning, I should say – because there's a great stillness round about that time. You know no one is going to ring you and there are only bad, late-night movies to distract you.

I do loads of rewriting, because I constantly re-read my work. And every time I re-read, I rewrite something. When I'd finished a first draft of a chapter, I'd send it to John Ainsworth. He'd make notes and then we'd meet up to discuss them. As a result of that,

I'd do another draft. I think, on average, each chapter went up to about four drafts. When both John and I were happy with the script, I'd send it to Terry Nation's Estate and to Jacqueline Rayner [Executive Producer for BBC Worldwide]. The Nation Estate never asked for any changes, which was nice, and neither did Jac. In fact, Jac was kind enough to say things like, 'Very exciting! Can't wait to find out what happens next!' in her official approval emails. I did send the first couple of chapters to Jason, but I visited his house a month or so later and found them discarded, unread somewhere and so didn't bother sending him any more.

**"Death to the Daleks!" has very few changes between script and finished audio – were you particularly happy with it?**

Well, just because there weren't many changes doesn't necessarily mean I was more happy with it than I was with the other chapters. It just means I thought I got it more right the first time. I'm not sure why. It is a very character and dialogue-based episode with very little action. That stuff on Celatron, in particular, did dig to the root of Suz's growing psychological problems. And in many ways, this chapter was the pay-off to a lot of set-up. Since that was all planned out in advance, maybe it just came together quicker.

**The title's an unusual one – not only does it have speech marks and an exclamation point, but it's also noticeably similar to a certain 1974 Doctor Who serial.**

I knew that chapter three's title should be whatever I decided was going to be the 'call to arms' phrase Kalendorf and Suz were spreading amongst the slaves. Once I'd decided that 'Death to the Daleks!' would be that phrase, I had to go with it as a title. Gary Russell, in particular, thought I was bonkers and said that the Nation Estate would object. Jac also voiced some worries about it, so I asked her, 'Are you telling me on behalf of the BBC that I can't do it?' or something like that. She said she wasn't officially objecting at all. The Nation Estate made no comment about it at all.

I really did think it was a good title for this chapter. I also stand virtually alone in liking the original *Death to the Daleks*, which is a bit of a running joke with some friends of mine, so I also wanted to pay tribute to that original story in this way. It's also a bit of a talking point, and that's never a bad thing in terms of drawing audience attention.

One final point, I said there was the precedent of the *Star Trek* movie *First Contact*. As all *Next Generation* fans know, there was also an episode of that series called *First Contact*. I rest my battered case.

**One of the few notable changes you made was that Tanlee calls the Earth President 'Madam President' rather than 'your presidency'. Any reason for the change?**

I thought 'your presidency' just sounded a bit stupid. It sounded as if he was referring to her period in office rather than addressing her office by name.

**"Death to the Daleks!" introduces a new regular, Mirana. In what kind of detail had you mapped out her story? Was it a deliberate ploy to make people accept her as a regular so you could then kill her off?**

Her story had been mapped out in the plot-line, but I didn't prepare a character bio for her, which, in retrospect, perhaps I should have done. But you're absolutely right, I did want to give the impression that she was a new regular and at that stage I did think I was going to kill her off. It was a bit of audience expectation management going on! I wanted

the audience to accept her as a new regular, and to that end I gave her that whole introductory scene with the strange insect aliens and the hilarious Jez Fielder doing the most outrrrrag-g-g-geous voice I've ever heard. I was on the floor laughing in the control room. I got everyone else in to have a listen. They thought he was mad. They were right.

**When you're writing a series in which the episodes are released two months apart, how much thought do you give to recapping events? How much can you assume that the listeners will have remembered from the earlier instalments?**

I only recapped events when I thought the characters, rather than the audience, would actually need to remember. Otherwise, I wanted the audience to rely on having heard the previous CD or having read the 'story so far' section. That's why I included that as part of the packaging. I was a bit worried that someone might buy "Death to the Daleks!" first and not know what was going on. I thought the info in the CD booklet might help. In reality, though, I think it's unlikely that people bought a later chapter and listened to it without having heard the previous CDs. But I have no firm research to back that up.

**Giving Alby false legs was a bit harsh, wasn't it? Were you just being sadistic or something?**

I was just being as realistic as possible. I wanted him to be caught up in a major planetary assault, so I thought, 'What are the chances of everyone getting out of that alive?' Quite slim. I didn't want to kill a main character off at that point, so I just thought I'd give him a nasty injury. It also made a good transition point in the plot. Waking up in a hospital is always good for that, I find. Where am I? What happened? It's a good excuse for people to ask the bleedin' obvious, which is always helpful on audio.

**Tanlee turns up in "Death to the Daleks!" – what made you decide that he would be your character?**

At some very early point, I was considering asking Mark Gatiss to be Tanlee; but he was terribly, terribly busy and I didn't want to have to worry about finding recording dates that would fit in with his busy schedule. I never actually asked him to play the part, but I did chat to him about Dalek Empire generally and I kind of scoped out his availability, which wasn't good. It was John Ainsworth who suggested that I should play the part, since in discussions about the character he thought I was very definite about how I wanted to play it. It was fun to do, because he does change somewhat as the story progresses. It's an indication of how serious the situation is getting towards the end of the story that he becomes quite emotional when he realises that Earth is going to be invaded. I'm thinking of that bit when the comms cut off and he's left on his own saying, 'My God'. I enjoyed giving that a bit of emotional weight.

**When Alby and Mirana meet up, we get a flashback to their first meeting. You'd also done something similar in *Invasion of the Daleks*, with Alby and Suz's last scene together being dramatised as a flashback. Does non-linear storytelling interest you? Of course, you use it a lot more in *Dalek War*.**

The more I write, the more I realise just how absolutely vital it is that you tell your story in the right order. I know... that sounds blindingly obvious. But the fact is that it's not always obvious for me to figure out what the most effective order is. If you think of the



way you tell people stuff in real life, you quite often don't tell them things in strict chronological order. Sometimes it's more effective to tell people up-front what happened at the end, which gives the process of the unfolding of your story more significance; or sometimes it works to suddenly go back and let people know what happened earlier, which gives you a kind of retrospective shock. Leaping forward to finding Alby on the *Aquitania* is a slightly disorientating thing to do. For a moment or two, we flounder a bit, wondering what is going on. Then, when I let you know how he got there, the idea was to give you the emotional blow of his last scene with Suz at the same time – so you get vital information and, hopefully, emotional impact at the same time, which I think is more powerful and engaging for an audience. That's the theory, anyway.

**The Dalek Empire CD booklets contain comic strips depicting scenes from the episodes.** The inspiration for the comic strips was, of course, *The Dalek Book* and the TV21 comic strips. I asked Tim Keable to do them, because he's just as in love with those things as I am. He loves drawing Daleks and I've known him for many years. How could I not ask him? I selected bits of the script for him to do, I think, although he sometimes suggested bits. I seem to remember he particularly suggested the bits for "Death to the Daleks!" and *Project Infinity*, which I agreed with. I would always send the scripts to Tim as soon as they were finished, so he could get an idea of what was coming up. I also thought it was important for him to have a broader story context for his illustrations, so he wasn't just creating scenes in isolation. I wanted him to have a general feel for the overall story.

**The cliffhanger is a right humdinger – Kalendorf telling Alby that Suz is dead. You were being very cagey here, weren't you? You must have known that people would say, 'Well, how can Suz be dead if she's been narrating the events?'**

Yes, I was playing around with audience expectations. I knew that everyone would assume it was Suz narrating. And in case anyone was still doubting it, I had the Seer suddenly start referring to Suz in the first person. This, of course, was the Seer's personality becoming more enmeshed with Suz's – but in the absence of other evidence at the time, it sounds like a confirmation that it is indeed Suz who is narrating. So, in a way, it's a cliffhanger that leaves the audience wondering about two things: is Suz really dead? Is it really Suz narrating? Well, with those sorts of questions hanging in the air, I hoped no one could resist getting the next instalment.

# SCRIPT EDITING

When Nicholas Briggs finished the first draft of each chapter of Dalek Empire, he would send it to script editor John Ainsworth. Ainsworth would read the script and make notes, then the two of them would arrange to meet somewhere to run through the script. In the lead-up to the recording of the fourth Dalek Empire play, Project Infinity, Briggs was heavily involved in theatre productions of A Midsummer Night's Dream and Closer in Chesterfield, whilst Ainsworth was based in London. Therefore, Briggs drove south on Sunday 14 October 2001 – his only day off from a busy rehearsal schedule – and met up with Ainsworth just off Caledonian Road in North London at 10.30am. Dismayed that none of the local cafes were open, they sat in Briggs's old Vauxhall Astra and had their meeting. They recorded their discussion, initially intending extracts of it to be used on one of Big Finish's behind-the-scenes CDs. However, the recording was then mislaid until recently...

This is a transcript of director and script editor discussing the early scenes of Project Infinity. It shows how John was keen to introduce a new element of mystery and how Nick was keen to emphasise the developing character traits of Alby Brook.

**John Ainsworth** There are two particular things which are possible criticisms, but I have a way in mind that will improve them. Though you may disagree and throw it all away, and that's fine. Firstly... more an observation, in that I think compared to the other three episodes, this one goes much more into action and there's much less plot. I mean, in the sense that there's the revelation of what Project Infinity is, and that really is your only plot. We've just got to get there and stop them, or try to. That's it, really. I know that's a horrific simplification. You know what I'm saying?

**Nicholas Briggs** More or less. There is the revelation of Mirana being under the Emperor's control, but that's the impetus for them to go to Project Infinity in a way. OK, yeah.

**Ainsworth** The other point is one that we've talked about, but I'm still having difficulty... about the whole thing of having Alby sort of running away up the mountain and refusing to give this information to Kalendorf and Mirana. And then it turns out not to be a huge amount of information anyway. I know we talked about this before, but just reading through again, it still feels a little bit... I can't really grasp why he's doing that.

**Briggs** Well, I think that it's less that he's running away and refusing to give them information, it's more that he's just running away and not even thinking about the information he's got. And Kalendorf thinks Alby has information. That's what it's to do with. It's Kalendorf who's saying, 'You know something' and Alby's saying, 'I don't know anything'. He's not lying. As far as he's concerned, he believes he doesn't know anything. So he finally says, 'OK, you wanna know what I know? I know this and that... and that's all there is to it! And that fact means there's no point in knowing it anyway, because we're all going to be dead in five minutes' time' or whatever.

**Ainsworth** I think what tips the balance towards making the audience think Alby knows more is the fact that Kalendorf keeps saying, 'There's that look in his eye'. It's almost like, when Alby heard the mention of the Lopra System, he flinched.

**Briggs** Oh... right.

**Ainsworth** Perhaps Kalendorf is planting too big a seed of an idea here.

**Briggs** Yeah...

**Ainsworth** What you're saying is that Kalendorf imagined this 'look' in Alby's eye.

**Briggs** No, Alby definitely has a reaction when he hears about the Lopra System.

**Ainsworth** He clocks it. But it's not quite as significant as Kalendorf – and therefore the audience – will think it is.

**Briggs** For Alby, it has this whole resonance of him being sent on a mission to kill Suz if she knew about Project Infinity. And Tanlee said to him that if the Daleks do know about Project Infinity, then we're finished. So when he hears that a Dalek ship has been spotted in the Lopra System – and he knows Project Infinity is in the Lopra System – Alby just thinks, 'We're screwed'.

**Ainsworth** Yeah.

**Briggs** Which is why he focuses on Suz more. Now that's all well and good, isn't it? But I haven't actually said any of that in the script. *[Laughs]*

**Ainsworth** Well, you have. All those explanations are there, but I think the trouble is that there's a false build-up because of what Kalendorf seems to believe. We're expecting Alby to give more of a revelation than he does. So when he doesn't –

**Briggs** But that's what the revelation is... that there isn't one! They chase after him, all the way to the top of this mountain, thinking 'What's he doing? Where's he gone?'... and when they find him, he just says, 'I'm looking for pickled onions'. It's the art of bathos... anti-climax. But it does trouble me that it creates a sense of disappointment in you.

**Ainsworth** Right. Well, have a think about that.

**Briggs** On the general point, I did want to make it more action-packed.

**Ainsworth** Right.

**Briggs** Because episode three has virtually no actual 'kerpow!' action at all. Which really came home to me when I'd finished editing it. I thought, 'My God, this is a really talkie episode'.

**Ainsworth** Episode threes always are, aren't they?

**Briggs** And I thought that we really need to go off with a bang, which is why I put the whole battle scene thing in.

**Ainsworth** Oh, I think you're absolutely right. I think not having that would be a let down, dramatically speaking. But the thing that I was going to suggest about both the points I've brought up, is... I wondered if it might be interesting – and this is an extra bit of plot which won't change anything structurally – if Alby was slightly suspicious or fearful that Kalendorf could be a Dalek duplicate, because, of course, the Daleks have had every opportunity to make a duplicate of him.

**Briggs** Oh, my God.

**Ainsworth** So therefore Alby would be a little bit reluctant to discuss the Lopra System and Project Infinity with someone he suspects of being a duplicate. And, of course, Kalendorf will be unwittingly reinforcing Alby's suspicion by pursuing him on all these points. So Alby's thinking, 'Oh my God, the Daleks want to know what I know'... which, of course, is true, but then it turns out to be Mirana who wants to know, because she's the Dalek agent. I just think that plays around with the surprise element. It will redirect people's suspicions, perhaps.

**Briggs** [Liking the idea] Yeah...

**Ainsworth** And Kalendorf could, quite conceivably be a duplicate.

**Briggs** No, I follow that. It's just that –

**Ainsworth** You think it's muddying it all a bit.

**Briggs** No. You're absolutely right. Alby would think that. My first thought is that it will just make all those scenes longer. I think that what's there already is more or less necessary – although I know that introducing this idea would largely just change stuff rather than add to it – but it would make it longer. And it's already very long indeed. My gut feeling – and you know me, I'll have to think about this –

**Ainsworth** I'm saying it more for you to think about it rather than make a decision now.

**Briggs** My gut feeling is that I quite like the way it happens now, because it's all just about Alby being depressed and feeling that everything he's done has been wasted – and he doesn't want to fight any more. It's all about stuff which is more realistic human emotion, rather than thriller stuff like, 'You may be a spy!' and all that. But maybe I'm not satisfying the needs of the genre.

**Ainsworth** I think it would be a great shame to get rid of the human emotion stuff. But, there's no reason why there can't be a combination of the two. If you said that Alby did really think Kalendorf is a replica, you might wonder why he isn't doing anything about it, reporting his suspicions to the authorities or something. And the reason why he's not is because he just doesn't care about anything anymore.

**Briggs** This is it... If someone burst into Alby's room and said, 'Did you know that Kalendorf's a Dalek replicant?' he'd just say, 'Oh, piss off!'. I don't think he gives a damn about it.

**Ainsworth** But, at the same time, he wouldn't want to start spilling vital information to Kalendorf.

**Briggs** But I think Alby thinks it's all too late anyway. Which is why I put in the scene at the beginning. I want Mark to do that as if the poor guy is really in a mess... You know? Alby's disengaged from the thriller plot completely now. But... Hmmm

**Ainsworth** I think, go home and think about it. I'm not saying the story is completely missing this element. I'm just saying it's something that might work and that it might give an extra twist to the duplicate thing. It might give another little strand of plot.

**Briggs** I'm more inclined to have Alby throw this element in when he's being angry. For him to throw it in and say, 'For all I know...'. You know? 'This whole situation is bad and, for all I know, it could be even worse. I don't actually care, but as far as I'm concerned you're talking out of your arse for two reasons. One, because I'm not interested in what you're saying. Two, because you could actually be working for the Daleks anyway. And it's all too difficult for me to think about', you know, that sort of attitude.

**Ainsworth** I don't think it does need much more than that.

**Briggs** OK... Hmmm. Thank you.

**Ainsworth** Well, anyway! Think about that.

**Briggs** It's interesting you say that there's not much plot and it's all action, because I kept thinking, 'Oh, there's so much plot to get across!'

**Ainsworth** I suppose I meant that there's not enough mystery. The rest of it is what I'd call the mechanics of it.

**Briggs** By the way, did you want a pen?

**Ainsworth** I've done all my pen work.

**Briggs** Well, there's one here if you want one.

*And then began the line-by-line analysis of the script. As is evident from the scripts reproduced in this book, Briggs did indeed take Ainsworth's advice by throwing in a reference to Alby suspecting Kalendorf of being a duplicate.*

# PROJECT INFINITY

## 1. News Broadcast.<sup>1</sup>

*News theme tune begins. Dip volume for...*

**NEWSREADER** This is Galactic Free News, broadcasting on all wavelengths and hyperbeams. The galaxy-wide revolution against the Daleks continues, but its leaders warn against complacency.

*Music fades.*

**NEWSREADER** Seven standard months have passed since the death of Angel of Mercy Susan Mendes triggered the rebellion on almost every planet enslaved by the Daleks. And although in the initial fighting the Daleks lost control of a number of key planetary systems and communications networks, it is claimed that the rebellion is in danger of losing momentum. And with the mysterious disappearance of Space Security Chief Ernst Tanlee, the Operational Commander of Earth's Forces, more worrying developments are signalled. Rebellion leader Kalendorf, one of the fabled Knights of Velyshaa, had this to say when we spoke to him via direct hyperlink to the planet Yaldos.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) The Daleks have not been beaten. We must be clear about that. The fight *has* to go on.

*Crash in Dalek Empire theme tune.*

## 2. Int. Yaldos. Alby's Room.

*Bleep of comms alarm. Liquid being poured from bottle into glass, messily. ALBY takes a big gulp. Bleep of comms alarm again. ALBY burps. Click of button.*

**ALBY** (*Drunk and morose*) I told you. No calls! I don't want to talk to anyone!

**COMPUTER** Priority message.

**ALBY** I said, I don't want to talk to *anyone!* That means anyone... at all... in the whole bleedin' universe! Including you! So get lost.

**COMPUTER** Priority message reads... "Try a pickled onion... My gran makes them...sends them from Earth. Grid reference 059249786.

**ALBY** (*Over computer voice*) Look, stop it! I'm just not interested in any messages from any - (*stunned*) What?<sup>2</sup>

**COMPUTER** Priority message reads... "Try a pickled onion... My gran makes them...sends them from Earth. Grid reference 059249786.

*Glass drops and smashes. Crash as ALBY falls to the ground. Groans in pain.*

**ALBY** (*Gasping*) Suz? Suz... is that you?

## 3. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Dalek Supreme reporting to Emperor.

*Door opens.*

**EMPEROR** Speak!

**DALEK SUPREME** Course alteration to this vessel's trajectory has been effected. At this range, Earth Alliance deep-space scanning beams will no longer be able to detect us -

**EMPEROR** Until our final approach to the Lopra System. Is it certain that we were detected?

**DALEK SUPREME** Readings indicate momentary contact only.

**EMPEROR** We underestimated the tenacity of the humans and their allies. That must not happen again.<sup>3</sup>

**DALEK SUPREME** Understood, Emperor. Our new course will delay planetfall on Lopra Minor by five solar months.

**EMPEROR** A high-speed advance attack force with augmented delta-ray shielding must be dispatched to Lopra Minor as soon as possible. They will be undetectable.

**DALEK SUPREME** Preparations will be instigated immediately.

**EMPEROR** They will secure Project Infinity and begin conversion of the systems in preparation for my arrival.

**DALEK SUPREME** Understood.

**EMPEROR** Our human agents report that no reinforcements have been allocated to defend the Lopra System. Our attack force will encounter no significant resistance. Victory is assured!

#### 4. Int. Yaldos. Comms Centre.<sup>4</sup>

*Knock on door.*

**KALENDORF** *(Sighs)* Come in.

*Door opens. Footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** Ah, Officer Mirana.

**MIRANA** Hi... Are... are you okay?

**KALENDORF** 'Okay'? Do I look okay?

**MIRANA** Not really.

*Pause.*

**MIRANA** I've got the latest hyperbeam reports. Do you want me to go through them with you now?

**KALENDORF** Is there any point?

**MIRANA** Well... Not really. But I guess that's for you to decide. You're in charge after all.

**KALENDORF** Apparently. I didn't ask for the job. Nobody voted for me.

**MIRANA** Nobody else wanted the job. I mean, I'm *apparently* head of communications. How did *that* happen?

**KALENDORF** *(Chuckles)* Nobody else -

**MIRANA** - wanted the job... that's right. *(Shares the chuckle)*

Anyway, the reports are here if you want to take a look.

**KALENDORF** Talk me through them.

**MIRANA** Okay, but there's nothing new.

**KALENDORF** There's always something new.

**MIRANA** If you say so...

*Computer activated. Electronic sound of graphics.*

**MIRANA** *(Routine)* This is the picture we'd built up with the first round of reports. Which you've seen. And... here's that pattern of successful rebellion we know so well. A kind of split, right from the Vega System, through Garazone, Guria... the Celatron worlds here... like an arc across the galaxy, more or less ending here on Yaldos.

**KALENDORF** That's no surprise... an arc of rebellion travelling through almost every planet Suz and I were taken to by the Daleks.

**MIRANA** Just a month after the rebellion started...

*More graphic sounds.*

**MIRANA** And our influence has spread quickly. Dalek forces are scattering, retreating... mainly in the direction of the Seriphia Galaxy.

**KALENDORF** Where they came from in the first place.

**MIRANA** And you can see that arc of rebellion is getting thicker.

*More graphic sounds.*

**MIRANA** Three months in, and the Dalek forces look pretty patchy. They're just concentrating in ten or more strong-points... most significantly in Earth's solar system.

**KALENDORF** And then the slow-down of activity. Maybe you were right... there is nothing new. Is that the latest picture?

**MIRANA** More or less.

**KALENDORF** (*Suddenly curious*) Open that file.

**MIRANA** Sure. But it just confirms the way things are going.

*More graphics noises.*

**KALENDORF** (*Worried*) What...? What are they playing at?

**MIRANA** Running scared.

**KALENDORF** (*Studying the graphics*) Hmm... Is that what you think?

**MIRANA** Despite everything you've said in the media, there's still a lot of gung-ho attitude from our people

**KALENDORF** An army's state of mind is important, but you need more than just attitude to win a battle. A lot of our fleets are badly equipped and poorly organised. But look... these attacks here... The Daleks shouldn't have been defeated; but they're simply retreating at the first sign of trouble.

**MIRANA** Maybe. Maybe they just know it's all over for them.

**KALENDORF** No.

**MIRANA** Kalendorf, what's the matter?

**KALENDORF** I don't know. Hmmm...

**MIRANA** What are you thinking?

**KALENDORF** I'm thinking... They're trying to make us lazy.

**MIRANA** (*Unconvinced*) By losing the war?

**KALENDORF** By treating us like over-excitabile children. Letting us win, over and over again when we've no right to.

**MIRANA** That doesn't sound like Dalek thinking to me.

**KALENDORF** A few years ago I would have agreed with you... But not now. You'd be surprised what constitutes Dalek thinking these days.

*Taps a few keys. Graphics bleep.*

**MIRANA** What are you doing? (*Dismissive*) Oh, the Lopra System.

**KALENDORF** (*Deep in thought*) Why do I keep coming back to that?

**MIRANA** I've no idea. It's in the middle of nowhere.

**KALENDORF** On the opposite side of the galaxy to Seriphia.

**MIRANA** We haven't had any more sightings of that Dalek trace - and anyway, it was some way out from Lopra.

**KALENDORF** But it was heading in that direction.

**MIRANA** We can't be sure of that. My money's on it being just another scanner shadow. We get them all the time... A lot of the equipment we're working with is... well, pretty beat up.

**KALENDORF** Hmmm. I've never believed in shadows, Mirana.



**MIRANA** I think you should get some rest.  
**KALENDORF** (*Ignoring her*) You know... Suz once said to me that she thought the Daleks knew what we were planning all along.  
**MIRANA** That doesn't make sense.  
**KALENDORF** That's what I said. (*Sighs. Change of thought*) Do you think Alby knows more than he's telling us?  
**MIRANA** Alby? Why do you say that?  
**KALENDORF** I noticed him get a bit tight-lipped when the first report of that Dalek sighting came in.  
**MIRANA** Did you? Oh.  
**KALENDORF** Yes. Where is he?  
**MIRANA** Er... I don't know. I haven't seen him in quite a while. He's been rather... distant, lately.  
**KALENDORF** Drunk, you mean. He hasn't said much to anyone ever since he found out Suz was dead.  
**MIRANA** He'd been looking for her a long time.  
**KALENDORF** (*Pensive*) Yes...  
*Comms bleep.*  
**KALENDORF** Kalendorf to Alby Brook. Respond please.  
*Negative bleep.*  
**KALENDORF** Alby, this is Kalendorf. Where are you?  
*Negative bleep.*  
**KALENDORF** Comms centre, can you locate Alby Brook for me, please?  
**COMMS** (*Distort*) Traffic control reports he left the city about an hour ago, sir.  
**KALENDORF** Not drunk, then. (*Urgent*) Where was he heading?  
**COMMS** (*Distort*) Er... Oh. It seems he didn't log a flight plan, sir.  
*Door opens.*  
**MIRANA** Where are you going?  
**KALENDORF** To find Alby... and ask him what he really knows about the Lopra System.

### 5. Ext. Lopra Minor. Jungle.

*A spaceship lands. Establish jungle atmosphere. Crossfade to:*

### 6. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity. Director's Study.

*An old-fashioned clock ticks sedately. ESPEELIUS's distinctive, staccato breathing. A sharp buzzer sounds.*

**ASSISTANT** (*Distort*) Director! Director!  
*Pause. The buzzer again.*  
**ESPEELIUS** I gave orders that I was not to be disturbed.  
**ASSISTANT** (*Distort*) But, Director -  
**ESPEELIUS** The calculations for full activation of the Infinity Scan must be precise. Any inaccuracies could result in -  
**ASSISTANT** (*Distort*) A spacecraft has just landed on the jungle perimeter!  
**ESPEELIUS** What? Are we under attack?  
**ASSISTANT** (*Distort*) No... no, the call sign identifies the ship as the personal transport of the Operational Commander of Earth's Forces.  
**ESPEELIUS** Tanlee? Tanlee has come here?  
**ASSISTANT** (*Distort. Distracted*) Er... yes, sir. That's confirmed. We've

just received another signal. Commander Tanlee wishes to oversee the final activation in person. He's... he's on his way to your study now!

**ESPEELIUS** Tell him I'm not to be disturbed -

*Door opens.*

**TANLEE** (*All smiles*) Director Espeelius!

**ESPEELIUS** Tanlee?!

**TANLEE** Good to see you. I'm glad to hear I haven't missed the main event.

### 7. Int. Alby's Skimmer.

*Howling of mountain wind. A skimmer streaks by. Crossfade to interior.*

**ALBY** (*To himself*) Come on, come on... must be around here somewhere. Nav computer, hurry up with triangulation.

*Bleep of nav computer.*

**NAV COMPUTER** Co-ordinates shifting randomly.<sup>5</sup>

**ALBY** What? But... I thought we were just about there.

**NAV COMPUTER** Unidentified energy barrier emanating from Yaldos mountains is preventing precise co-ordinate reading.

**ALBY** Barrier? What kind of energy barrier?

**NAV COMPUTER** Unidentified.

**ALBY** Oh, very clever.

*Comms bleep.*

**NAV COMPUTER** Incoming transmission.

**ALBY** Hello? Who is it?

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Alby... Is that you?

**ALBY** Suz? Suz! Er... yes, yes it's me - but -

*Comms bleep.*

**NAV COMPUTER** Co-ordinates triangulating now.

**ALBY** What? Oh good. Look, never mind that. Suz! Suz? Do you read me, over?

*Hiss of static.*

**ALBY** Computer, play back that last message.

**NAV COMPUTER** What message?

**ALBY** What'd'ya mean, 'What message'?

**NAV COMPUTER** Nav computer received co-ordinate triangulation signal. No other message received.

**ALBY** (*To himself, confused*) No other...? But I heard... Suz.

*Comms bleep.*

**ALBY** (*Urgent*) She's calling again. Put her through!

**NAV COMPUTER** Incoming transmission.

**ALBY** Suz?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort. Confused*) Suz? It's Kalendorf!

**ALBY** Kalendorf? What... but...?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Alby, are you all right? What the hell are you doing out here flying around a mountain range?

**ALBY** What are you doing out here?<sup>6</sup>

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Following you.

**ALBY** Mirana? God, can't I get any peace?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) It's time you and I had a conversation.

**ALBY** About what?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) The Lopra System.

**ALBY** (Dismissive) I don't know what you're talking about.

### 8. Ext. Yaldos Mountains.

*Skimmer lands on rock. Crunch of touchdown. Crossfade to:*

### 9. Int. Alby's Skimmer.

**KALENDORF** (Distort) Come in. Alby. Where are you?

**ALBY** (Sighs) Go away!

**MIRANA** (Distort) Got him pinpointed. He's landed.

**KALENDORF** (Distort) We're right behind you.

**ALBY** (Unimpressed) Oh... great.<sup>7</sup>

**MIRANA** (Distort) We're coming in to land.

**ALBY** No!

### 10. Ext. Yaldos Mountains.

*Howl of distant wind. Crunch of ALBY's approaching footsteps. Bleep of a tracker.*

**NAV COMPUTER** Now approaching final co-ordinates.

**ALBY** (To himself) Must be that cave.

*Clicks tracker off.*

**KALENDORF** (Distant, echoing) Alby! Alby!

**MIRANA** (Distant, echoing) There he is!!!

*Their distant footsteps fade in and approach.*

**ALBY** I thought I told you this was personal!!!

*As their footsteps get closer, we hear them breathing with effort.*

**KALENDORF** Air's pretty thin up here. We should've brought some respirators.

**ALBY** Why don't you go back and get some?

**MIRANA** We'll be all right. Won't we, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** Hm. Well, we're here now. You might as well tell us what you're up to. (Pause) Come on, Alby.

**ALBY** If you must know...

*Pause.*

**MIRANA** Yes?

**ALBY** I'm looking for some pickled onions.

**KALENDORF** Some what?

*Footsteps as ALBY moves away.*

**ALBY** (Moving off) You heard.

**KALENDORF** (To MIRANA) What's he talking about?

**MIRANA** (Faintly amused) Onions. A terran vegetable, I seem to recall.

**KALENDORF** This isn't making any sense. Alby! Come back here!

*We change perspective. ALBY's footsteps approach. He's a little out of breath.*

**ALBY** (Taken aback) My God. I... (Starts to laugh) Pickled onions. The sound of a jar being picked up. The lid is unscrewed. Crunch of ALBY biting into an onion.

**ALBY** Argh! (Laughs) Just as hot as they were on Vega VI. Footsteps approach. Some breath from KALENDORF as he approaches.

**KALENDORF** Don't tell me... Those are pickled onions?

**ALBY** Yeah.

**MIRANA** What are 'pickled onions' doing halfway up a mountain?  
*Takes another bite.*

**ALBY** Mmmm.

**KALENDORF** Are you sure they're safe to eat?

**ALBY** No.

**KALENDORF** (*Insistent*) Alby?

**ALBY** (*Sighs*) I got a message.

**KALENDORF** A message?

**MIRANA** About pickled onions?

**ALBY** It said, 'Try a pickled onion... My gran makes them... sends them from Earth'. Then it gave this grid reference.<sup>8</sup>

**MIRANA** I don't understand. Do you?

**KALENDORF** No.

**ALBY** It's something Suz said to me... on Vega VI. The last time... the last time we were... well, happy.

**KALENDORF** What do you think it means?

**ALBY** She's here.

**KALENDORF** Alby...

**ALBY** She must be.

**KALENDORF** Suz is dead. You know that.

**ALBY** Do I? These are *her* pickled onions. I know they are.

**MIRANA** (*Laughs, then stops herself*) Sorry... Sorry...

**KALENDORF** Are you still drunk?

**ALBY** No!

*Pause.*

**ALBY** Oh look, I know this all sounds stupid, but, I heard her -  
*Distant crunch of gravel, echoing from a cave.*

**ALBY** Wha - ?

**MIRANA** (*Quietly*) What was that?

**KALENDORF** (*Quietly*) It came from the cave.<sup>9</sup>  
*Footsteps approach out of the cave. Mysterious music cue. (The SEER is the NARRATOR. To begin with, her voice is mingled with SUZ's. This is indicated by SEER/SUZ.)*

**SEER/SUZ** Hello, Alby. I've been waiting for you.

**ALBY** Who are you?

**SEER/SUZ** Don't you recognise me?

**ALBY** S... Suz?

**MIRANA** She's one of the Seers... Aren't you? One of the -

**KALENDORF** - Seers of Yaldos.

**SEER** Come with me, Alby. Please. Your friends are welcome too.

### 11. Int. Seers' Cavern.

*Muted howl of mountain wind. The tinkle of alien wind-chimes. Their footsteps enter cave.*

**KALENDORF** (*Hushed*) So... who exactly are these Seers of Yaldos?

**ALBY** Mirana said they were sorcerers... didn't you?

**MIRANA** That's what I'd heard.

**KALENDORF** And where are the others?

**SEER** Alby Brook. You must listen to me.

**ALBY** Where did you get those pickled onions?

**SEER** Ssssh. Listen, and all will become clear.  
**ALBY** Okay... okay, I'll listen.  
**SEER** You wish your friends to hear also?  
**KALENDORF** He does.  
*Pause.*  
**ALBY** Yeah. Why not...  
**SEER** Then sit. All of you.  
*Shuffles and scuffs as they all sit on rock.*  
**SEER** I remember what it was like before the Daleks came to Vega VI.  
**ALBY** You do?  
**SEER** In my mind's eye... the air was always fresh, the suns were always high in the sky. The water in the Marsh Lakes... always a sparkling blue. Hmm, that's the way I remember it.<sup>10</sup>  
**ALBY** You remember?  
**SEER** I can still taste that air. Still taste it. Never tasted anything like it since... But the girl, the girl, yes... She was only interested in the rocks (*chuckles*)... her precious minerals.  
*Crossfade into audio montage of narration from the first three episodes.*  
*Crossfade to:*  
**SEER/SUZ** But, Alby, I did love you. Do love you. No matter how much I've tried to deny it, to be tough... ruthless. Underneath it all, I've always felt that you were... with me somehow. That girl on Guria told me about you, that you'd said you loved me and were prepared to die finding me. She said I would find a way to be with you forever. And I have found that way, my love. Here I am.  
**ALBY** Suz...? I don't understand.  
**SEER** I came to see the Seers. (*Chuckles*)  
**KALENDORF** (*Remembering, to himself*) When she left me at the lakes.  
**SEER** That's right, Karl.  
**KALENDORF** Only Suz ever called me that. I used to tell her not to.  
**SEER** I know. I remember.  
**ALBY** I still don't understand.  
**MIRANA** Sorcerers... Are you sorcerers?  
*SEER chuckles.*  
**MIRANA** Did you know they say you can bring the dead back to life?  
**SEER** Is that what they're saying about us now? Hmm... Flattering, in a nice sort of way.<sup>11</sup>  
**ALBY** (*A little impatient*) Please, will you just *explain*? Please?  
**SEER** A permanent link was formed between Susan Mendes and me.  
**KALENDORF** Permanent?  
**SEER** When Suz came here, she was anxious that those she cared for should one day know of what was about to happen to her.  
*Crossfade to:*

### 12. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern. (The Past)

**SUZ** You see... (*Sighs*) It's difficult to explain - I've come to believe that these Dalek creatures I told you about are... Well, I don't think they've been telling me the whole truth. And I'm worried that if I

find out what they're really up to *after* I leave you... then my friends will never find out – and... and it's vital that they do. Do you understand?

**SEER** Susan... I have no understanding or wish to know of affairs beyond these mountains. Our people learnt long, long ago that the universe is a chaotic place, where one life, one race, one planet means nothing. Where attempts to control the flow of history always ultimately fail.

**SUZ** Well... Following that line of thinking, that means the *Daleks* will ultimately fail. But I rather want that to happen sooner and not... well, *ultimately*.

**SEER** I understand your concern. But you needn't worry. When you link with a Seer of Yaldos –

**SUZ** 'Link'?

**SEER** Yes. Part of my mind will not only *become* your past and present... The connection between us will last as long as you remain on Yaldos.

**SUZ** I see.

**SEER** Will that suffice?

**SUZ** (Warmly) Yes. Yes, it will. Thank you.

*FX: the sound of a jar being placed on stone.*

**SUZ** And will you take these.

**SEER** What are they?

**SUZ** They're for Alby. If he ever finds you.

*Music cue. Crossfade to:*

### 13. Int. Yaldos. Dalek Control.

*Recap from previous episode...*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The Emperor of the Daleks will now speak to you.

**SUZ** The Emperor...? Why?

*Hyperlink signal readjusts.*

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Susan Mendes.

**SUZ** (*Afraid*) You... you are the Emperor?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) I am.

**SUZ** You've never spoken to me before. Why are you speaking to me now?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Because you have reached the end of your long journey.

*(New section...)*

**SUZ** Journey? You mean you're not going to send me to any other planets? You've finished with me now?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) That decision is yours. But your journey has been inside your own mind... inside your conscience.

**SUZ** I don't know what you're talking about.

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Do not resist! Why have you helped the Daleks?

**SUZ** You know why. Because you threatened to kill me if I didn't.

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) The survival instinct?

**SUZ** Yes.

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) But we have learnt that the Human Factor is infinitely more sophisticated than the survival instinct. Our history tells

us that despite our superior might, the complexity of human thought and emotional instincts is able to defeat us.

**SUZ** That's very big of you to say so.

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Susan Mendes... Are you the one who will defeat us?

**SUZ** Why would I risk you killing me?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Because you have betrayed Humanity.

*Pause.*

**SUZ** Well... It's too late to do anything about that now, isn't it?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) To achieve greatness, human beings often feel it is necessary to make sacrifices. Will you make the ultimate sacrifice, Susan Mendes?

*Pause. Music cue.*

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) I will not force you to answer. But know this, any treachery you plan against us is insignificant in the face of the infinite possibilities the Daleks will soon have at their disposal.

**SUZ** Infinite?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Do you know of Project Infinity?

**SUZ** No. I've never heard of it. What is it?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) That is of no importance to you now. But the Earth Alliance fear that you know of Project Infinity, and that you would betray its secrets to us.

**SUZ** So it's something to do with the Earth Alliance? What? (*Pause*) Why don't you answer?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) We have known of Project Infinity for centuries.<sup>12</sup>

**SUZ** For centuries? How?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) Do you know of the Kar-Charrat Library?

**SUZ** Er... no.

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) It is of no consequence. The time draws near for your broadcast.

**SUZ** So you still trust me?

**EMPEROR** (*Distort*) You must do what you must do. Empires will rise and fall. It is the nature of history. Go, do as you will. But before you strike at us, the Daleks will have already defeated you.

#### 14. Int. Yaldos. Dalek Control. Corridor.

**NARRATOR** I didn't know what the Emperor meant. I didn't care. I just knew what I had to do. They were taking me to Central Square in Yaldos City. I would make my speech in front of an audience of thousands... and that speech would be simultaneously broadcast to billions of others across the galaxy.

*Door opens. Footsteps of SUZ.*

**DALEK** Move! The time grows near.

**SUZ** All right! Stop pushing.

*Door opens.*

**KALENDORF** (*Approaching*) Suz! Suz, what's going on?

**DALEK 1** Silence!

**KALENDORF** I was in the transmission centre when a Dalek patrol arrived. They're taking me to the outer zone production plants. They said you'd ordered it.

**SUZ** That's right, Karl.  
**KALENDORF** But -  
**SUZ** (*Firm*) But *what*, Karl?  
**KALENDORF** I thought we'd agreed -  
**SUZ** Take him to the outer zone. Obey my orders.  
**DALEKS** We obey the Angel of Mercy.  
**KALENDORF** Suz, don't do this. I'm begging you, don't - !  
*SUZ cries out as KALENDORF grabs her.*  
**DALEK** Release her!  
*Crossfade to telepathic background.*  
**KALENDORF** (*Telepathy*) Suz! Please, you must let me deliver the message. You'll be killed if you don't let -  
**SUZ** (*Telepathy*) I know, Karl. Don't forget me.  
**KALENDORF** (*Telepathy*) Suz...  
**SUZ** (*Telepathy*) Goodbye, Karl.  
*Crossfade back to reality.*  
**SUZ** (*Shaking him off*) Get off me!! Take him away! If he disobeys, kill him. Do you understand?  
**DALEK 1** Understood.  
**KALENDORF** Suz? You - <sup>13</sup>  
**DALEK** Silence or you will be exterminated.  
*Door opens.*

## 15. Ext. Yaldos. Central Square.

**NARRATOR** Did you understand, Karl? I hope you do.  
*The rumble of a crowd full of anticipation.*  
**NARRATOR** I wondered what all those people expected from me. I had always given them hope. And now... I was about to ask many of them to die. I had to set an example.  
**SUZ** Peoples of the galaxy. We all knew this day would come. Perhaps some of you doubted it. I never did. (*Pause*) I have just spoken with the Dalek leaders. They tell me, Earth has been conquered. That the Daleks have won. That the war is over. (*Pause*) We will all live as citizens of the Dalek Empire... forever! That is what they tell me. They want me to say that we slaves should be commended for hastening the Dalek victory. But I only have one thing to say to that. DEATH - TO - THE - **DALEKS!!!**<sup>14</sup>  
*A great roar from the crowd. Music cue. A sustained note.*  
**DALEKS** Silence! Silence! Exterminate! Exterminate!<sup>15</sup>  
**NARRATOR** The thousands immediately surged towards me. Barriers crashed to the ground. Dalek guards were overpowered, submerged beneath a sea of screaming slaves.  
*Alarmed squeals of Daleks. Explosions. Crashing of barriers etc.*<sup>16</sup>  
**NARRATOR** It had begun. And I hoped... I *knew* that on a thousand other worlds, the same was happening. Dalek armouries raided, ships captured, secret plans put into immediate operation... a rebellion on the move... years in the making. My two Dalek guards turned to me. One was suddenly overpowered as the front row of the crowd crashed into it.  
*Cry of Dalek and slaves crying out in triumph.*  
**NARRATOR** But they could not reach the other Dalek in time. I turned to face it. Cold light from its eye. Point blank. Burning bright.



**DALEK**

*Exterminate!!!*

*Dalek gun fires. SUZ screams. Scream echoes through sustained note of music. Music fades. The scream's echo slowly fades. Crossfade to:*

## 16. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**ALBY** (Contained) Thank you. I... I... appreciate you... Er...?

**SEER** What is it, Alby?

**ALBY** They... Well, Kalendorf tells me, they never found her body.

**SEER** I see.

**KALENDORF** (To the SEER) There was a lot of fighting... A lot of... Much of the city square was flattened when we destroyed Dalek control there.

**ALBY** But there were no... [remains]. There was nothing. When they went through the wreckage, they found nothing. (Pause) Nothing left of her.

**KALENDORF** Alby... I don't understand. Are you really saying that you don't accept that she's dead?

**ALBY** Did you see her die?

**KALENDORF** No... but I can point you in the direction of several hundred people who did.

**ALBY** And why the hell should I believe you? You worked with the Daleks for years! For all I know, you could *still* be working for them! (To the SEER) Is she dead? Can you tell if she's dead?

**SEER** I feel... There is nothing new from her in my mind.

**MIRANA** And does that mean she's dead? Didn't you say that you'd stay linked to her only as long as she was on this planet?

**KALENDORF** Mirana! There's no point -

**ALBY** Well, is that true?

**SEER** Yes. There are many possible reasons why I'm not linked to Suz anymore. She may have left the planet. She may be in a deep coma. She could have - <sup>17</sup>

**KALENDORF** But it's an irrefutable fact that she was blasted at point-blank range by a Dalek! She's dead, Alby! She's dead! Do you think I like that? Do you think that's what I wanted? What I want?

Pause.

**ALBY** (Quietly) No.

**KALENDORF** She died for all of us! She did it because she felt overwhelming guilt - but, by God, the reason why we're all still alive is because she was prepared to give her life!

**ALBY** I know.

**KALENDORF** I wanted it to be me! I wanted her to live. I wanted to be the one who was remembered as the dead hero. And you know why? Because I couldn't bear the guilt either. I still can't. But I know for sure that she's dead, Alby. And we now know the lengths she went to - to ensure that we found out what the Daleks are *really* up to. *That's* what we should be thinking about now. This... Project Infinity. And there's that look on your face again.<sup>18</sup>

**ALBY** What?

**KALENDORF** The same look I saw when we first heard news about that Dalek trace heading for the Lopra System. Come on, Alby. Tell us what you know.

**MIRANA** Alby? (With compassion) It's all right.

**ALBY** (*Morose*) I don't know anything. Do you hear me? I don't know a damned thing. Nobody tells me *anything*. So don't expect me to play the hero. All right? Is that what you were expecting? Eh? You want me to pick up my trusty sword and ride off, side-by-side with my comrade-in-arms, the mighty Kalendorf, Knight of Velyshaa? Eh? Ride off to the Lopra System to find out just why the hell Project Infinity is so damned important for us and for the Daleks? Eh? Well, forget it! Do you think I've waded through this whole *bloody* war just to pick another fight with the Daleks? To start it all off, all over again? Well, forget it! *Forget it!* I did everything I did for one reason. And that reason is dead. (*Starts to sob uncontrollably*) She's dead... Oh God, she's dead.

*ALBY's sobs continue and then subside.*

**KALENDORF** (*Quietly*) Alby... The war isn't over.

**ALBY** (*Through tears*) Just shut up.

**KALENDORF** The Daleks are tricking us – I know it! Don't you see? The Emperor knew what Suz was going to do. But he didn't seem to care. He let her set his shiny, new Dalek Empire ablaze. He just *let* her do it. *Why?*

**ALBY** I don't care.

**KALENDORF** All right, you don't care. She left this message, this legacy for you. But *you* don't care. You don't want it.

**ALBY** Don't try to be clever.

**KALENDORF** (*Quietly*) But it *is* the point, isn't it? She wanted you to know everything she'd been through, so that it would count for something. Isn't that true?

**SEER** It is. And, Alby, you were very... strong in her mind. She wouldn't have wanted you simply to give up.

**MIRANA** But what Suz did *has* counted for something. The Daleks have been defeated.

**KALENDORF** Have they? Alby?

**ALBY** What are you asking me for? How should I know?

**KALENDORF** The Daleks are being defeated because they're not interested in fighting us any more. Why is that? Is it because that one little Dalek ship, or whatever it is, heading for the Lopra System is more important than anything that's happened throughout the entire galaxy?<sup>19</sup>

**ALBY** Oh, God, you don't give up, do you?

**KALENDORF** So just tell me what you know about this Project Infinity!

**ALBY** Nothing!

**KALENDORF** You've just told me it's in the Lopra System. That's not nothing.

**ALBY** All right, it's in the Lopra System – so what?

**KALENDORF** Come on! I don't believe that's all you know! Come on!

**MIRANA** Kalendorf... I don't think he does – <sup>20</sup>

**KALENDORF** Oh wallow in self-pity if you like! If you think it makes you a better person just to waste the rest of your life because the woman you loved is dead, then *you* do *that*. If that makes you feel noble and guiltless, go right ahead. But at least give the rest of the galaxy a chance. Will you? Will you just do us all that one favour before you slouch off back to a bottle to ferment in self-indulgence?

**SEER/SUZ** Alby? *Alby*...?

**ALBY** (*A long intake of breath*) All right, I'll tell you what I know.

**KALENDORF** Good.

**ALBY** But there's not much to tell. And if the Daleks *are* heading for Lopra, it's too late anyway.

**KALENDORF** That's for me to judge.

**MIRANA** What do you know, Alby?

**ALBY** My boss, Tanlee... that's the mysteriously missing Ernst Tanlee, Operational Commander of Earth Alliance Forces, by the way... He sent me on a mission to find out if Suz knew anything about Project Infinity. He said, if she knew anything about it, I was to kill her rather than risk the Daleks finding out.

**KALENDORF** I see. I see...

**ALBY** Oh, wait a minute. You haven't had your money's worth yet, old son. Tanlee said that if Suz had already told the Daleks about Project Infinity, then I might as well kill myself... because that meant it was all over for us.

**MIRANA** For you and Suz?

**ALBY** No... for everyone! For everyone except the Daleks, I suppose. Well, don't you see? Suz didn't tell the Daleks about Project Infinity, but they *already* knew. They're already on their way there... probably there already - So it's all over! Do you see, now? *It's - all - over.* There's no point doing anything any more.

*KALENDORF's footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** (*Starts to move off*) Well, that may be your point of view, but it isn't mine.

**MIRANA** Kalendorf, where are you going?

**KALENDORF** To find Project Infinity. In the Lopra System.

**MIRANA** Why? If what Alby says is true, then -

**KALENDORF** Then what? What would you have me do? Organise another galaxy-wide broadcast? 'Hello everyone, it's all over, time to follow Alby Brook's noble example and get drunk'? Don't you see? This whole invasion of the galaxy has been a massive distraction. Something to divert us from what the Daleks are really doing. And the rebellion? That was something else to keep us all occupied, just in case we noticed a tiny flicker on a space scope screen. The flicker of one Dalek ship up to no good... heading for Project Infinity in the Lopra System.

**MIRANA** You don't know that for sure. There could be hundreds of possible -

**KALENDORF** - possible explanations? Yes, let's just sit around and discuss those. That'd be another distraction the Dalek Emperor would be only too pleased about.

**ALBY** She's right, Kalendorf. You can't be sure -

**KALENDORF** You play the Emperor's game if you like. I'm going to the Lopra System.

**MIRANA** I'm afraid I can't let you do that.

*Gun clicks.*

**ALBY** Mirana, what are you doing?

**KALENDORF** If you want to stop me, you'll have to use that gun.

**MIRANA** That's precisely what I intend to do.

*Gun fires. KALENDORF cries out and falls to the ground. His groans of discomfort and pain continue.*

**ALBY** Mirana, what the hell - ? Oh no.

**MIRANA** There must be no interference in our plan.

**ALBY** Whose plan?

**MIRANA** And now you mu – aaargh! (*Various groans of pain*)  
*A high-pitched psychic effect.*  
**ALBY** What's the matter with you? What's the matter with her?  
*MIRANA screams in pain.*

#### 17. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

*Alarms sound.*

**EMPEROR** Aaaargh!  
**DALEK SUPREME** Emergency! Emergency! Psychotropic link with Emperor's cerebral functions is under attack!  
**EMPEROR** (*Confused*) What is happening? Assist me! Assist me!<sup>21</sup>  
*Crossfade to:*

#### 18. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**MIRANA** Assist me! Assist me! (*Her cries of confusion and pain continue throughout the scene*)  
**SEER** (*In pain*) Alby! Alby, quickly... Disarm her!  
**ALBY** Wh – what's going on?  
*Gun fires.*  
**MIRANA** Stay back! Do... do not... Do not approach me!!!  
*Gun fires again.*  
**SEER** I am holding her mind in mine. I don't know how long I can... quickly, take her gun!  
*Another shot.*  
**ALBY** Argh! You must be joking... I can't get near her.  
**MIRANA** Stay back!!!  
*Crossfade to:*

#### 19. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

**EMPEROR** Stay back!!!  
**DALEK** Source of psychotropic interference detected.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Identify!  
**DALEK** Readings indicate the presence of a highly concentrated psychic energy beam.  
**EMPEROR** Aaargh!  
*Crossfade to:*

#### 20. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**MIRANA** Aaaargh!  
**ALBY** Kalendorf! Kalendorf!  
**KALENDORF** (*Badly injured, in pain*) Alby... argh! What's happened to Mirana?  
**ALBY** I don't know. She seems to be having some sort of fit.  
**SEER** Her mind is linked to the mind of another.  
**ALBY** *What?!*  
**SEER** Her mind is... is...  
**MIRANA** (*Struggling*) Psychic energy beam emanating from...  
*Crossfade to:*

## 21. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

**EMPEROR** ...Seer of Yaldos.

**DALEK** Seers of Yaldos. Ancient inhabitants of planet Yaldos. Possessing highly developed psychic abilities.

**EMPEROR** Increase energy supply to my cerebral functions. The Seer must...

*Crossfade to:*

## 22. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**MIRANA** ...be exterminated!

**ALBY** Exterminated?

**KALENDORF** (*Struggling*) It's... the Daleks.<sup>22</sup>

**ALBY** The Daleks?

**KALENDORF** She's working for the Daleks, she must be.

**SEER** (*In pain*) Yes! Daleks... she's linked to... a Dalek mind. Something implanted in her brain.

**ALBY** How the hell did they manage that?

**KALENDORF** (*Bitter*) The same way they manage everything - by outwitting us.

**MIRANA** (*Stronger*) I am the Emperor of the Daleks. You will all be exterminated.

**ALBY** The Emperor? Oh, God!<sup>23</sup>

**SEER** I can't... can't maintain... Argh. She's becoming too powerful for me. My mind is weakening.<sup>24</sup>

**KALENDORF** Alby, quickly - move me closer to the Seer. I must help her.

**ALBY** Kalendorf, you're bleeding to death! For God's sake just -

**KALENDORF** Alby! Just apply pressure to my wound and - and help me! Argh!

*Crossfade to:*

## 23. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

*Energy hum rising.*

**DALEK** Energy supply to Emperor's cerebral functions now increasing.

**DALEK 1** Data indicates Emperor will regain full control over agent Mirana's mind in 10 rels.

**DALEK SUPREME** Excellent! Increase energy flow! Increase!!!

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*Energy hum rises faster. Crossfade to:*

## 24. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**KALENDORF** Seer! Give me your hand!

*Slap of hands meeting.*

**SEER** (*Weakening*) Help... help me...

**MIRANA** You cannot resist my power. Your minds will be destroyed.

**KALENDORF** (*Vicious*) We'll see about... *that!!!*

*Psychic blast.*

## 25. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

*Explosion.*

**EMPEROR** AAAaaargh!!!

**DALEK** Alert! Alert! Psionic energy burst has damaged cerebral receptors! Psychotropic link overload imminent!

**DALEK SUPREME** The overload must be contained immediately.

**DALEK** I obey.

*Controls operate. Negative bleeps.*

**DALEK 1** The Emperor's cerebral receptor controls are non-operational. The overload cannot be contained.

**EMPEROR** Aaaaargh!!!

*Crossfade to:*

## 26. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

**MIRANA** Aaargh!

**KALENDORF** and **SEER** *gasp in relief.*

**ALBY** Kalendorf! Kalendorf, I think you've done it.

**SEER** *(Gasps. Very weak now)* My... mind is free.

**KALENDORF** *(Recovering)* That gave it something to think about.

**MIRANA** No! No! Assist me! *Assist me!!! (Screams continue)*

**KALENDORF** If the Emperor doesn't disconnect from her mind now... he'll be destroyed.

**ALBY** What about her? What about Mirana?

**MIRANA** Aaaaargh!!!

## 27. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

**EMPEROR** Aaaargh!

**DALEK SUPREME** Disconnect link! Disconnect immediately or the Emperor's mind will be destroyed!!!

*Explosion. Energy hum drops immediately.*

**EMPEROR** *(A final gasp)*

**DALEK** Psychotropic link with agent Mirana has been disconnected.

**DALEK 1** Emperor's cerebral functions returning to normal levels.

**EMPEROR** We have lost her!!!

## 28. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

*KALENDORF's exhausted breathing.*

**ALBY** I'm going to get back to my skimmer. You need an emergency medical team up here, fast.

**KALENDORF** *(In extreme pain)* No, wait...

**ALBY** What?

**KALENDORF** Just... argh... Check on Mirana first.

**ALBY** Are you sure it's safe to touch - ?

**KALENDORF** Do it!

**ALBY** *(Moving off)* Okay, okay... I'm doing it.

**SEER** *(Exhausted)* Kalendorf... thank you for saving me.

**KALENDORF** *(Through pain)* It's lucky I did, isn't it? Since you're the last of your people.

**SEER** You saw that in my mind?

**KALENDORF** Yes, I did. But that's not all I saw. (*Aloud*) How is she, Alby?

**ALBY** (*Distant*) Still alive... but out cold. (*He approaches*) Don't know why you're so concerned about a Roboman anyway... the process isn't reversible, you know. Huh, I should've trusted my instincts about her. I've never been a big fan of the police -

**KALENDORF** She isn't a Roboman.

**ALBY** What do you mean? She's controlled by the Daleks. She has an implant in her head. What else *could* she be?

**KALENDORF** Something very different.

**SEER** She was linked directly to the Emperor.

**ALBY** The...? So?

**KALENDORF** Ever wondered what it might be to look into the mind of your enemy?

**ALBY** But - What? Do you mean that's what you just did? You two?

**SEER** For a moment, yes.

**KALENDORF** Just a glimpse. But what a glimpse it was. There was a clear link from the Emperor's mind to a Dalek command network. And there was something else... (*with difficulty*) I can't... can't quite...<sup>25</sup>

**SEER** Infinity.

**KALENDORF** Infinity, yes.

**ALBY** (*Realising*) Project Infinity. That's why you wanted to know if Mirana was still alive. You think you can find out about Project Infinity through her mind... through her contact with the Dalek Emperor's mind. Don't you?

**KALENDORF** (*To SEER*) Is it possible?

**SEER** Mirana's mind was not merely controlled by the Emperor. It had been... interacting, sharing its alien thoughts for many years. The device in her brain is likely to have retained that information.

**KALENDORF** Don't you think it sounds like a little piece of hope, Alby? Almost as if it might not be 'all over' for us? Hm?

**ALBY** I'm going to call for that medical team.

**KALENDORF** Argh... I'd tell them to hurry if I were you. Argh.

**ALBY** (*Moving off*) Right. I will.

**KALENDORF** Oh, and Alby!

**ALBY** (*Distant*) What?

**KALENDORF** Is a little piece of hope grounds enough for you to pick up your trusty sword and ride off, side-by-side with your comrade-in-arms, the mighty Kalendorf, Knight of Velyshaa - ?

**ALBY** - to the Lopra System?

**KALENDORF** - to find out just why the hell Project Infinity is so damned important for us and for the Daleks?

**ALBY** Do you ever give up?

**KALENDORF** Never.

**29. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.**<sup>26</sup>

*Sharp negative bleeps from mind-link controls.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Psychotropic link with humanoid agent cannot be re-established. No response to destruct signals.

**EMPEROR** Has the humanoid female survived?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Readings indicate her mind was conscious when the psychotropic link was severed.  
**EMPEROR** She was linked to my mental processes and through me to the Dalek Command net. The humans may now gain knowledge of our plan if they are able to access the implant in her brain. We must set a direct course for Lopra Minor.  
**DALEK SUPREME** If we deviate from current trajectory, this vessel will be in range of Earth Alliance deep-space scanners for a sustained period. We will be detected.  
**EMPEROR** That is of no consequence now. Speed is of the essence.  
*Comms bleep.*  
**EMPEROR** Report on advance attack force status.  
**DALEK 1** (*Distort*) Advance attack force coded signals indicate they are on final approach to planet Lopra Minor.  
**EMPEROR** Excellent!!!

### 30. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.<sup>27</sup>

**ESPEELIUS** My calculations are complete. The Infinity Scan is set to automatic activation the moment alignment occurs.  
**TANLEE** So when *will* this spacio-temporal anomaly next be in the correct alignment, Espeelius?  
**ESPEELIUS** We call it a dimensional fissure... Not for three point five eight solar days.  
**TANLEE** And exactly how long is a solar day in the Lopra System? It doesn't matter. I'll take your word for it.  
**ESPEELIUS** Now... if you'll forgive me, I must rest.  
**TANLEE** Well, under normal circumstances I -  
*Comms bleep.*  
**TANLEE** Er, excuse me for a moment. Tanlee? (*Pause*) I understand.  
**ESPEELIUS** What is it? Who was that?  
**TANLEE** One of my men. As I was saying, under normal circumstances, I would allow you to rest.  
**ESPEELIUS** 'Allow'?  
**TANLEE** But unfortunately for you, these are far from normal circumstances.  
**ESPEELIUS** I don't understand.  
**TANLEE** Well, under normal circumstances, if, say, a Dalek attack force were to land on this planet... even a modest Dalek attack force, your security alarms would make enough noise to wake the dead, wouldn't they?  
**ESPEELIUS** What are you saying?  
**TANLEE** I had my men deactivate your security systems.  
**ESPEELIUS** Wh - Why did you do that?  
**TANLEE** You're about to find out, my dear old friend.  
**ESPEELIUS** Tanlee, what are you talking about? This is no time for childish games. The events that are about to unfold here -  
**TANLEE** Are not quite the events you expected, I'm afraid.  
*Door opens.*  
**ESPEELIUS** My God... Tanlee... What have you...? You've betrayed -



**DALEK** Do not move! This facility is now under Dalek control. Resist and you will be exterminated.

### 31. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Sickbay.

*MIRANA awakens with a start.*

**JOHNSTONE** How are you feeling?

**MIRANA** Er... confused. Disoriented.

**JOHNSTONE** Anything else?

**MIRANA** Anything... anything *else*? I don't know how I got here. Where is here, by the way? (*Pause*) You don't wanna tell me?

**JOHNSTONE** I'm Dr Johnstone. I'm a life sciences specialist from Earth.

**MIRANA** Earth?

**JOHNSTONE** Where are *you* from?

**MIRANA** Oh... er... I was born on a freighter passing through Orion's belt. So... I never really know how to answer that question.<sup>28</sup>

**JOHNSTONE** I see.

**MIRANA** My parents were from the Gal-sec colony.

**JOHNSTONE** Hmm.

**MIRANA** Is that the answer you wanted?

**JOHNSTONE** Well, at least you didn't say you were from Skaro.

**MIRANA** Skaro?

**JOHNSTONE** It's the home planet of the Daleks.

**MIRANA** Is *that* why there are armed guards at the door... You think I'm working for the Daleks?

**JOHNSTONE** You have been... for several years now. Through no fault of your own, admittedly – but we're not quite sure how free your mind is yet.

**MIRANA** How free my mind...? What are you – ?

**JOHNSTONE** You don't remember? You don't remember any of it?

**MIRANA** (*With difficulty*) Well... er...

**JOHNSTONE** Fascinating.

**MIRANA** (*Suddenly*) Oh my God.

**JOHNSTONE** Ah, you do, then?

**MIRANA** Only... only... pieces. I can't quite... can't quite...<sup>29</sup>

**JOHNSTONE** You're lucky you can think at all after what you've been through. You've been in a coma for nearly five months. Just relax.

**MIRANA** Relax?! Ow, my head hurts. Argh! Bandages? Why have you – ? Oh my God. You've been rooting around in my head, haven't you?

**JOHNSTONE** I'm afraid so.

*Door opens.*

**KALENDORF** Well, what have you discovered?

**MIRANA** Kalendorf?

**JOHNSTONE** So you remember *him*?

**MIRANA** Yes, but... (*A noise of frustration*) I can't think straight.

**JOHNSTONE** She's confused.

**KALENDORF** And that's all you've found out? I could have guessed that, doctor. I was hoping for something a little more inspiring; especially since we're just about to enter the Lopra System and badly need to know exactly what we're letting ourselves in for.

**MIRANA** About to enter...? We're on a ship?

**KALENDORF** (To *JOHNSTONE*) You're sure there's no longer any link between her and the Dalek Emperor?

**JOHNSTONE** Oh, positive. Virtually.

**KALENDORF** Virtually? You did extract the device from her brain, I take it?

**JOHNSTONE** Er, no... We couldn't. Not without killing her.

**MIRANA** Er... excuse me?

**KALENDORF** So there *is* still a risk?

**JOHNSTONE** No, we burnt out all the transceivers.

**KALENDORF** Are you certain?

**JOHNSTONE** Well... pretty certain. It *is* alien technology, you know.

**KALENDORF** So how are we going to access any useful data if you've left the device in her brain?

**JOHNSTONE** We identified the memory circuits and cracked their entry codes... more or less. With the right electronic stimulus, she'll tell us all she knows.

**MIRANA** She? You mean me?

**KALENDORF** Yes. And in answer to your question, you are onboard the Battle Cruiser *Courageous* – and we're about to enter the Lopra System –

**MIRANA** I heard that part –

**KALENDORF** – so there's no time for niceties. Shall we begin, Dr Johnstone?

**JOHNSTONE** Be my guest.

**KALENDORF** How do we go about this?

**MIRANA** Go about what?

**JOHNSTONE** Ask her the questions and I'll activate the memory circuits of the Dalek device in her brain from this panel. Theoretically, she should just tell us the answers.

**KALENDORF** Theoretically?

**MIRANA** I'll try not to disappoint you.

**KALENDORF** All right... What is Project Infinity?

*Bleeps of Johnstone's equipment. Pause.*

**KALENDORF** Well? Doctor, is that thing working?

**JOHNSTONE** It should be. Mirana, will you answer the question, please?

**MIRANA** I... can't...

**KALENDORF** Can't or won't?

**MIRANA** I... I just don't know the answer.

*An alarm sounds.*

**KALENDORF** Ah...

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Kalendorf to bridge, what's happening, Alby?

### **32. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Bridge.**

*Alarm still sounding. Chatter of activity in the background.*

**ALBY** Kalendorf, we've just entered the Lopra System and the space scope has detected Dalek readings on the third planet... er... Lopra Minor.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) What sort of readings?

**ALBY** Heavily shielded by delta rays, but at this close range, our scanners are picking up chatter on a localised command net.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) What are they saying?  
**ALBY** It's coded, and we can't crack it. Not yet, anyway.  
**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Right, this is it. All weapons to full power.  
**ALBY** Already done. And I've ordered our assault units to board their landing craft. Should be ready for launch in a couple of minutes. Do we go straight in?  
**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) We do.

### 33. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Sickbay.

**MIRANA** Lopra Minor.  
**KALENDORF** What?  
**JOHNSTONE** You recognise that?  
**MIRANA** Yes.  
**KALENDORF** What about it?  
**MIRANA** The Daleks are there.  
**KALENDORF** (*Irritated*) I know that. You just *heard* that.  
**MIRANA** Project Infinity is there.  
**KALENDORF** That's hardly an inspired conclusion to reach - <sup>30</sup>  
**MIRANA** Project Infinity is there. 'It must be protected at all costs until the Imperial Command Ship arrives. Attack units to be deployed on jungle perimeter. Do not open fire until the Earth Alliance troops have landed.'  
**KALENDORF** What's she talking about? What's happening?  
**JOHNSTONE** I... I don't... I think she's picking up Dalek transmissions.  
**KALENDORF** I thought you deactivated the transceivers in her implant.  
**JOHNSTONE** I thought I had -  
**MIRANA** 'Secure all exits. Continue augmentation of the systems.'  
**KALENDORF** Do they know you're listening to them?  
**MIRANA** 'Firepower to maximum. Special Weapons units will move in on attack grid pattern logril nine zero four - '  
**KALENDORF** Mirana, listen to me!!!  
**MIRANA** What?  
**KALENDORF** Do they know - ?  
**MIRANA** No. They don't know I can hear them. Why can I hear them? Oh yes, the implant. But they know you're here.  
**JOHNSTONE** We gathered that.  
**KALENDORF** What about Project Infinity?  
**MIRANA** 'Installation of Dalek augmentation devices continues. Augmentation must be complete for arrival of Imperial Command Ship.'  
**KALENDORF** (*Thinking*) Imperial Command... that sounds bad... Er... What is Project Infinity?  
**MIRANA** What is...?  
*Pause.*  
**KALENDORF** (*Close*) What is it?  
**MIRANA** It... It is...  
*Bleeping.*  
**JOHNSTONE** That's it!  
**KALENDORF** What's it?  
**JOHNSTONE** The memory cells of the implant have activated. I sent a stimulus signal again. I'm getting a response.  
*Another bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Mirana?

*Pause.*

**MIRANA** Project Infinity... 'We will use it to gain total control of...' Of the entire universe.

**KALENDORF** The universe? And we thought they just wanted our galaxy.<sup>31</sup>

#### **34. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.**

**DALEK 1** Infinity Scan augmentation procedure now at 35 percent.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Increase augmentation rate immediately!

**DALEK 1** All processes are running at maximum efficiency.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Understood. The augmentation is vital to our plan. These systems must be defended at all costs.

**DALEK 2** Rangerscopes confirm that the approaching Earth Alliance craft is carrying an assault force superior in number and firepower to the Dalek force here on Lopra Minor.

**DALEK COMMANDER** But we possess the element of surprise.

*Door opens.*

**DALEK COMMANDER** Report!<sup>32</sup>

**TANLEE** All facility personnel have been secured in the lower storage areas.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Understood. You will proceed as ordered.

**TANLEE** I obey.

*Alert signal.*

**DALEK 2** Rangerscope readings indicate the Earth Alliance craft is now entering planetary orbit. Its landing craft are now penetrating Lopra Minor atmosphere.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Battle alert! Battle alert! All units to defence positions immediately!

#### **35. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Sickbay.<sup>33</sup>**

**MIRANA** ...'All units to defence positions immediately!'

**ALBY** (*Distort*) Our landing craft are entering Lopra Minor atmosphere now.

**KALENDORF** We know, Alby. The Daleks have just told us.

**ALBY** (*Distort*) Are we sure we can trust her?

**JOHNSTONE** The information is only travelling one way, I'm sure of it.

**KALENDORF** I think we have to, Alby. She's the only advantage we've got.

**ALBY** (*Distort. Laughs*) I don't suppose she can give us precise co-ordinates for every Dalek position! That'd be nice!

**MIRANA** (*Realising*) Yes... Yes, I can!

**ALBY** (*Distort*) What?

**KALENDORF** She says 'yes she can'.

**ALBY** (*Distort*) I heard.

**KALENDORF** (*Surprised*) How can you do that?

**MIRANA** The Daleks are constantly transmitting their co-ordinates through their command net, so that the squad commander can keep updating its orders. It's kind of like a very fast game of chess.

**KALENDORF** Between the Dalek commander and us.

**MIRANA** Yes.

**KALENDORF** Doctor, can you link Mirana up to our tactical computer and beam her information direct to our assault force?

**JOHNSTONE** I can try.

**ALBY** (*Distort*) All the assault force guys are patched in to the tactical computers on board each of the landing craft. They've all got heads-up displays on their visors.

**KALENDORF** And we can supply data direct to each tactical computer.

**MIRANA** And if you create a direct tap from my implant to our tactical computer... It should work.

**JOHNSTONE** It should... It should. Right... er...

*Various beeps and electronic buzzes as JOHNSTONE starts work.*

**KALENDORF** Alby, tell the assault force to sit tight at ten thousand metres altitude and wait for further orders. I'm on my way to the bridge. Johnstone, keep me informed. And Mirana...

**MIRANA** Thank you?

**KALENDORF** Yes.

**MIRANA** It's the least I can do...

### 36. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Bridge.

**ZERO 2** (*Distort*) Landing craft Zero 2 reporting steady at ten thousand metres. Do you want us to circle?<sup>34</sup>

**ALBY** Confirmed, Zero 2. We have you at 15 degrees NorWest of Project Infinity base, at a distance of... (*reading it off*) 5 point 6 kilometres.<sup>35</sup>

**ZERO 2** (*Distort*) Acknowledged.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) This is Zero 1. We have visual contact with Zero 2. We are now circling.

**ALBY** Steady as you go.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) Weather conditions are good. No problems with visibility.

**ALBY** Acknowledged, Zero 1. Zeros 3 and 4, continue to hold your positions 15 degrees NorEast of the base.

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) Zero 3 acknowledging.

**ZERO 4** (*Distort*) Zero 4 acknowledging.

**ALBY** Mr Herrick, let's have an aerial scan of the area on the main screen, please.

*Screen FX.*

**HERRICK** Onscreen, now, sir.

**ALBY** Sir? This is reminding me of my days in the forces... (*To himself*) Except nobody ever called me sir, then.

*Door opens.*

**KALENDORF** (*Approaching*) Are they all in position, Alby?

**ALBY** They're ready and waiting.

**HERRICK** Sir, we're picking up Dalek activity in and around the base, but delta-ray interference is distorting the signals. We can't get any precise fixes on Dalek positions.

**KALENDORF** Hopefully, that's not going to matter. Kalendorf to sickbay.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) Sickbay responding.

**KALENDORF** How's it going, Dr Johnstone?

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) Bear with me, I'm working as fast as I can.<sup>36</sup>

**KALENDORF** Let us know when you make any progress with the link-up, please.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) I will. Out.

*Radio chatter of Zeros continues in background.*

**ALBY** (*Confidentially*) Have we found out anything about Project Infinity?

**KALENDORF** Only that the Daleks intend to use it to conquer the entire universe.

**ALBY** I wonder what *the Earth Alliance* were going to use it for... So, what do we do if and when we get to it?<sup>37</sup>

**KALENDORF** I don't know. Destroy it?

**ALBY** Tanlee said it was our last hope of defeating the Daleks. Might be a bit silly to blow it up.

**KALENDORF** It might be a good deal more than silly to leave it hanging around for the Daleks to use. But let's deal with one problem at a time, shall we?

*A buzzing alarm.*

**KALENDORF** What's that?

**ALBY** Another problem... I think. Mr Herrick?<sup>38</sup>

**HERRICK** We've picked up a large ship on the outer galactic edge of the Lopra System. Drive systems suggest -

**KALENDORF** - a Dalek ship?

**HERRICK** Yes, sir.

**KALENDORF** The Imperial Command Ship.

**ALBY** The Emperor?

**KALENDORF** Who else?

**ALBY** (*Whistles*) They really mean business.

**KALENDORF** What's its course and speed?

**HERRICK** On current course and speed, it'll be with us in a couple of hours, sir.

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Johnstone, hurry up with that computer link. We have important company.

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) I know. It *is* the Emperor. Send your landing craft in. I'm ready.

**HERRICK** (*Distort*) Link-up to tactical computer... complete.

*Activation signal.*

**ALBY** Oh, that is beautiful. Look at the screen. All the Dalek positions around the base are showing up.<sup>39</sup>

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** *Courageous* to landing craft, confirm Dalek positions on your tactical displays.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) Zero 1 confirming.

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) Zero 3 confirming.

**ZERO 2** (*Distort*) Zero 2... we've got them.

**ZERO 4** (*Distort*) This is Zero 4... we can see them.

**KALENDORF** Commence attack run. See how many Daleks you can hit from the air before making planetfall.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) Zero 1 acknowledged. All landing craft arm DX missiles.

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) Zero 3 acknowledged.

**ZERO 4** (*Distort*) Zero 4... arming missiles.

**ZERO 2** (Distort) Zero 2 confirmed. All missiles armed.  
**ALBY** The Dalek position markers are moving.  
**KALENDORF** Mirana, what are they doing?  
**MIRANA** (Distort) They've spotted the landing craft. 'Special Weapons Daleks to aerial defence mode.'

### 37. Ext. Lopra Minor. Jungle.

*Dalek hover engines rising in pitch.*

**SPECIAL WEAPONS DALEK** Special Weapons Daleks obey! Climbing to attack altitude. Firing now.<sup>40</sup>  
*Several Special Weapons Dalek blasts. A whoosh of a landing craft shooting past and an explosion.*

### 38. Int. Battle Cruiser Courageous. Bridge.

*A distorted explosion.*

**ZERO 2** (Distort) This is Zero 2, we are hit. Request covering fire. Making emergency landing.

**ZERO 3** (Distort) Covering fire! Now firing.  
*Distorted sound of missiles. Explosions.*

**ALBY** (Tense) Looks like a hit.<sup>41</sup>

**MIRANA** (Distort) Three Special Weapons Daleks destroyed by missiles. 'Rangerscopes now tracking landing trajectory of human craft.'

**KALENDORF** Zero 2! Dalek ground units are moving to intercept you on landing. Zero 2! Respond!!!

**ZERO 2** (Distort) Acknowledged.

**ZERO 1** (Distort) Zeros 3 and 4, continue with attack on airborne Special Weapons Daleks, then make your designated landings. I am moving to support Zero 2. Firing DX missiles at surface targets.

*Distorted FX of missiles firing. Explosions.*

**ALBY** So far... not so bad.<sup>42</sup>

### 39. Int. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.

**DALEK 1** Four Dalek attack units destroyed by airborne fire. Special Weapons Daleks under attack.

**DALEK CMDR** The humans have unexpectedly penetrated our delta-ray shielding. They are able to track our movements. All Daleks, break cover and attack immediately!

### 40. Int. Battle Cruiser Courageous. Bridge.

**ALBY** That's it! We've really upset the hornets' nest now!

**KALENDORF** Zero 1!

**ZERO 1** (Distort) We see them! We see them! Firing now!

### 41. Ext. Lopra Minor. Jungle.

*Jungle atmosphere. Landing craft swoops. Missile fire. Explosions. Daleks cry out.*<sup>43</sup>

**DALEK** Regroup and exterminate! Exterminate!

#### 42. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Bridge.

**ZERO 2** (*Distort. Running*) This is Zero 2, we are on foot and moving towards the base! Fanning out to intercept Dalek forces advancing towards us.

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Zero 2, watch your left flank, an order has just been given to encircle you. The last surviving Special Weapons Dalek is now ordered to make an air attack on you.<sup>44</sup>

**ALBY** There they go! We see them, Mirana!

**ZERO 2** (*Distort*) Open fire!!!

#### 43. Ext. Lopra Minor. Jungle.<sup>45</sup>

*Jungle atmosphere. Handgun fire.*

**DALEK** Under attack! Under attack!  
*Daleks cry out and explode.*

**DALEK 2** Exterminate! Exterminate!  
*Dalek gunfire. Soldiers cry out.*

#### 44. Int. Battle Cruiser *Courageous*. Bridge.

*Muted gunfire etc on distort.*

**ALBY** Come on! Get out of there!

**KALENDORF** It's too late. They're caught in a trap.<sup>46</sup>

**ALBY** Zero 1, take out that Special Weapons Dalek, it's going to finish them off!

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) Targeting now. Firing!  
*Distort missile blast and explosion.*

**ALBY** Got him!!! (*Laughs triumphantly*)

**KALENDORF** (*Grim*) They still don't stand a chance.

**ZERO 2** (*Distort. Screaming*) This is Zero 2! We are surrounded and outnumbered. We're digging in, but –  
*Comms cuts off with a burst of static.*

**HERRICK** We've lost them.

**ZERO 4** (*Distort. Running*) This is Zero 4 with Zero 3, we are on foot and have the base perimeter in sight. Have destroyed four or five sentry Daleks. No casualties. Do they have any big surprises for us?

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) You are clear, Zero 4. Repeat, you are clear. They made a big mistake moving their main force to hit Zero 2.<sup>47</sup>

**KALENDORF** Mirana, the display shows that main Dalek force retreating to the base. Are there new orders?

*Distorted sound of missiles firing and exploding.*

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) This is Zero 1. We are hitting them hard on the retreat!

**KALENDORF** Mirana! What's happening?

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) This is Zero 3. We are forcing entry to the base. Should be through in 3 minutes.

**KALENDORF** Mirana? Are you getting anything?

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Oh my God.

**ALBY** What is it?

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Hostages... They have the base personnel in the lower storage area!



**HERRICK** We're receiving a transmission from the Dalek commander.

**ALBY** If they've got hostages, you know what's coming, don't you?  
**KALENDORF** (*Grim resignation*) Patch it through.

Comms bleep.

**DALEK COMMANDER** (*Distort*) This is the Dalek Commander. If you do not cease your attack, we will begin extermination of Project Infinity personnel.

**ALBY** (*Close*) What do we do?

Pause. Tense music cue builds.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort. Running*) This is Zero 1, we have disembarked and eliminated all Dalek defences and have sustained minimal casualties. Now approaching main entrance to the base on foot.

**DALEK COMMANDER** (*Distort*) We detect that your forces are still advancing. The first hostage will now be exterminated. Observe.

*Distorted sound of Dalek blast and hostage screaming in agony as he dies.*  
Comms bleep.

**KALENDORF** All units... halt your advance.

**ALBY** Zero 3, stop cutting through that door now!

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) What the hell's going on?

**ALBY** The Daleks have got hostages. If you enter the base, they'll kill them all.

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) All units, shut down cutting equipment and stay where you are.

**ZERO 3** (*Distort*) Acknowledged.

**ZERO 4** (*Distort*) Acknowledged.

Pause.

**ALBY** Now what?

*Another distorted Dalek blast and scream. Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** (*Angry*) We've done what you asked! Stop the killing!<sup>48</sup>

**DALEK COMMANDER** (*Distort*) Your forces must now return to your ship, or the exterminations will continue.

*Another distorted Dalek blast and scream.*

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Kalendorf, they mean what they say.

**KALENDORF** I know.

*Another distorted Dalek blast and scream.*

**KALENDORF** How much death can you witness before it becomes meaningless?

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) Listen to me!

**ALBY** Who is that?

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) I am Project Director Espeelius.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Silence!

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) Our lives don't matter. Whoever you are! Listen to me! You must press home your attack! If the Daleks gain control of Project Infinity it will be the end of everything - <sup>49</sup>

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Exterminate!!!

**ESPEELIUS** (*Distort*) Aaaargh!

**DALEK COMMANDER** (*Distort*) Withdraw, or exterminations will continue! Withdraw!

**KALENDORF** All units! Continue the attack!

**ZERO 1** (*Distort*) Acknowledged. All units, continue attack!

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) No! Kalendorf, you can't - !

**KALENDORF** Mr Herrick, steer a course to land the *Courageous* at a safe distance from the base. Take us down. Do it!

**HERRICK** Aye, sir!

*Controls operate. Rumble of engines. Distorted exterminations and repeated chants of 'Exterminate' on the screen.*<sup>50</sup>

**KALENDORF** Shut that off!!!

*Bleep and the sound of gun blasts and screams shuts off. Rumble of engines increases.*

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Just because you're not looking at it, doesn't mean it isn't still happening. I don't know how you –  
*Bleep as MIRANA is cut off.*

**ALBY** Kalendorf, I –

**KALENDORF** (*Quiet, determined*) I can't... hear... anything. I can't hear anything.

*The engine rumble crescendos with big music cue. Hold silence for a moment.*

#### **45. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.**

*Slow fade up. Footsteps of KALENDORF and ALBY.*

**ALBY** They really did fight to the last... Dalek, didn't they?  
*Sound of Dalek metal casing smashing to the ground.*

**ALBY** That's what I call devotion to duty.

**KALENDORF** Blind obedience.

**ALBY** So... Project Infinity! Well... it looks impressive. Maybe a touch damaged during the battle. But what is it supposed to do?

**KALENDORF** (*Subdued*) Let's hope Johnstone can jog Mirana's Dalek implant memory.

**ALBY** Then what?

**KALENDORF** If we can find out how to operate it... and if it's not too damaged, we use Project Infinity against the Daleks.

**ALBY** And if we can't, we destroy it?

**KALENDORF** Yes. Before the Emperor gets here.

**ALBY** Which is in about... 45 minutes' time. Fair enough.

*Door opens. Footsteps enter.*

**KALENDORF** Well, Mr Herrick?

**HERRICK** The base is secured, sir. All Daleks were destroyed in the attack.

**KALENDORF** And the hostages? (*Pause*) I see.

**HERRICK** But we did find *someone* alive, sir. Just now.

**ALBY** Who?

**HERRICK** We're not sure. He was out in the jungle. Apparently seems a bit shaken up. There were some others with him, all killed by Dalek fire.

**ALBY** Where is he?

**HERRICK** He's being brought here now, sir.

*Footsteps approach.*

**TANLEE** (*Groggy*) It's all right... it's all right... I can walk. You don't need to – My God.

**ALBY** (*Gobsmacked*) Tanlee?

**TANLEE** Alby Brook.

**ALBY** What the hell are you doing here?

**TANLEE** I was doing my job. Who's this?

#### 46. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship. Emperor's Chamber.

**EMPEROR** We are now approaching extreme transmateralisation range. You must distract the humans. They must not suspect.

#### 47. Int. Lopra Minor. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.

**TANLEE** Well, well, well... the great and noble Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** You haven't answered Alby's question.

**TANLEE** I was here to oversee the final phase of Project Infinity. When the Daleks attacked, my men and I went into the jungle to put up a fight. But... well, there were too many of them. We got caught in a pretty fierce fire-fight and... To tell you the truth, I'm rather surprised to find myself alive.

**ALBY** You were lucky.

**TANLEE** Is that what they call it. Anyway, where's Espeelius? Has he started yet? Is the dimensional fissure aligned? *(Pause)* Why do I get the feeling you don't know what I'm talking about?

**ALBY** Espeelius is dead. The Daleks killed everyone before we could get here.

**TANLEE** God... It sometimes feels like all this killing is never going to end.

**KALENDORF** Oh, it's far from over yet, by my reckoning, Tanlee. Unless you can activate this thing and destroy the Daleks.

**TANLEE** Destroy... What do you mean?

**KALENDORF** The Dalek Imperial Command ship will arrive here in less than an hour. And we have no meaningful way of stopping them unless *someone* can make Project Infinity work.

**TANLEE** *(Laughs)* How extraordinary.

**ALBY** What's so bleedin' funny, Tanlee?

**TANLEE** You think it's a weapon, don't you? You don't know what Project Infinity is, do you? You came all this way to stop the Daleks getting it - and yet you don't know what it does. What a remarkable devotion to duty. I take it this wasn't your idea, Brook.

**KALENDORF** *(Losing patience)* It was my idea.

**TANLEE** I thought as much -

**KALENDORF** So tell us what Project Infinity is.

**TANLEE** It's no good at stopping Imperial Command Ships, I'm afraid.

**KALENDORF** *(Roar)* Tell us!!!

**TANLEE** Quantum realities. Have you heard about that? An infinite number of possible universes, based on an infinite number of possibilities.<sup>51</sup>

**KALENDORF** I've heard of it.<sup>52</sup>

**ALBY** So have I, actually.

**TANLEE** *(Sarcastic)* Oh, well, that's a relief.

**KALENDORF** *(Warning growl)* Time is running out, Tanlee.

**TANLEE** Well, this was set up after the last Dalek war... centuries ago. They knew the Daleks would try again. And they knew there was a good chance that the Daleks would learn from their mistakes and very

probably succeed this time. So, some of our cleverest people hypothesised... What if there was a parallel, quantum reality, an alternative universe in which we defeated the Daleks for all time? If we could just see into that universe and see how the humans there did it, then we'd know what to do in this universe. We'd have *their* answer for defeating the Daleks.

**ALBY** Sounds a bit like... well, a bit like cheating to me.

**TANLEE** I would've thought that might appeal to you, Brook.

**KALENDORF** How does it work?

**TANLEE** Well, they scoured all of the known galaxy for a weakness in the fabric of space and time. They found it out here. Then they bombarded it for a few centuries... and eventually came up with... this. Do you mind if I activate the main viewer?

*Control bleep. Screen activates.*

**ALBY** Wow.

**KALENDORF** What is it?

**TANLEE** They call it a dimensional fissure. And the theory is that they punch a beam through it, which they call the Infinity Scan.

**ALBY** And with that, they find this alternative universe where the Daleks were totally defeated?

**TANLEE** Well, eventually. But of course, they pick up a lot of useless data on the way. It was going to take them a while to sift through it all. Several years, I expect. And they've already done a preliminary scan. So the hypothesis was sound. Which is a relief.

**ALBY** None of which helps us now. Even if we could get it to work.

**TANLEE** Oh, it'll work all right. As soon as that fissure is aligned, the Infinity Scan is set to fire off automatically. It's powered by veganite, you know.<sup>33</sup>

**ALBY** (*Realising*) Which is why the Daleks attacked the Vega System first. They want to use Project Infinity to find out how to defeat us for all time.

**TANLEE** Perhaps.

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Kalendorf. Who is it?

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) Kalendorf, we've just detected some kind of spatial anomaly just outside the Lopra -

**KALENDORF** I know. We're looking at it. It's a called a 'dimensional fissure' and it's a vital part of Project Infinity.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) You mean you've found out what it does?

**KALENDORF** Yes. And it's no help to us at the moment.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) Oh... well, er... seems it joggled Mirana's implant memory. She's on her way to you - pretty fired up. She says she knows what the Daleks wanted it for.

**KALENDORF** We know that as well.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Distort*) Oh... I... er... I see. So what are we going to do?

**KALENDORF** (*Deciding*) Well... We're going to take off and blow this base to pieces from orbit. That's about all we can do.

**TANLEE** I wouldn't advise it.

**ALBY** Oh yeah? Why's that?

**MIRANA** (*Distant, approaching*) Kalendorf! Kalendorf!

*Footsteps as she arrives, out of breath.*

**MIRANA** I know what the Daleks –  
**ALBY** So do we. Tanlee's just told us.  
**TANLEE** Have I?  
**MIRANA** (*Terrified*) Who are you?  
**KALENDORF** What's the matter, Mirana?  
**TANLEE** My name is Ernst Tanlee, I'm –  
**MIRANA** No!!!  
**ALBY** What is it, Mirana?  
**TANLEE** My dear young lady? I'm sorry if I –  
**MIRANA** Daleks! Daleks! I can hear... *see* Daleks!  
**ALBY** What?!

**MIRANA** In his mind! He's working for them. They're communicating with him. The Emperor! It's just as it was with me!  
**ALBY** But – Tanlee?  
*Gun click.*

**TANLEE** Nobody move! (*Pause*) That's better. And I assure you. I will kill you if you do move.  
**MIRANA** He's told you what the Daleks are going to do?  
**ALBY** Yeah. They were going to find out how to defeat us for all time by tapping into information from another universe.  
*TANLEE starts to laugh.*

**ALBY** Yeah, you *would* find it funny, wouldn't you?  
**MIRANA** But that's not what they're going to do.  
**TANLEE** Quite right, my dear. You tell them. Why not?  
**KALENDORF** Well, Mirana?  
**MIRANA** The veganite. You must know about the veganite. The Emperor is bringing a massive amount of veganite in its ship. They're going to increase the power of the Infinity Scan to an incredible level.  
*Pause.*

**ALBY** So?  
**MIRANA** Don't you understand? They're not just going to *scan* other realities. They're going to find the one they want, then create a *gateway* between the two realities. They're going to bring the Daleks from that reality into this one. Daleks from a universe where they have found the perfect way to become... to become –

**TANLEE** Totally invincible, yes. Thank you, my dear.  
**KALENDORF** You can't kill all of us at once with that gun. Not if we rush you.  
**TANLEE** Perhaps. But which of you will make the sacrifice first? I expect it will be you, Kalendorf... since you missed your opportunity last time. *But before you do...*

**KALENDORF** What?  
*Pause.*

**ALBY** You know, I never liked you, Tanlee. Even when you weren't working for the Daleks. (*Pause*) What are you waiting for?  
**TANLEE** Hm? What makes you think I'm waiting.  
**MIRANA** Oh no... Oh no...  
**KALENDORF** What is it, Mirana?  
**MIRANA** It's too late.  
**TANLEE** Yes. I'm afraid it is.  
*Several transmat FX as Daleks materialise.*  
**KALENDORF** Daleks!

**MIRANA** The Emperor's ship... It's just entered transmat range.  
**DALEK** You are our prisoners. If you attempt to escape, you will be exterminated.  
**KALENDORF** Why don't you just exterminate us now?  
**ALBY** Hey, speak for yourself.  
**DALEK** You are of superior intellect. You will be robotised.  
**TANLEE** Yes. Even you, Brook. Hard to believe, I know.  
**DALEK** You will go with them.  
**TANLEE** I obey.  
**DALEK** Assault party to Imperial Command. Kalendorf, Brook and agent Mirana are being transmateralised for robotisation as ordered.

#### 48. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship. Emperor's Chamber.

**DALEK** (*Distort, continued form previous scene*) Requesting transmat of full attack force to exterminate Earth Alliance troops on Lopra Minor.  
**DALEK SUPREME** They will be dispatched immediately. Veganite energy will be beamed directly from this ship to the Infinity Scan at the moment of alignment with the dimensional fissure. Proceed with final preparations.  
**DALEK** (*Distort*) The Infinity Scan controlling interfaces sustained damage during the Earth Forces' attack.<sup>54</sup>  
**DALEK SUPREME** Make repairs to the systems.  
**DALEK** (*Distort*) I obey.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Imperial Command Ship will enter Lopra Minor orbit in 70 rels.  
**DALEK** (*Distort*) Understood.  
*Comms bleep.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Emperor! All is prepared!  
**EMPEROR** Prepare me for transmateralisation to Lopra Minor.  
**DALEK SUPREME** I obey.  
**EMPEROR** Nothing can defeat the Daleks now! We will be invincible!  
**DALEK SUPREME** Invincible! Invincible!<sup>55</sup>  
**EMPEROR** *Invincible!!!*<sup>56</sup>  
*A nightmarish crescendo of chanting.*

#### 49. Int. Dalek Imperial Command Ship. Robotisation Bay.

*Door opens. Vast reverb.*

**DALEK** Enter!  
**TANLEE** Beautiful, isn't it?  
**MIRANA** Oh my God, no.  
**ALBY** There's millions of them.  
**TANLEE** Oh yes. Millions of human beings... and their close cousins, Kalendorf. Millions. Sleeping. All the best specimens. Waiting for rebirth.  
**KALENDORF** Why? You're going to put us to sleep... cryogenic sleep?  
**TANLEE** Something of the kind.  
**MIRANA** (*With dread*) I remember now. I saw this in the Emperor's mind.  
**ALBY** I thought you were going to robotise us.

**TANLEE** That's the initial phase, yes. But then... you sleep... and the processes begin.

**KALENDORF** What processes?

**MIRANA** To become a Dalek. They're going to turn us into Dalek creatures.

**TANLEE** Accelerated mutation. And with the help we will get from our brothers who cross from that other reality... You will become the ultimate beings of the universe. We all will.

**KALENDORF** I'd rather die -

**TANLEE** Die fighting? Making a break for it? Smashing a few harmless dents into a Dalek casing or two as you go? Be our guest. But Dalek guns don't always kill. Our guards have orders to paralyse any who cause trouble. So you see, there's no escape. That's something even Susan Mendes discovered.

**ALBY** What? Suz?

**DALEK** Move! Move now!

**TANLEE** This way, please.

**ALBY** Suz is here? Tell me!

**DALEK** Move!

**ALBY** You've got to tell me! Is Suz here?

**TANLEE** Why shouldn't she be?

**ALBY** Suz? Suz! Suzzzz!!!

*His cry echoes.*

#### **50. Int. Project Infinity. Operations Centre.**

*Massive energy of Infinity Scan winds down.*

**DALEK** Infinity Scan has terminated. Processing of data from alternate universes now underway.

**DALEK SUPREME** Continue!

*Faint electronic chatter of data processing. Transmat beam begins.*

**DALEK** Emperor materialising.

*Transmat beam completes.*

**EMPEROR** Report!

**DALEK SUPREME** Initial readings indicate scan data volume is smaller than predicted.

**DALEK** Damage sustained by the systems has inhibited scanning effectiveness. But data volume remains within optimum parameters.

**EMPEROR** That is acceptable for our purposes.

**DALEK** Processing of data continues.

**EMPEROR** Data is to be fed directly to my cerebral processors.

**DALEK SUPREME** The Emperor possesses the greatest mind in the universe!!!

*Electronic chatter of processing reaches a crescendo. Time passes. Alarm sounds.*

**DALEK** Parallel universe located where readings indicate total Dalek control.

**EMPEROR** Activate the dimensional gateway!<sup>57</sup>

*Gateway activation effect.*

**EMPEROR** Launch command beacon through gateway.

**DALEK** I obey.

*Command beacon is launched.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Command beacon launched.

**EMPEROR** Monitor for response signal.

**DALEK** I obey.

*Bleep of monitor. Response signal.*

**DALEK** Response signal received. Readings indicate dimensional gateway has been breached.

**EMPEROR** A Dalek army is entering the dimensional gateway in the parallel universe.

*Gateway rumbles ominously.*

*Bleep of readouts.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Daleks now entering our universe.

*Gateway rumble subsides.*

**EMPEROR** Greetings! I am the Emperor of the Daleks in this universe. You have become the invincible rulers of your universe.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Correct. The Daleks have absolute power.

**EMPEROR** We seek your absolute power for our universe.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** We are accessing your command network.

**EMPEROR** Our achievements are humble. We seek your absolute power.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You Daleks have conquered this galaxy.

**EMPEROR** Correct.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You have waged war against its peoples. You have destroyed. You have subjugated.

**EMPEROR** Correct!

*Pause.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You have committed the greatest crimes our universe has ever known! Neutralize them! Neutralise!<sup>58</sup>  
*Strange Dalek neutraliser guns firing. Crash into*

*CLOSING THEME.*



## NOTES

1. Scene deleted.
2. Line changed to: '(Over computer voice) Look, stop it! I'm just not interested in any message from ~~any~~ (Stunned) What?'
3. The last six lines of Scene 3 were deleted.
4. Scene 4 was substantially changed:

**KALENDORF** (*Sighs*) ~~Come in.~~

*Door opens. Footsteps.*

**KALENDORF** ~~Ah, Officer Mirana.~~

**MIRANA** ~~Hi... Are... are you okay?~~

**KALENDORF** ~~'Okay'? Do I look okay?~~

**MIRANA** ~~Not really.~~

The next 11 lines are then as scripted.

**MIRANA** (*Routine*) This is the picture we'd built up with the first round of reports. Which you've seen. And... here's that pattern of successful rebellion we know so well. ~~A kind of split, right from the Vega System, through Carazono, Guria... the Colatron worlds here... like an arc across the galaxy, more or less ending here on Yaldos.~~

**KALENDORF** That's no surprise... an arc of rebellion travelling through almost every planet Suz and I were taken to by the Daleks.

**MIRANA** Just a month after the rebellion started...

*More graphic sounds.*

**MIRANA** And our influence has spread quickly. Dalek forces are scattering, retreating... mainly in the direction of the Seriphia Galaxy.

**KALENDORF** Where they **come** from in the first place.

**MIRANA** ~~And you can see that arc of rebellion is getting thicker.~~

*More graphic sounds.*

**MIRANA** Three months in, and the Dalek forces look pretty patchy. They're just concentrating in ten or more strong-points... most significantly in Earth's solar system.

**KALENDORF** ~~And then the slow down of activity. Maybe you were right... there is nothing now. Is that the latest picture?~~

**MIRANA** ~~More or less.~~

**KALENDORF** (*Suddenly curious*) Open that file.

**MIRANA** Sure. ~~But it just confirms the way things are going.~~

*More graphics noises.*

**KALENDORF** (*Worried*) ~~What...?~~ What are they playing at?

**MIRANA** Running scared.

**KALENDORF** (*Studying the graphics*) Hmm... Is that what you think?

**MIRANA** Despite everything you've said in the media, there's still a lot of gung-ho attitude from our people

**KALENDORF** An army's state of mind is important, but you need more than just attitude to win a battle. A lot of our fleets are badly equipped and poorly organised. ~~But look...~~ these attacks here... The Daleks shouldn't have been defeated; but... **but...** they're simply retreating at the first sign of trouble.

**MIRANA** Maybe. Maybe they just know it's all over for them.

**KALENDORF** No.

**MIRANA** ~~Kalendorf, what's the matter?~~

**KALENDORF** ~~I don't know. Hmmm...~~

**MIRANA** ~~What are you thinking?~~

**KALENDORF** ~~I'm thinking...~~ They're trying to make us lazy.

**MIRANA** (*Unconvinced*) By losing the war?

**KALENDORF** By treating us **as** over-excitabile children. Letting us win, over and over again when we've no right to.

**MIRANA** Well, that doesn't sound like Dalek thinking to me.  
The next 11 lines are then as scripted.

**MIRANA** Well, that doesn't make sense.

**KALENDORF** That's what I said. (*Sighs. Change of thought*) Do you think Alby knows more than he's telling us?

**MIRANA** Alby? Why do you say that?

**KALENDORF** I noticed him getting a bit tight-lipped when the first report of that Dalek sighting came in.

**MIRANA** You did? Oh.

**KALENDORF** Yes. Where is he?

**MIRANA** Er... I don't know. I haven't seen him in quite a while. He's been **kind of**... distant, lately.

**KALENDORF** Drunk, you mean. He hasn't said much to anyone ever since he found out Suz was dead.

**MIRANA** He'd been looking for her a long time.

**KALENDORF** (*Pensive*) Yes...

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** ~~Kalendorf to Alby Brook. Respond please.~~

*Negative bleep.*

**KALENDORF** ~~Alby, this is Kalendorf. Where are you?~~

*Negative bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Comms centre, can you locate Alby Brook for me, please?

**COMMS** (*Distort*) ~~Traffic control reports he left the city about an hour ago, sir.~~

**KALENDORF** ~~Not drunk, then. (Urgent) Where was he heading?~~

**COMMS** (*Distort*) ~~Er... Oh. It seems he didn't log a flight plan, sir.~~

*Door opens.*

**MIRANA** ~~Where are you going?~~

**KALENDORF** ~~To find Alby... and ask him what he really knows about the Leppe System.~~

5. This line and the following five were deleted.
6. Line changed to: 'What are you doing **out** here?'
7. The final three lines of Scene 9 were deleted.
8. We also hear Suz's reading of "Try a pickled onion... My gran makes them... sends them from Earth.'
9. Line changed to: '(Quietly) It came from **that** cave.'
10. Line changed to: '~~In my mind's eye~~... the air was always fresh, the suns were always high in the sky. The water in the Marsh Lakes... always a sparkling blue. Hmm, that's the way I remember it.'
11. 'Oh,' added at the beginning of the line.
12. Line changed to: '(Distort) **That is of no importance to you now.** We have known of Project Infinity for centuries.'
13. Line changed to: 'Suz? You **know what will** - '
14. Line changed to: 'Peoples of the galaxy. We all knew this day would come. Perhaps some of you doubted it. I never did. (*Pause*) I have just spoken with the Dalek leaders. They tell me, Earth has been conquered. That the Daleks have won. That the war is over. (*Pause*) We will all live as citizens of the Dalek Empire... forever! That is what they tell me. They want me to say that we slaves should be commended for hastening the Dalek victory. But I **only** have one thing to say to that. DEATH - TO - THE - DALEKS!!!'
15. Line changed to: 'Silence! Silence! **Silence! Exterminate!**'
16. Added dialogue - DALEK: '**Exterminate! Exterminate! Exterminate!**'
17. Line changed to: 'Yes. There are many possible reasons why I'm not

linked to Suz anymore. She may have left the planet. She may be in a deep coma. She ~~could have -~~

18. Line changed to: 'I wanted it to be me! I wanted her to live. I wanted to be the one who was remembered as the dead hero. And you know why? Because I couldn't bear the guilt either. I still can't. But I know for sure that she's dead, Alby. And we now know the lengths **that** she went to - to ensure that we found out what the Daleks are *really* up to. *That's* what we should be thinking about now. This... Project Infinity. And there's that look on your face again.'

19. Line changed to: 'The Daleks are being defeated because they're not interested in fighting us any more. Why is that? **It's** because **the** one little Dalek ship, or whatever it is, heading for the Lopra system is more important than anything that's happened throughout the entire galaxy?'

20. Line changed to: 'Kalendorf... I don't think he does **know** - '

21. Added dialogue - DALEK: '**All tactician Daleks report to Emperor's chamber immediately.**'

22. Line changed to: '(Struggling) **It's...** the Daleks.'

23. Line changed to: '~~The~~ Emperor? Oh, God!'

24. Line changed to: 'I can't... I can't maintain... ~~Arch~~. She's becoming too powerful for me. My mind is weakening.'

25. Line changed to: 'Just a glimpse. But what a glimpse it was. There was a clear link from the Emperor's mind to a Dalek command network. And there was something else... (with difficulty) I ~~can't~~... I... I can't quite...'

26. Scene 29 was substantially changed to:

*Sharp negative bleeps from mind-link controls.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Psychotropic link with humanoid agent cannot be re-established. No response to destruct signals.

**EMPEROR** ~~Has the humanoid female survived?~~

**DALEK SUPREME** ~~Readings indicate her mind was conscious when the psychotropic link was severed.~~

**EMPEROR** ~~She was linked to my mental processes and through me to the Dalek Command net. The humans may now gain knowledge of our plan if they are able to access the implant in her brain. We must set a direct course for Lopra Minor.~~

**DALEK SUPREME** If we deviate from current trajectory, this vessel will be in range of Earth Alliance deep-space scanners for a sustained period. We will be detected.

**EMPEROR** That is of no consequence now. Speed is of the essence.

*Comms bleep.*

**EMPEROR** ~~Report on advance attack force status.~~

**DALEK 1** (*Distort*) ~~Advance attack force coded signals indicate they are on final approach to planet Lopra Minor.~~

**EMPEROR** ~~Excellent!!!~~

27. Scene 30 was substantially changed. The first eight lines are as scripted, then:

**TANLEE** ~~One of my men. As I was saying, under normal circumstances, I would allow you to rest.~~

**ESPELIUS** ~~'Allow'?~~

**TANLEE** ~~But unfortunately for you, those are far from normal circumstances.~~

**ESPELIUS** ~~I don't understand.~~

**TANLEE** ~~Well, under normal circumstances, if, say, a Dalek attack force were to land on this planet... even a modest Dalek attack force,~~

~~your security alarms would make enough noise to wake the dead, wouldn't they?~~

**ESPELIUS** ~~What are you saying?~~

**TANLEE** ~~I had my men deactivate your security systems.~~

**ESPELIUS** ~~Wh— Why did you do that?~~

**TANLEE** ~~You're about to find out, my dear old friend.~~

**ESPELIUS** ~~Tanlee, what are you talking about?~~ This is no time for childish games. The events that are about to unfold here —

**TANLEE** Are not quite the events you expected, I'm afraid.

*Door opens.*

**ESPELIUS** ~~My God... Tanlee... What have you done...? You've betrayed —~~

**DALEK** Do not move! This facility is now under Dalek control. Resist and you will be exterminated.

28. Line changed to: 'Oh... er... I was born on a freighter passing through Orion's belt. So... I never really **knew** how to answer that question.'

29. Line changed to: 'Only... only... pieces. I can't quite... I can't **quite**...'

30. Line changed to: '**Well**, that's hardly an inspired conclusion to reach —'

31. Line changed to: 'Project Infinity... "We will use it to gain **total** control of..." Of the entire universe.' The next line, the last of the scene, is then deleted.

32. This line, and the following three, are all deleted.

33. Scene 35 was substantially changed. The first 12 lines are as scripted, then:

**MIRANA** The Daleks are constantly transmitting their co-ordinates through their command net, so that the squad commander can keep updating its orders. ~~It's kind of like a very fast game of chess.~~

**KALENDORF** ~~Between the Dalek commander and us.~~

**MIRANA** Yes.

**KALENDORF** Doctor, can you link Mirana up to our tactical computer and beam her information direct to our assault force?

**JOHNSTONE** I can try.

**ALBY** ~~(Distort) All the assault force guys are patched in to the tactical computers on board each of the landing craft. They've all got heads up displays on their visors.~~

**KALENDORF** ~~And we can supply data direct to each tactical computer.~~

**MIRANA** ~~And if you create a direct tap from my implant to our tactical computer... It should work.~~

The scene then continues as scripted.

34. Deleted dialogue — ZERO 2: ~~(Distort) Landing craft Zero 2 reporting steady at ten thousand meters. Do you want us to circle?~~

35. Line changed to: 'Confirmed, Zero 2. We have you at 15 degrees NorWest of Project Infinity base, at a distance of... (reading it off) 5 point 6 kilometers.'

36. Line changed to: '(Distort) ~~Beer with me~~, I'm working as fast as I can.'

37. This line and the following three were deleted.

38. Line changed to: '~~Another problem...~~ I think. Mr Herrick?'

39. Line changed to: 'Oh, that is beautiful. Look at **that** screen. All the Dalek positions around the base are showing up.'

40. Line changed to:

**SPECIAL WEAPONS DALEK** Special Weapons Daleks obey! Climbing to attack altitude.

**DALEK** Tracking enemy craft approaching.

**SPECIAL WEAPONS DALEK** Firing now.

41. Line changed to: '(Tense) **Yes.** Looks like a hit.'

42. Deleted dialogue - ALBY: '~~So far... not so bad.~~'

43. Added dialogue - DALEK 1: '**Have sustained damage. Have sustained damage.**'

44. Line changed to: '(Distort) Zero 2, watch your left flank, an order has just been given to encircle you. ~~The last surviving Special Weapons Dalek is now ordered to make an air attack on you.~~'

45. Scene 43 was changed to:

*Jungle atmosphere. Handgun fire.*

**DALEK** Under attack! Under attack! **Vision impaired! Vision impaired!**

*Daleks cry out and explode.*

**DALEK 2** Exterminate! Exterminate! **Fire! Fire!**

**DALEK 1** **Crush all resistance.**

**DALEK 3** **Exterminate**

*Dalek gunfire. Soldiers cry out.*

**DALEK 3** **They are surrounded. There is no escape. Destroy. Destroy.**

46. The first two lines of Scene 44 were deleted.

47. Line changed to: '(Distort) You are clear, Zero 4. ~~Repeat, you are clear.~~ They made a big mistake moving their main force to hit Zero 2.'

48. Line changed to: '(Angry) We've done what you asked! **Now**, stop the killing!'

49. Line changed to:

**ESPELIUS** (Distort) Our lives don't matter.

**DALEK** (Distort) **Silence!**

**ESPELIUS** (Distort) Whoever you are! Listen to me! You must press home your attack!

**DALEK** (Distort) **Silence!**

**ESPELIUS** (Distort) If the Daleks gain control of Project Infinity it will be the end of everything -

50. Added dialogue - DALEK CMDR: '**Withdraw!**'

51. Line changed to: 'Quantum realities. Have you heard **of them?** An infinite number of possible universes, based on an infinite number of possibilities.'

52. Line changed to: '**Yes**, I've heard of it.'

53. Line changed to: 'Oh, it'll work all right. As soon as that fissure is aligned, the Infinity Scan is set to fire off automatically. It's powered by veganite, **by the way!**'

54. Line changed to: '(Distort) The **controlling interfaces of the Infinity Scan** sustained damage during the Earth Forces' attack.'

55. Line changed to: 'Invincible! Invincible! **Invincible!**'

56. Line changed to: 'Invincible!!! **Invincible!!!**'

57. Line changed to: 'Activate ~~the~~ dimensional gateway!'

58. Line changed to:

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You have committed the greatest crimes our universe has ever known! Neutralise them! ~~Neutralise!~~

**DALEK** **Exterminate!**

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Neutralise them!

# PROJECT INFINITY

It's noticeable that the first scene of *Project Infinity* – the scene of Kalendorf being interviewed on a news programme – is missing from the finished audio. Did you record it? Why was it cut?

Nicholas Briggs: The scene was recorded and later cut. Alistair Lock played the newsreader. It was cut because the play was overrunning; but also because it just wasn't necessary. One of the few good things I learnt when I worked in publishing was that you can often easily cut the first paragraph from an article. The reason is that the first paragraph is just the writer kind of getting himself into gear, settling his bum into the seat as it were. He usually goes on to repeat, in more detail, what he says in the first paragraph. This was exactly the case in this first scene. I was recapping for my own sake. This often happens in first drafts. Writers work through ideas to solidify them in their own minds, but in the final analysis this 'working through' is often not necessary for the audience to hear. Everything that's mentioned in this scene is referred to and explained later.

On the same topic, the scene is longer in the first draft. In your first version of the script, the scene continues as:

**NEWSREADER** And with the mysterious disappearance of Tanlee, the Operational Commander of Earth's Forces, more worrying developments are signalled.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Our tactical assessment is that the Daleks are playing a waiting game. They are regrouping. And now our long-range scanners are picking up traces of Dalek activity beyond the boundaries of our galaxy.

**INTERVIEWER** (*Distort*) You mean in the Seriphia Galaxy, where they made their attack from?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) No... I mean on the opposite side of the galaxy. It seems that while we were busy trying to fight their main invasion force – and failing – a small group of Daleks was circumnavigating our galaxy.

**INTERVIEWER** (*Distort. Taken aback*) Well... do – do we know why?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort. Sighs*) No. No we don't. All we can be sure of is... they're up to something.

It's telling that I decided to cut it down before recording it. I clearly already had the instinct that it wasn't really necessary. The version that was recorded was the slightly cut version. The material that was cut after the first draft is even more plot-heavy and over-explanatory. Yuk.

### **Was the play overrunning because there was a lot of plot to fit in?**

It wasn't so much that there was a lot of plot, but that it was all a bit overstated. The only bit of plot that was actually cut concerned the Dalek Supreme sending an advance squad to attack Lopra Minor before the Emperor's ship arrived. That meant that every scene with the Emperor and the Supreme ended with an exchange on this subject. In post-production, I found that by cutting these final exchanges in each of these scenes, I saved a hell of a lot of time, made the story flow more easily and – what's best of all – you don't even miss those bits! Nobody has ever questioned why or how those extra Daleks turn up to help Tanlee. It was an interesting lesson in what audiences do and don't need to know. The moment I cut those bits, it's almost as if I forgot they ever existed.

### **Were there any other deleted scenes?**

I toyed with the idea of having a Yaldos council chamber scene. In this unfinished fragment, it is clear that Alby and Kalendorf are arguing that resources must be diverted to pursuing the Dalek ship which was detected on the fringes of the galaxy...

#### **Int. Yaldos. Council Chamber.**

*A crowd of delegates arguing. Proceedings are out of control.*

**MIRANA** Members of the council! Are we to believe that Kalendorf and Brook are seriously suggesting that we weaken our forces here in the inner sectors of the galaxy to... what? Send them on some wild chase to find an insignificant group of Daleks who may or may not be approaching the Lopra System for some unknown purpose?

*Noises of agreement from crowd.*

**KALENDORF** (Close) Well... Alby?

**ALBY** What can I tell them? I don't really know anything. And it may be too dangerous to tell them the little I do know.

### **Who sends the message to Alby, telling him to try a pickled onion?**

It's a psychic message from the Seer. The same as the message that Alby receives on the radio as he approaches the mountain in the skimmer.

### **Is there any significance to 'pickled onions'? Are you a fan?**

I'm a great fan of pickled onions! I have all their albums! They are my favourite food, which is socially embarrassing for at least two reasons; but I'll leave you to guess those.

### **In the first draft, Kalendorf says he saw Suz die, which contradicts what we later find out.**

That's probably why I cut it. I did, however, want to get across Kalendorf's certainty that Suz was dead. I always knew that she wasn't going to be, but I was keen for Kalendorf to be so grief-stricken that he could not even dare to entertain the possibility of hope. His saying that he actually saw her die could have been viewed as this; but its factual inaccuracy would have just been confusing.

### **The first draft is quite different to the finished play. Mirana was originally killed off...**

## 12. Int. Yaldos. Seers' Cavern.

[...]

**MIRANA** Kalendorf, where are you going?

**KALENDORF** To find Project Infinity.

**MIRANA** Why? If what Alby says is true, then -

**KALENDORF** Then what? What would you have me do? Organise another galaxy-wide broadcast? 'Hello everyone, it's all over, time to follow Alby Brook's noble example and get drunk'? This whole invasion of the galaxy has been a massive distraction. Something to divert us from what the Daleks are really doing. And the rebellion? That was just something else to keep us all occupied, just in case we noticed a tiny flicker on a space scope screen. The flicker of one tiny Dalek ship up to no good...

**MIRANA** You don't know that for sure. There could be hundreds of possible -

**KALENDORF** - possible explanations? Yes, let's just sit around and discuss those. That'd be another distraction the Dalek Emperor would be only too pleased about.

**ALBY** She's right, Kalendorf. You can't be sure -

**KALENDORF** You play the Emperor's game if you like. I'm going to the Lopra System.

**MIRANA** I'm afraid I can't let you do that.

*Gun clicks.*

**ALBY** Mirana, what are you doing?

**KALENDORF** If you want to stop me, you'll have to shoot me.

**MIRANA** That's precisely what I intend to do.

*Gun fires. KALENDORF cries out and falls to the ground.*

**ALBY** Mirana, what the hell-? Oh no.

**MIRANA** It is a pity you did not manage to convince Kalendorf of the futility of resistance. And now you mu- aaargh! (*Various groans of pain*)

**ALBY** What's the matter with you? What's the matter with her?

**SEER** Quickly... I am holding her mind in mine. Disarm her.

**ALBY** Right. (*Sound of effort*) Got it...

*Scuffing of feet.*

**ALBY** Kalendorf! Kalendorf!

**KALENDORF** (*Severely injured*) Alby... aaargh. Damn, she's a Dalek spy... aargh... damn!

**SEER** No... not just spy... Her mind... Her mind... (*Gasps in pain*)

**MIRANA** (*Fighting against SEER's mental powers*) The Seer's mental powers will soon be overcome.

**ALBY** Who are you?

**MIRANA** You are addressing... the Emperor of the Daleks.

**SEER** (*Gasps in pain*) Their minds are linked! There is... a device... implanted in her brain. I can... I can see... See into the mind of the Emperor. No! Noooo!

**MIRANA** You will all be exterminated!

**KALENDORF** Alby, shoot Mirana... kill her!

*Gun fires several times.*

**MIRANA** You cannot kill me. I have the Emperor's strength of purpose.



*A punch. ALBY gasps, falls. Gun clatters. Footsteps, gun is picked up.*

**SEER** It's... infinity... I can see what you seek... Infinite possibilities... infinite power...

**MIRANA** Power that your puny mind cannot comprehend. The very thought will destroy you.

**SEER** Aaargh! Kalendorf, Alby! This Emperor seeks infinity.

**KALENDORF** What?

**ALBY** Infinity? Project Infinity?

**MIRANA** And now, old woman, you will die.

*Gunshot. SEER cries out. MIRANA cries out.*

**MIRANA** *(In pain, confused)* What? What is happening?

**SEER** Our minds are linked. I die... you die *(A final gasp)*

*MIRANA cries out and dies.*

### 13. Dalek Imperial Command Ship.

*EMPEROR cries out.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Psychotropic link with humanoid agent relinquished.

**EMPEROR** *(Recovering)* The... the humans now know something of our plan. They will try to stop us. Set direct course for the Lopra System.

**DALEK SUPREME** A direct course will be detected by the human beings' scanning devices.

**EMPEROR** It does not matter now. Speed is of the essence.

I came to a bit of a halt with it. It's true that one of the reasons why I decided to keep Mirana was because of Teresa's strong performance, but I also realised that she would be a good focus of the story. I could use her to take us on six months and move things on to the final approach to Lopra Minor. So we wake up with Mirana, as confused as she is, so we can learn as she learns. I seem to remember it took me quite a while to work this out.

### How would the rest of the story have gone?

Here are extracts from the original plot of Project Infinity, which show what might have been if I'd followed my initial plans to kill Mirana. We pick up the story in the Seer's Cave, immediately following the flashbacks to Suz being exterminated on Yaldos...

- Alby upset (devastated)
- Project Infinity discussion with Kalendorf. What did Suz know?
- Seer: 'Veganite fuels it. Top Secret. Lopra System, Lopra Minor.'
- Alby & Kalendorf: 'Earth Alliance seeking alliance with Knights of Velyshaa ~ against big threat, probably the Daleks.'
- Kalendorf had heard of Project Infinity.
- Alby: Big – if Suz was right and Dalek Supreme seemed to know about revolution, Project Infinity must really hold the key.
- Mirana: 'It does.' (She's a Dalek replicant. She will now destroy them.)
- Seer links with her mind and distracts Mirana.
- Kalendorf kills Mirana.
- Seer was linked, for a moment, to Dalek neural net.
- She has seen Project Infinity.
- Alby & Kalendorf: 'What is it?'
- The thought kills the Seer.
- Alby & Kalendorf must go to Lopra.

- The Dalek Supreme and Emperor are circling the Milky Way from Vega IV to reach Lopra. Dalek duplicate with Alby and Kalendorf killed. Info on Project Infinity. They'll be heading for it. Their goal – Project Infinity.
- Alby and Kalendorf arrive on Lopra Minor. Split up. Alby arrested. Questioned by Espeelius. Alby mentions mission ordered by Tanlee. Tanlee enters.
- Alby: 'Daleks on Carson's Planet?'
- Tanlee: 'I escaped. Were you able to report in on what Suz told you about Project Infinity?'
- Alby suspicious – how would Tanlee know etc?
- Disguised, Kalendorf breaks in and discovers what Project Infinity is. 'Oh, God etc.' (But we don't know at this point)
- Tanlee apparently satisfied.
- Espeelius enters. 2nd activation is about to commence.
- Tanlee says Alby might as well see what all the fuss is about.
- Espeelius is not happy.
- Kalendorf is caught.
- Dalek Sup and Emp arriving in Lopra System. 'Our agent reports all is going according to plan. Extra supplies of Veganite we carry will boost the process/ augment Project Infinity.'
- Main chamber.
- Tanlee, Espeelius & Alby enter.
- Impressive etc.
- Kalendorf brought in.
- Starts to explain Project Infinity from what he's seen.
- Espeelius continues, 'All dimensions, all possibilities – ideas for defeating Daleks'
- Alarms sounds.
- Daleks landed. Attack.
- Kalendorf & Alby help with defence.
- Daleks relentless.
- Kalendorf: 'Must destroy project. If Daleks get it... It could do same for them.'
- Tanlee – gun. 'That's right. Nobody move.' (duplicate)
- Alby and Kalendorf are restrained.
- Daleks enter. Install extra veganite. Espeelius impressed that this will not just take dimensional readings, but will open gateway.
- Dalek scientist plugs in & selects correct dimension. One where Daleks rule.
- Gateway opens.
- Civil war ending.
- Alby and Kalendorf observe it.

As you can see, this original storyline, written long before any idea of a second series was suggested, did envisage a chaotic, inconclusive ending. The main difference would have been that Alby and Kalendorf were left watching the galaxy burn in the fires of the civil war between the two Dalek factions. However, it's clear that I hadn't actually worked out how Alby and Karl would survive long enough to witness this. Also, it isn't clear whether or not Tanlee or Espeelius would survive.

It's interesting that I tried several times to plant the information about Kalendorf's original mission. I never really found an appropriate place for it – it certainly doesn't fit very well here.

The planet that the story begins on is still being referred to as 'Vega IV', not 'VI'. Obviously Clayton Hickman's comment about 'Vega IV' sounding like 'vague guffaw' hadn't yet been made!

**In The Human Factor**, Daughter tells Alby that if she sees Suz she will tell her that he loves her. In *Project Infinity*, Suz (the Seer) says, 'That girl on Guria told me about you, that you'd said you loved me and were prepared to die finding me. She said I would find a way to be with you forever. And I have found that way, my love. Here I am.' The meeting must have happened 'off-stage'.

That's precisely what happens. It happens 'off-stage'. That's why the Seer reports it. This is the primary source of information for us on the subject, not the reiterating of information from another scene. That scene doesn't exist. There's plenty of talk about the Daleks coming to Guria. I don't think it's too much of a leap to assume that Suz did go there. And if she went there, Daughter would certainly have kept her word. She was a nice kind of girl, you know. Georgina Carter, who played Daughter, is always ribbing me that 'the Princess is coming back in the next one, I think'. Actors are always doing that, postulating that you're actually going to create a whole series based on their character!

**Again, you were playing around with narrative – a large part of Project Infinity is taken up with explaining events that, chronologically speaking, happened in "Death to the Daleks!"**

And earlier! That's the whole point of meeting the Seer. She will fill us – and the characters – in on the stuff we hadn't already found out.

**It's a bit of a cheat, isn't it, having the Seer able to narrate events that occurred to Suz after they'd met?**

Well, it's a bit of cheat having people dash around the galaxy with no time dilation effect. It's a bit of a cheat that there are matter transmitters and ray guns. It's only a cheat in that way. It's explained perfectly clearly that the Seer maintains a mental link with Suz as long as she remains on Yaldu. Suz is most concerned that those left behind find out what happens to her. The fact that it is possible is part of the science fiction or fantasy. If you don't like science fiction or fantasy, then go and watch *EastEnders* and stop moaning to me about things being a cheat!

**When you were writing Project Infinity, was it your intention that Suz had been killed, or were you being deliberately vague about it? You play it as if she's dead right until the last scene and then we get the hint that she was simply paralysed and put into cryogenic sleep.**

In all honesty, I think I was playing a game with myself. Daring to entertain the idea that she was dead. But I think I always knew that she couldn't be. It's difficult to remember exactly what I was thinking. I certainly wanted the audience to believe she was dead; so I didn't want to give any little clues. There was one, however. The Seer says that the break in the link between her and Suz could have been caused simply by Suz leaving Yaldos.

**Even though Mirana wasn't killed off, it's still revealed that she was unwittingly working for the Daleks, as was Pellán earlier in the series. And later in the episode, Tanlee is uncovered as a Dalek agent. Double-crossing characters seem quite abundant. Dave Owen picked up on this in his *DWM* review. He wrote a very funny thing about Alby going home to see his parents, only to find that they were Robomen. I laughed a lot. I think the whole theme of betrayal and double-crossing is a vital element of any war story and, for that matter, any Dalek story. It's the idea that in extreme situations, the enemy resorts to any trick to outwit the good guys. It also adds to that unnerving feeling that you can't trust anyone.**

**Though they met in "Death to the Daleks!", Project Infinity sees Alby and Kalendorf get a lot of time together. Was it fun writing for new combinations of characters?**

I particularly enjoyed writing their first meeting. It's always interesting when two people only know each other by reputation. I thought Mark and Gareth did a particularly good job on that. There was also, of course, the whole feeling of dread in Alby when he meets Kalendorf. He knows that something awful has happened. I was particularly proud of having him start to cry before Karl gives him the bad news. Later, their interaction was interesting because it wasn't that clear who was in charge. Kalendorf was supposed to be, but Alby is very self-reliant. Gareth actually queried why Alby was giving some of the orders. Bless him, Gareth just wanted Kalendorf to be the biggest, toughest guy in the story!

**When the characters arrive at Lopra Minor, there is the attack on the Infinity installation. How difficult is it to realise large-scale action on audio?**

It's a great challenge. I took as my template the rebel attack on the Death Star as presented in the LP version of *Star Wars*. I was impressed at how they were able to convey the detail and drama of the attack without any narration. Having people talking to each other over communicators is always a good way of doing that. People keep asking what's going on, and the other people have to report. I loved that sequence.

**Who played all the 'Zero' characters?**

Ian Brooker, Jeremy James, Simon Bridge and Sarah Mowat. Interestingly, Jez developed a voice which he later adapted, with an American accent, for Control in the *Judge Dredd* series.

**The ending is a double whammy of cliffhangers: first off, it appears that Alby and co have lost and are going to be turned into Daleks; then, the Alternate Daleks turn up and aren't what we expect. Was it intended to be a cliffhanger? Did you know what would happen next?**

It was intended to be an ending that wasn't a definite resolution. Initially, I wanted Alby and Kalendorf to be observing the chaos into which the galaxy was descending, but the whole cryochamber thing changed that. But I didn't know what would happen next, because I'd planned it as the end of a stand-alone four-part series.



# DALEK WAR

**Okay – so, seriously now: when did you first start to think about doing a second series?**

Nicholas Briggs: I'd always approached *Dalek Empire* as a one-off four-part series. That's how I planned the plot. And after *Invasion of the Daleks* was released to quite poor reviews – from *Dreamwatch* and *SFX*... I think I'll keep mentioning that! – I thought, 'Oh well, it was worth a try and at least I'm having fun.' But, little by little, good vibes started to filter back to me. Jason picked up on these vibes, and, more importantly for him, the respectable sales figures. So it was round about the time of "Death to the Daleks!" that he started talking to me about the possibility of doing another series. But, you know, everything in Big Finish is done in a very vague sort of way. Nobody really ever communicates clearly, and Jason does a lot of mumbling and talking around the subject. He's usually knackered (he's always massively busy with his 'day job') and can't remember what he said to you half an hour ago; so there was no real, official commissioning. He just sort of mumbled about how it might be a good idea. So, I suppose I was bearing that in mind when I wrote "Death to the Daleks!" and *Project Infinity*. Somehow, by the time I'd finished writing *Project Infinity*, I still wasn't absolutely certain about doing a second series; but I discovered that Jason was. So, in that meandering, Big Finish sort of way, I very gratefully accepted the challenge. But I can't remember any dates of when I actually started writing the second series. There were a few false starts – one of them reprinted later in this section.

There's one version of the beginning of *Dalek War* I'd started scribbling down in an exercise book, which actually got left on a train. I'd written quite a lot of it and had taken it with me to a *Doctor Who* convention in Newcastle-upon-Tyne. I got a bit stir-crazy during the train journey home and was so pleased to get off that wretched train that I left the exercise book in that little magazine thingy on the back of the seat in front of me. I wonder if anyone ever picked it up? I suppose it ended up in a Virgin Trains bin somewhere.

**Tell me about the evolution of the story – how much was stuff you'd thought of during the writing of *Dalek Empire*? How much of it was extrapolated from the events of *Dalek Empire*? Did you want to introduce new characters?**

I hadn't thought of any of the plot elements of *Dalek War* when I was doing *Dalek Empire*. There was one sequence I started writing for the end of *Dalek Empire*, in which Mirana in a semi-frozen state witnessed, through her link with the Dalek neural net, what happened when the Alternate Daleks arrived. When I cut that from *Project Infinity*, I toyed with the idea of using it in *Dalek War*. But when I actually started to write *Dalek War*, I discarded that idea almost immediately as, frankly, too boring.

The plot of *Dalek War* was only extrapolated from *Dalek Empire* in that it was a

continuation of the story. But I wanted to create something entirely new, and not rely on too much knowledge of the first series. I doubt if many people who bought *Dalek War* hadn't heard *Dalek Empire*, but I was still keen that no previous purchase was necessary, folks.

So, the Saloran and Tarkov scenes fulfilled the needs of plot reiteration, but with the added twist that they were getting some of the facts wrong, or looking at them from a slightly different point of view. You see, I'd had this mad idea, when I was working up to writing *Dalek War*, that I should do the whole thing as a documentary. I was watching this BBC2 documentary about some lost civilisation or other, and – I must have been in a really strange frame of mind – I started to feel that the documentary format was more intriguing than drama. Well, I soon got over that nonsense; but I did keep that feeling in mind. I started to treat the plot of *Dalek War* like it was a series of historical fragments. Ironically, that allows you to say stuff like 'we just don't know what happened' and 'somehow, things changed, but no one knows why'. Depending on how you handle this, it can lend a story a kind of epic quality or just be a terrible cop-out. But I'm a great believer in drama feeling as real as possible, and the fact is that one of the most dominant feelings many of us have about our lives is that things don't quite make sense or tally up properly... or turn out the right way. It's certainly a dominant feeling in my life, so it usually finds its way into my scripts. And it's that feeling of events moving on beyond the control of individuals that I tried to have sneaking around in the background of *Dalek War*. Just as the Seer narration in *Dalek Empire* had been effective in moving the story along, the Saloran and Tarkov scenes in *Dalek War* also allowed me not only to move the plot along but, additionally, it allowed me to ask questions that the audience might be asking (like, why did Kalendorf never tell anyone about his plan?) – but instead of giving answers, I usually just asked more questions.

As for new characters... I didn't have a specific goal to introduce new ones; in fact, I was very keen to stick with and develop the strong characters that'd emerged in *Dalek Empire*. However, because of what I wanted to do with the story – have the future perspective and split the characters up – I had, by necessity, to create new characters for my regulars to speak to. So Mirana got Marber, Alby got Morli and Kalendorf got the Mentor.

### **How much of a problem was that fact that you'd 'killed off' Suz?**

It wasn't really a problem because, by the time I'd written the cryo-chamber scene in *Project Infinity*, I was entertaining the idea that she had been frozen by the Daleks. It also gave me the opportunity to make the overriding thrust of *Dalek War* Chapter One the recovery of Suz. Everyone, including me, wanted Suz back. I'd already given myself a way of bringing her back, so why resist?

### **You again used a narrative framing device – Saloran and Tarkov.**

Aside from the reasons of moving the plot along more quickly and having my narrators articulating and asking questions from a 'sort of' audience perspective, there are two other, less noble reasons for using a narrative framing device. Firstly, it just seemed part of the style of *Dalek Empire* and made it very different from our *Doctor Who* releases. Secondly, narration gives a story an epic quality. It's that sense that, if somebody is bothering to talk about the story from a distant perspective, then it takes on a higher level of significance. You know, if you start a drama with someone walking down the

road and going into a shop, it all seems a bit mundane and unimportant. However, if you do exactly the same scene and put in a narrator saying, 'It all started that day I walked down the road and went into the shop... and after that, things would never be the same' you suddenly invest it with all sorts of potential significance. It means you have to deliver more later and could easily screw it up; but it does get you off to a rollicking good start!

As for 'non-linear storytelling', which sounds very grand and complex, I'm keen on it to the extent that I actually think it's part of the natural way we all tell stories. We like to think that we tell people stuff from the beginning to the end, but if you actually analyse the way most people impart information, they do it largely in a sort of thematic order. You find that people who tell the most entertaining stories often suddenly wind back in their storytelling and use phrases like 'Of course, what we didn't know was that...' and 'In the end we...' and 'But before all that...'. So it's something that we're all quite used to in real life. People often do it deliberately to heighten the impact of what they're telling you. So, sometimes, to write your script in strict, chronological order – with the beginning, the middle and the end adhering strictly to what happened first, what happened second and what happened last – is not the most effective and engaging way of telling your story. For example, to start *Dalek War* with the scene of Kalendorf, Alby and Mirana waking up in the cryo-chamber is just very dull. It's much more interesting to catch up with the characters at a later point in their timeline. Then, by the time you actually do the scene in which we discover exactly what happened when they woke up, the audience is chomping at the bit for this information. It gives the scene far more impact, but you've done that thing of delayed gratification. I feel very strongly that the most important thing to work out about storytelling is not just what to tell the audience, but when to tell it to them.

I think I first really thought about this when I saw a fantastic Canadian film called *The Sweet Hereafter*, about a school bus crashing and the consequences of this for a village community. It was told in a completely non-chronological order, but made perfect sense and was one of the most moving, powerful films I've ever seen.

**Unlike *Dalek Empire*, all four *Dalek War* scripts were written in one go. Tell us about how you went about writing them. Did you write them in episode order?**

The first thing I wrote for *Dalek War* was the background to the future world of Saloran and Tarkov. This led me to writing the 'beginning' of the story as the whole sequence with them. So I certainly intended to write the thing in order, but after I'd finished the Velyshaa sequence, I realised that most of it should actually be at the end of the story. So I cut it up and made a mental note to distribute it throughout the story. I then started off with the 'Kalendorf at war' sequence. But, as you know, that changed a couple of times before it was finalised. But once I'd done that, I wrote the script in order. I stopped to write a more detailed plot synopsis (with drawings, of course!), but, interestingly, this finishes at the point of the Vaarga men entering Kalendorf's ship. I can't find any plot documents after that. I do remember writing the last segment really quite quickly, so I just think I kind of flew from that last bit of plot synopsis until I reached the end. I remember John Ainsworth being quite shocked that I'd suddenly finished. There were rewrites, of course, but it largely stayed the same.

**Did the fact that you wrote them all at once change the emphasis, do you think? In your eyes, is *Dalek War* more of a serial – less episodic – than *Dalek Empire*?**



I hadn't really thought about it like that. But yes, I suppose that's true. The thing about *Dalek Empire* is that, largely speaking, it never goes backwards. It's a bit like a James Bond film in that it always moves on to the next location and very rarely goes back to it. Our characters are always moving forward, physically. *Dalek War* doesn't do that so much. It takes a long time for Alby and Suz to move off that scout-ship... Alby by dying and Suz by being captured. So, yes, I suppose *Dalek War* does fold back on itself more than *Dalek Empire*. There's more of a sense of one story unfolding rather than different adventures that form a story.

# DALEK WAR

## CAST

<b>KALENDORF</b>	Gareth Thomas
<b>SIY TARKOV</b>	Steven Elder
<b>SALORAN HARDEW</b>	Karen Henson
<b>MARBER, DRUDGER &amp; SPARKS</b>	Ian Brooker
<b>MIRANA</b>	Teresa Gallagher
<b>ALBY BROOK</b>	Mark McDonnell
<b>THE MENTOR</b>	Hannah Smith
<b>Dr JOHNSTONE &amp; SCIENTIST</b>	Simon Bridge
<b>HERRICK, TROOPER &amp; VAARGA MAN</b>	Jeremy James
<b>SUSAN MENDES</b>	Sarah Mowat
<b>MORLI</b>	Dannie Carr
<b>THE DALEKS</b>	Nicholas Briggs
<b>TROOPER</b>	David Sax
<b>ALLENBY</b>	Mark Donovan
<b>GODWIN</b>	Helen Goldwyn
<b>COMMAND, COMPUTER &amp; TECHNICIAN</b>	Jack Galagher

PRODUCTION CREDITS

<b>Written by</b>	Nicholas Briggs
<b>Daleks created by</b>	Terry Nation
<b>Story Editor</b>	John Ainsworth
<b>Sound design &amp; music</b>	Nicholas Briggs
<b>Producers</b>	Jason Haigh-Ellery Nicholas Briggs
<b>Executive Producer for BBC Worldwide</b>	Jacqueline Rayner
<b>Directed by</b>	Nicholas Briggs

**Dalek War**

*Recorded: 27 October and  
3, 4, 6 and 10 November 2002*

**Chapter One**

*Released : January 2003*

**Chapter Two**

*Released : February 2003*

**Chapter Three**

*Released : March 2003*

**Chapter Four**

*Released : April 2003*

# DALEK WAR

## Basic Plot

Nicholas Briggs: *I really am quite surprised at how similar my original ideas for the plot of Dalek War are to the finished production. I expected to look back and find that it had changed beyond all recognition. There are even lines of dialogue in my original notes which stayed more or less the same.*

*I'm a great believer in letting a story and its characters take on a life of their own when I'm writing a script. So, because I tend to let my writing go wherever the fancy takes me, I always make sure I have the whole thing mapped out in as much detail as I can muster beforehand. As you will see from the document below, that doesn't amount to that much detail at all, but it does give me something I can keep referring back to... just to make sure I'm on the right track.*

*There are two things that make me laugh about this document. Firstly, that Saloran Hardew was originally a man, so I referred to him as 'Hardew'. When he became a woman, I referred to her as 'Saloran'. Is that sexist? Secondly, I hadn't formulated a way of Kalendorf implanting a destructive impulse in Suz's mind. Considering this was a pretty pivotal plot element, the phrase 'in a clever way yet to be decided' hardly seems adequate forward planning!*

Two thousand five hundred years after the final events of Dalek War, the galaxy is sparsely populated and undeveloped. It was devastated 2,500 years ago by a terrible war that nobody really remembers. Populations were fragmented, technologies lost. There is no social/political cohesion in the galaxy. Many believe that galactic civilisation is on the brink of extinction.

A small alliance of races is attempting to co-ordinate efforts to re-establish order and prosperity in a largely lawless, poverty-stricken galaxy, but their resources are pitifully inadequate. They are known as the Galactic Union.

One man, Saloran Hardew, has made it his mission to discover what happened to the galaxy all those years ago. He is a learned and determined man. He has dedicated his whole life to his quest. Nothing else matters to him. In his heart, he knows that if the peoples of the galaxy do not discover the nature of the terrible fate which once befell their ancestors, then there is every chance the same thing may happen again. He believes that all attempts to re-establish galactic order and progress are short-sighted and foolish if lessons from the past are not learnt. His views are not widely shared. He is thought to be an eccentric and an obsessive. He is essentially an outcast from mainstream thinking and society (what little there is of either).

Saloran's quest has taken him to the planet Velyshaa. All his research has shown that the events which led to the 2,500-year-old catastrophe are connected with a being who originated on this planet. This being is known by many names – all of them variations of 'Dark One', 'Bringer of Death/Darkness' and the like. Saloran's controversial theory is that the historical figure upon whom this mythical fiend is based was a Knight of Velyshaa known as Kalendorf.

For some years now, Saloran has been in isolation, working amongst the ruins of the ancient Velyshaan civilisation. He is intent on discovering the truth about Kalendorf. He believes that this will unlock the secrets of the galaxy's terrible past.

One day, the tracking stations of the Galactic Union pick up a transmission fragment conveyed to them through a freak wormhole. The wormhole has caused the message to travel an incredible distance in a short amount of time. The Galactic Union's tracking stations would otherwise not have been able to pick up the message for centuries.

The transmission fragment is a distorted image. But analysis of the image reveals it to be an unidentified portion of a metallic object with a molecular structure similar to 2,500-year-old relics catalogued by Saloran Hardew, before he set off for Velyshaa. A junior member of the Union's ruling council, Siy Tarkov, brings the correlation to the attention of the council, insisting that Hardew should be contacted. The council are unimpressed, but agree to let Tarkov take the image to Hardew.

Tarkov makes the long journey to Velyshaa. He finds an embittered Hardew, but shows him the image. Hardew immediately spots the correlation, but cannot throw any further light on the origin or nature of the object. He says that maybe his latest findings will help. Tarkov begs him to tell him what he has discovered so far.

Hardew subjects the image to analysis by his computers... eventually, they will come up with a full image.

Hardew gives a potted and somewhat inaccurate history of what happened in Dalek Empire. He identifies the key players. Then the story moves forward a little.

We begin the Dalek War story...

We return to Hardew's 'narration' throughout, occasionally with conversations between him and Tarkov. Hardew uncovers more and more of what happened as he accesses the 'thought history' left behind by Kalendorf.

As the story unfolds (already plotted), we learn that Kalendorf and Mirana's plan was to give the Enemy Daleks Suz in order that they could have their Emperor back. (Suz contains the Emperor's celebratory matrix in condensed form.) In return, the Enemy Daleks will rid the galaxy of the Alternate Daleks.

Kalendorf explains that Suz has to do this. Alby is furious. His involvement in the plan was motivated purely by his desire to be with Suz again. Kalendorf joins psychically with Suz as he used to. They share something. She then understands and tells Alby she has to do this. Alby is convinced Kalendorf has 'brainwashed' Suz. But Suz leaves with the Daleks.

Alby tries to kill Kalendorf, but is killed in the fight/struggle.

The terrible war between the Daleks begins, with the old alliance forces now on the side of the Enemy Daleks. The war lasts for many years. There is terrible destruction.

The Mentor has one last conversation with Kalendorf. He is captured. The Mentor wants to know why he betrayed the Alternate Daleks, when all they wanted to do was make their universe a peaceful place. Kalendorf lists all the bad things the Alternate Daleks did in the name of 'peace' and 'order'. The Mentor says that the ends justify the means. Kalendorf disagrees. The Mentor says that their battle computers predict this war will never end and that it will eventually lead to the destruction of all living matter. Is Kalendorf prepared to let that happen rather than live under the protection of the Mentor and his Daleks?

Kalendorf says yes.

**MENTOR** I believe you. Then we will leave. Of course, you realise that the Enemy Daleks will betray you once we have gone. They will attempt to conquer your galaxy again.

**KALENDORF**  
**MENTOR**  
**KALENDORF**  
**MENTOR**  
**KALENDORF**

I know.  
And still you would prefer that?  
Perhaps we shall defeat them.  
You could not defeat them before.  
Perhaps things are different now.

The Mentor and his Daleks leave through the gateway. The Enemy Daleks destroy the gateway, sealing it forever.

Kalendorf is brought before the old Dalek Emperor... Except that it is now in the form of Suz. The Daleks plan to use her 'Angel of Mercy' image as a way of tricking the Earth Alliance (now broken and weary of war) into letting the old Daleks rule them again.

**KALENDORF**  
**SUZ/EMPEROR**  
**KALENDORF**  
**SUZ/EMPEROR**  
**KALENDORF**  
nature, isn't it? To  
your victory.  
**SUZ/EMPEROR**  
**KALENDORF**

You can't trick them if I tell them the truth.  
That is why you must die.  
It almost surprises me.  
That you are to die?  
No. That you are so predictable. But it's in your  
nature, to destroy, to betray. Nothing else matters except  
your victory.  
That is our strength.  
That is your weakness.

Kalendorf explains that he implanted a destructive impulse in Suz's mind. He activates it (in a clever way yet to be decided!). For a moment, the Emperor becomes Suz completely. She knows what she must do. The Dalek Supreme orders the immediate extermination of Karl and Suz, but Suz releases the destructive impulse through the Dalek command net. All Daleks are destroyed.

Back with Hardew and Tarkov... They hear Kalendorf's last thoughts. He warns that in all probability only the Daleks in our galaxy were destroyed. There are bound to be others on the Dalek home planet. The war with the Daleks will never be over. They will always be back.

Hardew's computer has finished its analysis of the transmitted image. It is a Dalek on a transolar disk. Tarkov reveals that the source of the transmission was beyond our galaxy.

**HARDEW**  
way.

Then they're out there. And they're on their



# DALEK WAR LIBERATION?

Nicholas Briggs: What we have here is the first version of the script that wasn't accidentally left on a train and lost. It's absolutely bizarre reading it, because I'd largely forgotten what I'd written. I think I felt I'd got myself into a rut and so I decided to start again, just bearing all of this stuff in mind. I think what we have in this version is far too much procedural, Star Trek-ish detail. I think, once I'd got that out of my system, I was able to write something a lot more concise and to do with characters rather than hardware and 'space'. I think a symptom of this is that I lost the 'Helm' character. That was all condensed into Marber and then Marber became a more interesting character. I think a lot of this version came straight from my initial impetus, which was from watching that famous war movie *The Cruel Sea* [1953]. I wanted to make this story about war and the business of prosecuting a war. I think that's still true of the finished production, but I hope it ended up also being to do with characters rather than limpet mines and the manifest of convoy K27!

To be honest, I'd completely forgotten that I'd given that first draft a title. The question mark was, I remember, very intentional, because I was asking the question of whether or not the new Daleks had truly liberated the humans from the old Daleks, or just re-enslaved them in a more subtle fashion.

I've no idea what the other chapters might have been called. There are two reasons I didn't give the second series chapter titles. One is that I hate it when things line up neatly. I'm a bit of an anarchist, and avoid conformity as often as possible, so on a gut level I liked the fact that the CD titles were in a format that was a bit different from the first series. The second reason is that I was worried that I might want to give a chapter a title with the word 'Dalek' in it. So it might become something like *Dalek Empire II: Dalek War – Chapter Three: Dalek Attack*. Too many Daleks! Although, arguably, you can never have too many Daleks.

## 1. Int. Cryo-Pod.

*SUZ's breathing. An impact 'clunk'. She murmurs, confused, incoherent. Returns to breathing. (The audience should, by no means, be certain who is making this noise.) Crossfade to:*

## 2. Int. Warship Victor. Control Deck.

*Chatter of crew activity in background. Scanning FX. Burble of electronic readouts.*

**HELM** Reading... debris... some... containers of some kind... Could be that supply convoy that went missing.

**MARBER** (Snaps) Which convoy?

**HELM** K27, sir. Reported drifting off course two days ago, just beyond the Stakris Nebula. Contact lost.

**MARBER** Any sign of life?

*Burble of readouts.*

**HELM** Hmm. Inconclusive.

**MARBER** (Snapping into action) Arm DX missiles. Activate the defence fields. Battle stations.

*Alarm sounds. Background chatter becomes more agitated. Footsteps. Electronic doors closing etc.*

**HELM** All sections securing for battle stations, sir.

*Comms bleep.*

**MARBER** Executive Officer Marber to Captain Mirana. We're –



**MIRANA** (*Distort. Weary*) I can hear the sirens, Marber. I'm on my way to the control deck. What've you got for me?

**MARBER** Drifting debris, probably from lost convoy K27. Must've been caught in an ambush. May well be booby-trapped, captain. They just love sticking limpet mines onto chunks of old spaceship.

### 3. Int. Cryo-Pod.

*SUZ breathing. Very eerie, mysterious music cue.*

### 4. Int. Warship Victor. Control Deck.

*Door opens. Brisk footsteps of MIRANA.*

**MARBER** Captain, we're ready to open fire.

**MIRANA** Any sign of limpet mines?

**HELM** No explosives registering, ma'am.

**MARBER** They rarely show up on scans, captain.

**MIRANA** Oh, they show up... if you look hard enough. Magnify the visual scan, please.

*FX of magnification.*

**MIRANA** What are *those*?

**HELM** Er... containers... or something. We spotted some earlier.  
*Burble of readout.*

**MIRANA** (*Reading*) Length two point five metres. One metre high... one metre deep. Hmm. (*To HELM*) Are we sure these are the remnants of convoy K27?

**HELM** Er... ?

**MARBER** With respect, does it matter, ma'am? We may be heading straight into a trap.

**MIRANA** Engines all stop.

**HELM** All stop, aye.

*Hum of engine rumble drops in pitch.*

**MIRANA** Does *that* satisfy you, Mr Marber?

**MARBER** (*Infuriated*) And now we're a sitting target.

**MIRANA** Continue scans for explosives and see if we can get hold of the manifest of convoy K27.

**HELM** Aye, captain.

**MIRANA** Get me an encrypted hyper-beam link to Fleet Command.  
*Flagship Courageous.*

**HELM** Patching through.

*Comms bleep.*

**MIRANA** This is left flank scout 9, Warship Victor calling Fleet Command.

*Hyperbeam FX.*

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Fleet Command. Kalendorf. This had better be good, Mirana.

**MIRANA** We may have found what's left of K27.

*Pause. (They both speak carefully. There's hidden meaning in what they say.)*

**KALENDORF** (*Distort. Hesitant*) Has it... has it been totally destroyed?

**MIRANA** There's a lot of debris drifting in space. A number of containers.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Containers?

*Crossfade to:*

### **5. Int. Courageous. Bridge.**

**KALENDORF** What sort of containers?

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) We don't know. Could be food. Fuel supplies.

**KALENDORF** Very well. If you're sure there's no sign of explosives, scoop them up. Take them onboard.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** That may not be wise.

**KALENDORF** We need all the food and fuel we can get our hands on.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Analysis of Enemy Dalek tactics suggests that explosive devices may have been concealed in the wreckage.

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) We're not reading any sign of explosives.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Enemy Dalek explosive devices are often undetectable.

**KALENDORF** Only when captains aren't thorough enough. Mirana, make an exhaustive scan for explosives before you bring the containers aboard.

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Already underway, sir.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** That course of action is not advisable.

**KALENDORF** I appreciate your caution, but I trust Captain Mirana's judgement. Is that understood?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Understood.

**KALENDORF** The matter is in your hands, Mirana. Kalendorf out.  
*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) Good luck, Mirana.

### **6. Int. Mentor's Chamber.**

*THE MENTOR's voice is only slightly distorted by Dalek modulation. The sound of bridge activity distorted in the background.*

**THE MENTOR** Now that... is *interesting*, Kalendorf. You really are... an intriguing creature.

*On the distorted bridge activity, an alarm begins to sound. Crossfade to:*

### **7. Int. Courageous. Bridge.**

*Alarm sounding.*

**KALENDORF** Report!

**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Scanners indicate Enemy Dalek fleet approaching on attack vector.

**KALENDORF** Here they come again. Looks like they were hiding in the asteroid belt this time. Bring the fleet to full battle readiness.

**ALTERNATE DALEKS** We obey.

**KALENDORF** Navigation Officer.

**NAV OFFICER** Sir?

**KALENDORF** Send deployment signals to the fleet immediately. Attack pattern Orion.

**NAV OFFICER** Pattern Orion. Confirmed, sir.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** All weapons now at full power.

**KALENDORF** Activate defence net.

**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Activating.

*Defence net activation FX. A fizzing, crackling sound.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Defence net power now at maximum.

*Comms bleeps.*

**NAV OFFICER** All fleet vessels signal they are now locked in synchronous attack pattern Orion.

**KALENDORF** Signal to all vessels. Maximum attack speed. Now!

### **8. Int. Victor. Airlock Area.**

*Airlock door closes.*

**CREWMAN** All right! Shift 'em to the loading bay.

*Electronic crane noise.*

**MIRANA** (*Approaching*) Wait a minute. Shut that off!

*Crane winds down.*

**CREWMAN** Something the matter, ma'am?

**MIRANA** Were there any more like these three?

**CREWMAN** Plenty... but these were the only ones intact. D'you know what they are?

**MIRANA** Do you?

**CREWMAN** Coffins, we reckoned.

**MIRANA** Coffins?

**CREWMAN** You know - what they used to put dead people in. The smashed up ones we found... well, there was bodies in all of them. Skeletons, really.

*Distant tapping.*

**MIRANA** Sssh!

**CREWMAN** What's that?

**MIRANA** It's coming from one of these containers. Hold on...

*She gets out a scanner from her pocket. Rustle of material. Tracking bleep.*

**MIRANA** I'm getting a life reading.

**CREWMAN** From which one?

**MIRANA** That one... There.

*Comms bleep.*

**MARBER** (*Distort*) Control Deck to Captain.

**MIRANA** Hang fire, Marber. I'm busy.

**MARBER** (*Distort*) Ma'am, our long-range scanners indicate the fleet has engaged the enemy.

**MIRANA** (*Concentrating on her scanner*) Very well, Mr Marber. But that's their problem. Have we received new orders?

**MARBER** (*Distort. Reluctant*) Well... no.

**MIRANA** Then there's nothing we can do to help.

*Comms bleep.*

**MIRANA** Crewman... let's get this thing open.

**CREWMAN** Right. This looks like the door release. But shouldn't we get security to -

**MIRANA** Open it!

*Clunk, hiss and screech of pod opening... [end of draft]*

# DALEK WAR CHAPTER ONE

## Prologue.

**KALENDORF** And now we're alone. Do you understand me?

**DALEK** I... understand.

**KALENDORF** I don't want anything from you. I'm just going to touch your casing... tell you something... with my mind. I have something you want. Something you need.

*Crash in theme tune.*

## 1. Int. Planet Velyshaa. Saloran's Ship.

*SALORAN is a woman. TARKOV is a man. (This section consists of extracts from a scene in Chapter Four. It should be recorded as the full scene in Chapter Four and edited into the form in which it appears here.)*

**TARKOV** A... Dalek? What's a 'Dalek'?

**SALORAN** They were a military power from another galaxy. Back in Kalendorf's time, they invaded.

**TARKOV** (*Incredulous*) Invaded the entire galaxy?

**SALORAN** Yes.

**TARKOV** And that's what caused the Great Catastrophe...

**SALORAN** Not exactly.

**TARKOV** Then what?

**SALORAN** Computer, commence playback. Look at the screen.

**COMPUTER** Playback commencing.<sup>1</sup>

*Buzz of computer activity.*

**TARKOV** What...? What am I looking at?

**SALORAN** A sort of decoding of some of the earliest images I experienced in the burial chamber.

## CHAPTER ONE CD TRACK LISTINGS

- |                                   |                                  |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Prologue                        | 13 Susan Mendes must be located! | 26 Cryo-sleep                    |
| 2 Theme                           | 14 Heavy-duty casing             | 27 Taken to the Mentor           |
| 3 What's a Dalek?                 | 15 The Pkowik System             | 28 Many questions                |
| 4 Alliance fleet now under attack | 16 Cryogenic pod                 | 29 ...new Daleks?                |
| 5 Kalendorf was loyal...          | 17 Risk everything               | 30 Strength of feeling           |
| 6 Those are our orders            | 18 Under heavy fire              | 31 Fears                         |
| 7 Designated co-ordinates         | 19 Troubled                      | 32 The mind of the Dalek Emperor |
| 8 Enemy Dalek casualties?         | 20 Wishful thinking              | 33 Planet Emmeron                |
| 9 I do so enjoy our conversations | 21 Not a word                    | 34 Cut-off                       |
| 10 Scan commencing                | 22 Blast damage                  | 35 Glorious Mentor               |
| 11 Recreational image             | 23 Dalek solar defence fleet     | 36 Undercover contacts           |
| 12 How many pods are there?       | 24 Congratulations, Kalendorf    | 37 Coming in to dock             |
|                                   | 25 One thing at a time           | 38 Defensive positions           |
|                                   |                                  | 39 Trailers                      |

**TARKOV** Those are spacecraft... Enormous spacecraft, moving between star systems at incredible speed. And planets... huge populations... cities... cities full of people, creatures.<sup>2</sup>  
*Crossfade into the image. The sounds of stardrives. Bustling crowds. A brief clip of Vega News from Invasion of the Daleks.<sup>3</sup> Crossfade back to...*  
*Pause.*

**SALORAN** You said you wanted to know everything I'd discovered.

**TARKOV** Yes.

*(Appropriate clips from Dalek Empire fade in and out of the background during this.)*

**SALORAN** It's hard to believe, I know. But this is what the galaxy was like back then. The Earth Alliance had established peace... until the Daleks invaded. When they did, Kalendorf was caught in the middle of it.<sup>4</sup>  
*Fade in some of the Dalek attack on Vega VI in background.*

**SALORAN** Somehow he became involved with an Earth woman called Suz. They were captured by the Daleks and, it seems, agreed to work for them. Kalendorf felt he had betrayed everything he believed in, just for the sake of survival. With his help, the Daleks continued their ruthless subjugation of the civilised worlds. It's not clear what the nature of his feelings for Suz were, but there was a special bond between them. The years passed. Kalendorf and Suz continued with their betrayal. Then one day, the Daleks killed Suz. This may have been the trigger for Kalendorf to turn against the Daleks. We don't know for sure. The Daleks had successfully conquered the galaxy, but against all the odds, he apparently led a rebellion against them. It looked like the rebellion might succeed; but the Daleks had a secret strategy. Somehow they had the means to create a dimensional gateway into an alternative universe. And from that universe, they intended to gain the wisdom and the power to rule the entire cosmos. They would join forces with an invincible Dalek army from another dimension.

*Extract from final scene of Project Infinity.*

**SALORAN** But that alliance was not to be. A terrible war between the two Dalek factions began, with Kalendorf and his trusted lieutenants, Alby Brook and Mirana, rallying the rebel humans to fight on the side of the Daleks from the other universe. Kalendorf had swapped sides again. And once again, as the years passed, he was to realise the route to victory and peace would not be an easy one.

## **2. Int. Flagship Courageous.**

*A huge explosion. Cries of wounded crew members. An alarm sounds. Other explosions continue throughout.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Alliance Fleet now under attack. Heavy fire from Enemy Dalek forces advancing from Earth's Solar System.

**KALENDORF** Well, we knew they weren't going to give it up without a fight. Patch me through to all Alliance ships in the area.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I obey.

*Comms beep.*

**KALENDORF** *(Rousing speech)* This is Fleet Commander Kalendorf aboard Flagship *Courageous*. This is the beginning of the final battle. It's the culmination of a long, hard fight... and I know that all of you have suffered. We've all lost friends and loved ones. And there's much hard

fighting still to come. But we and our Dalek allies are on the brink of victory. This is the largest Alliance fleet ever assembled. Remember that. Earth's Solar System is the Enemy Daleks' last stronghold. When we beat them here, we will be rid of them... forever. Good luck to you all.

*Comms beep.*

**KALENDORF** Signal the attack to all flotillas.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I obey.

*Signalling FX.*

**KALENDORF** Increase speed to maximum. Open fire, main armament.

*Low rumble of engines fades in and slowly rises in pitch.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Speed increasing.

*Huge report of ship's guns firing.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Main armament firing.

**KALENDORF** *(To himself)* This is it.

*Firing continues.*

### **3. Int. Planet Velyshaa. Saloran's Ship.**

*(This scene is not part of Chapter Four and should be recorded as it appears here.)*

**TARKOV** So now... Kalendorf was loyal to these... other Daleks?

**SALORAN** He was... for a time. But it seems he had given other orders to Mirana and Alby. Orders that he hoped and believed his Dalek allies did not know about.

### **4. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

*Chatter of bridge activity.*

**MARBER** But, Captain Mirana, these co-ordinates... They put us on a course away from the main advance.

**MIRANA** I'm aware of that, but those are our orders.

**MARBER** But... I don't understand.

**MIRANA** I'm not asking you to understand, Mr Marber. I'm expecting you to carry out the orders given to us by the fleet commander.

**MARBER** Perhaps there's been a mistake.

**MIRANA** *(Cold)* There is no mistake.

### **5. Int. Gunship MX4.**

*Engines wind down.*

**DRUDGER** Alby Brook, we have reached our designated co-ordinates.

**ALBY** Thank you, Drudger. *(Overly innocent)* Any ships in the area by any chance?

**DRUDGER** No Enemy Dalek ships.

**ALBY** That's not what I asked.

**DRUDGER** One Alliance cargo freighter.

**ALBY** Let's have a look at her.

*Screen activation FX.*

**DRUDGER** On screen. Cargo Freighter *Omega N7*.

**ALBY** Forward guns. Target their transmitter array and engines.

**DRUDGER** I must point out that Cargo Freighter *Omega N7* is an Alliance ship and as such is under our protection.

**ALBY** Well, let's give her a bit of friendly fire, shall we? Are the transmitter array and engines targeted?

*Targeting bleeps.*

**DRUDGER** Confirmed.

**ALBY** Just a short burst, please. Fire.

*Guns firing. Crackle of explosions on screen.*

**ALBY** Report.

**DRUDGER** Cargo Freighter *Omega N7* transmitter array and engines destroyed.

**ALBY** Any crew on board?

**DRUDGER** Two Alliance Dalek drones.

**ALBY** Just as I thought. Well... they shouldn't give us too much trouble, should they?

## **6. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.**

*Sounds of explosions on screen. Alarms sounding. Chatter of technicians, human and Alliance Dalek.*

**TECH 1** Energy levels holding. Generator pod 7 signals coolant requirements increasing. Allocate 10 per cent coolant increase to pod 7. *More background 'techno-babble' lines.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Alliance Fleet attack formation holding. No casualties.

**KALENDORF** Enemy Dalek casualties?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Three ships disabled. One destroyed.

**KALENDORF** *(To himself)* All rather modest... so far. *(To DALEK)* Project the holographic battle plan, please.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I obey.

*Holographic projector FX.*

**KALENDORF** Wait a minute... What's that? There.

*Holographic zoom FX.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Focusing on that grid reference.

*A tiny bleeping alarm.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Additional Enemy Dalek forces located.

**KALENDORF** They're despatching a reserve flotilla to outflank us from above and below.

*Bleep of holographic FX.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Agreed. I will deploy our rear attack force to 360 degree defence co-ordinates.

**KALENDORF** *(To himself)* There's a good boy. Well done.

*Bleeping of signals received.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Scanners indicate that a second wave of Enemy Dalek ships will outnumber our fleet.

**KALENDORF** *(Coldly)* I know... I know. But they're not here yet, are they? Let's give the enemy a bloody nose before we even think about retreating.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Bloody nose?

**KALENDORF** We currently outnumber their first wave, agreed?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Agreed.

**KALENDORF** So let's exploit our temporary advantage.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Understood.

*Bleep of signal.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You are summoned to receive a communiqué from the Mentor.

**KALENDORF** (*Disgruntled sigh to himself. Then...*) Very well. Continue with the attack. Press it home until you receive further orders from me. I won't be long.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I obey.

*KALENDORF's footsteps. Door opens and closes. The chatter of the bridge is immediately cut off as he walks along a metallic corridor. He stops.*

**KALENDORF** Security clearance: Kalendorf.

*Scanning FX.*

**SCANNER** Voice and retinal recognition. Kalendorf. You may enter executive communication chamber.

*Door opens.*

### **7. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber.**

*Footsteps as KALENDORF enters chamber. Door closes.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Distort*) Holographic transmission commencing. Holographic transmission *FX.* The MENTOR's voice is female, lightly brushed with a Dalek-like effect.

**MENTOR** Please forgive me for interrupting you at such a moment.

**KALENDORF** (*Over-practised politeness*) That is your right, Mentor.

**MENTOR** And I do so enjoy our conversations. I find them... stimulating.

**KALENDORF** Well... I'm glad, Mentor.

**MENTOR** We have come a long way, together, have we not?

**KALENDORF** Indeed.

**MENTOR** Many years of war. And now we stand upon the brink of victory. A victory for galactic peace.

**KALENDORF** The battle has not been won yet.

**MENTOR** Ah, you are as cautious as always. It is a quality I admire in you, Kalendorf. (*Warmly*) Have I not told you that before?

**KALENDORF** You have told me many times, Mentor.

**MENTOR** Of course. I am teasing you. That is the action of a friend, would you agree?

**KALENDORF** (*Caught a little off-guard*) Er... Yes, yes, I suppose it is.

**MENTOR** And we are friends, are we not, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** (*Carefully*) We have been allies for some years now.

**MENTOR** I see you are cautious even with your friendship.

**KALENDORF** As you say, Mentor. It is a quality for which you admire me.

**MENTOR** And your intellect. I admire your cleverness. It has won us many battles. Battles that my Daleks would not otherwise have won.

**KALENDORF** You are too kind.

**MENTOR** No.

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** ...is there anything in particular I can assist you with... Mentor?

*Pause.*

**MENTOR** I see you are anxious to return to commanding the battle. That is understandable. But please do not be anxious. My monitors tell me that our attack is succeeding. The Enemy Daleks have suffered further casualties. There is only minor damage to the spearhead of our fleet.



**KALENDORF** I'm relieved to hear it. But you're right, I am anxious to return to the bridge, so unless there's -

**MENTOR** I am intrigued that you are aware of the second wave of enemy ships, but have made no provision to counter them.

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** I am... gratified at the Mentor's interest in my strategy. My intention is to inflict the maximum amount of damage possible on the Enemy Daleks' primary attack force, which we currently out-gun and outnumber. I calculate that our reinforcements will have arrived before their second wave engages us.

**MENTOR** There is a high element of risk in your strategy.

**KALENDORF** There is always risk.

*Pause. During this, we become aware of KALENDORF's breathing. It is, perhaps, just a little too controlled.*

**MENTOR** You are my Fleet Commander, Kalendorf. I trust you.

**KALENDORF** (About to leave) Thank you, Mentor.

**MENTOR** I look forward to further stimulating conversations with you.

**KALENDORF** Of course. Now, if you'd be kind enough to excuse me, I must -

**MENTOR** Forgive me, I feel somewhat foolish troubling you with such a trivial matter, but I find myself wondering if you are aware of the plight of Cargo Freighter *Omega N7*.

**KALENDORF** Cargo Freighter...? No, I'm afraid I've been too concerned with military matters to -

**MENTOR** My monitors tell me that Cargo Freighter *Omega N7* has come under attack. Indications are that it has been destroyed.

**KALENDORF** What was its last known position?

**MENTOR** Please observe the star map.

*Holographic FX. A bleep.*

**MENTOR** Here.

**KALENDORF** That's several star systems away from Earth. I haven't received any reports from that sector for some time.

**MENTOR** Were you aware of Enemy Dalek activity in that sector?

**KALENDORF** No, but -

**MENTOR** It seems odd that one of our freighters could be attacked so far from Earth's Solar System, when we know that all Enemy Dalek forces are now concentrated in that system.

**KALENDORF** As I was about to point out, Mentor... with respect... There are still isolated enemy raiding ships scattered throughout the galaxy. Although their survival is regrettable, your own battle computers assess that they are not a significant threat. And I might add that I agree with that assessment.

**MENTOR** No doubt the crew of Cargo Freighter *Omega N7* would not so readily agree. You may go.

*Ominous music cue.*

**KALENDORF** (Trying not to sound troubled) Thank you, Mentor.

*Footsteps as KALENDORF heads for the door. Door opens and closes as he leaves. Music builds.*

### **8. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

*Engines wind down.*

**MARBER** Bridge to Captain Mirana. We have reached our... designated co-ordinates.

**MIRANA** (*Distort*) Thank you, Marber. I want a full scan of the immediate area.

**MARBER** Scan commencing, Captain.  
*Scanning FX begin and continue. Door opens. MIRANA's footsteps as she enters the bridge.*

**MIRANA** (*Approaching*) Have you found anything?

**MARBER** Are you expecting to find something out here in the middle of nowhere?  
*A tiny bleeping alarm.*

**MIRANA** What's that?  
*Burble of readout.*

**MARBER** Space debris. Looks like the remains of a ship. Maybe a freighter.

**MIRANA** One of ours?

**MARBER** Yes... scan confirms that.

**MIRANA** Within signalling distance?

**MARBER** It's just debris.

**MIRANA** There may be survivors. Activate a comms beam.  
*Comms beep.*

**MARBER** Activated.

**MIRANA** This is Captain Mirana of the Alliance Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Please respond in any way if you can hear this.<sup>6</sup>  
*Pause.*

**MARBER** We're now closing. I can give you a visual.

**MIRANA** Do it.  
*Screen activates. Music cue of doom.*

**MARBER** Er... I don't think there are going to be any survivors.

**MIRANA** What are those things? There...

**MARBER** Looks like the cargo... Container pods spilled out over a thousand kilometres of deep space and spreading.

**MIRANA** Well... waste not, want not. Activate the forward grappling arms. Let's bring those pods aboard.  
*Scanning FX.*

**MIRANA** What are you doing?

**MARBER** Scanning them. We want to know *what* we're bringing aboard, don't we? I mean, it could be toxic waste, or something equally nasty.

**MIRANA** Not very likely.  
*Scan negative beep.*

**MIRANA** What does it read?

**MARBER** Er... nothing. Absolutely nothing. Like they're deliberately shielded from scanning. Perhaps it would be best just to log a report, tag them with a nav buoy and leave them out here.

**MIRANA** Your concern is noted, Mr Marber. But I'd like you to bring them aboard as soon as possible.

**MARBER** But -<sup>7</sup>

**MIRANA** - As soon as possible, Mr Marber.

## 9. Int. Gunship *MX4*.

**DRUDGER** Do you wish a change of recreational image on the holographic projector?

**ALBY** (*His mind elsewhere*) Hmm? What?

**DRUDGER** You have been looking at this image for precisely three hours, fifty-six minutes and thirteen seconds.

**ALBY** (*Mocking*) Thirteen seconds, eh?

**DRUDGER** Fourteen seconds.

**ALBY** Don't get cheeky, mate. Anyway, it's none of your business who or what I choose to look at.

**DRUDGER** I am concerned for the mental well-being and efficiency of the human occupant of this craft. The human mind needs stimulation in order to stay alert. There are a variety of images in the ship's databanks which might more usefully engage your - <sup>8</sup>

**ALBY** Oh yeah? And what's wrong with this one?

**DRUDGER** The face of Susan Mendes may be aesthetically pleasing to you, but a view of the L'Garshoo Nebula, for instance, might -

**ALBY** Woah, wait... what the hell do you know about Susan Mendes? That's a private image I loaded into the ship's computer just before we set.<sup>9</sup>

**DRUDGER** A similar likeness is logged in current Alliance security dispatches. 'Susan Mendes, humanoid from planet Vega VI subjected to conversion processes by Enemy Dalek forces. Processing deemed too far advanced for reversal, by decree of the Mentor. All such humanoids have been scheduled for destruction by -'

**ALBY** (*Losing his temper*) Shut it! Just shut up! (*Recovers*) I know all that. Deactivate image.  
*Image deactivation FX.*

**ALBY** Any news on the battle?

**DRUDGER** Now monitoring fleet transmission frequencies at long range.

*Burble and static of frequencies monitored. They continue to burble.*

**DRUDGER** Indications are that Alliance forces are inflicting severe losses on the Enemy Dalek fleet.

**ALBY** (*To himself*) Well done, Karl. Ever the consummate professional.

*A sudden, insistent pulse breaks through the burbling.*

**ALBY** What's that?

**DRUDGER** An unidentified signal from another source.

**ALBY** Isolate it.

*All other burble and static fades, to leave the one insistent pulse.*

**ALBY** Where's that coming from?

*The signal stops abruptly.*

**DRUDGER** Transmission has ceased.

**ALBY** All right, where was it coming from?

**DRUDGER** Attempting to locate.

*Locator FX bleeps.*

**DRUDGER** Co-ordinates 0923491274/9834-3874.

**ALBY** Is that far from here?

**DRUDGER** At extreme range, in the Pkowik System.

**ALBY** How long to get there at maximum speed?

**DRUDGER** Three solar days. But what would be the purpose of locating the source of this unidentified signal - ?

**ALBY** It isn't unidentified. I know what it is.  
**DRUDGER** Please elaborate.  
**ALBY** Set a course for those co-ordinates and don't be so nosy.

### 10. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Cargo Bay.

*A large crane lowers a pod. It hits the deck with a metallic clank.*

**MIRANA** Is that the last of them?

**CREWMAN** Yes, Captain.

**MIRANA** How many pods are there?

**CREWMAN** Er... about sixty or so... I think. Sorry, I didn't know you wanted them counted, ma'am.

**MIRANA** Very well, crewman. You may go.

**CREWMAN** Ma'am.

*He walks off into distance. A door opens and closes in the background as he leaves.*

**MIRANA** (To herself) Now then...

*A rustle in her pocket. She handles something plastic. A click of a switch. A beeping sound.*

**MIRANA** Where exactly are you?

*Footsteps. The beeping continues.*

**MARBER** Captain?

**MIRANA** (Sharp intake of breath) Marber!

*The bleeper is hastily switched off.*

**MIRANA** What are you doing here?

**MARBER** I was curious. If I didn't know better, I'd say you were looking for something in particular.

**MIRANA** If you didn't know better.

**MARBER** Do you know what's in these pods, Captain? Did you know they'd be out here?

**MIRANA** Mr Marber. I see that your commendable curiosity has gotten the better of you.

**MARBER** Captain, I feel it's my duty to -

**MIRANA** (Bluffing) Mr Marber... I'm afraid I can't discuss my top-secret orders with you.

**MARBER** 'Top-secret'?

**MIRANA** Yes. Classified. For my eyes only.

**MARBER** But I'm your first officer. I'm usually -

**MIRANA** (Trying to humour him) I know, Marber, I know. And believe you me, I would like to take such a trusted officer as your good self into my confidence, but... (Trails off)

**MARBER** I understand, Captain.

**MIRANA** There is one thing you can do for me, though, Marber.

**MARBER** Yes, Captain?

**MIRANA** I'm expecting to rendezvous with another ship in the next few hours. I need you on the bridge to make sure we don't miss that rendezvous. (Pause) If you'd be so kind.

**MARBER** (A little flustered) Er... yes, of course, Captain. Of course. I'm sorry to have... er... sorry if I've in any way -

**MIRANA** It's okay, Marber. I appreciate your concern. But I just need you to be on the bridge right now.

**MARBER** Yes, Captain.

*He walks off. The door opens and shuts as he leaves. Comms beep.*

**MIRANA** Dr Johnstone.

**JOHNSTONE** (Distort) Yes, Captain?

**MIRANA** I need you down here in the cargo bay. Right away. It's time.

**JOHNSTONE** (Distort) Understood. On my way now.

*Comms beep.*

**MIRANA** Now... where was I?

*The beeping of her tracker clicks on again. She walks slowly. Music begins to build. Suddenly, the tracker beeps excitedly.*

**MIRANA** Aha! And there you are. Not long now...

*Musical crescendo.*

### **11. Int. Earth. Enemy Dalek Control.**

*Classic Dalek door opens and closes.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes must be located!

**DALEKS** We obey!!!

**DALEK SUPREME** Order our raiding party in the Pkowitz System to proceed with phase two of their mission now that they have completed their primary task.

**DALEK** Our signals beyond the Earth's Solar System are being jammed by the attacking Alliance forces, but all indications are that our raiding party will now proceed to locate their secondary target.

**DALEK SUPREME** Susan Mendes must be located!!! Report status of the Alliance attack on this solar system.<sup>10</sup>

**DALEK 1** Our defence fleet is suffering heavy losses. It will be totally annihilated before our second wave is in position to engage Human Alliance fleet.<sup>11</sup>

**DALEK 2** By that time, the Alliance fleet will be reinforced.

**DALEK SUPREME** Will our second wave be defeated?

**DALEK 1** Our battle computers predict a 60 per cent probability of defeat for our forces.

**DALEK SUPREME** Satisfactory. Kalendorf's fleet must not enter this solar system before our work here is completed. Is that understood?

**DALEKS** Understood.

**DALEK SUPREME** The retrieval of our Emperor is of foremost importance. All other concerns are secondary. Only the Emperor can attain victory for the Daleks. Victory for the Daleks! Victory for the Daleks!

**DALEKS** (Joining in) Victory for the Daleks! Victory for the Daleks! Victory for the Daleks! Victory for the Daleks!

### **12. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Cargo Bay.**

*Cutting equipment is burning into metal – much 'screeching' and spraying of sparks. Cutting equipment then winds down.*

**MIRANA** Phew. That should do it. (Noises of effort as she shifts it) A huge 'clunk' as the top of a pod falls to the deck.

**JOHNSTONE** That was pretty heavy-duty casing all right.

**MIRANA** Yeah.

**JOHNSTONE** I'm surprised your scanner was able to read through all that.

**MIRANA** It wasn't. The pod was particle-tagged for us before the freighter set off.

**JOHNSTONE** Lucky.

**MIRANA** Luck doesn't come into it, Doctor. We've been planning this for months. Can you get the inner container open?

**JOHNSTONE** Hmm... Looks like a fairly standard cryogenic pod. I'll need to take it to the infirmary first. Get me one of those grav-pads, would you, please?

**MIRANA** (*Frustrated*) But... Can't we just open it here?

**JOHNSTONE** I have to equalise the temperature first, Mirana. And we'll need a full revival kit on hand in case... Well, we don't know exactly how long the patient's been under and what side effects there might be.

### 13. Int. Gunship MK4.

*Engines at full power.*

**DRUDGER** We are now approaching the Pkowik System.

**ALBY** Good. Before you make me some more coffee... anything on the long-range scanners? Any sign of that transmission again?

**DRUDGER** Negative on both counts. Energy scans are being inhibited by the proximity of an uncharted particle cloud.

**ALBY** Particle cloud? What's one of those?

**DRUDGER** 'Particle cloud' is a generic term for any spatial phenomenon on which there is no adequate information.

**ALBY** In other words, something you know nothing about is stopping us from finding out what's in this system?

**DRUDGER** Correct.

**ALBY** Let's try the old-fashioned way, then. Maximum magnification on visual.<sup>12</sup>

*Visual magnification FX.*

**ALBY** Right... now... I'm guessing that's the particle cloud.

**DRUDGER** Correct.

**ALBY** Blimey, how big is that thing?

**DRUDGER** I estimate approximately three million cubic kilometres in mass.

**ALBY** That's... er... big. How come it's uncharted?

**DRUDGER** Unknown.

**ALBY** All right... Now, pan left a bit.<sup>13</sup>

*Visual scan FX.*

**ALBY** Down a bit - Woah! Stop! What's that? Can we get in closer?<sup>14</sup>

**DRUDGER** We are closing on the Pkowik System as we speak, but further visual enhancement is not possible.

**ALBY** It looks... artificial?

**DRUDGER** Visual configuration suggests a large, manufactured object or collection of objects.

**ALBY** (*Musing*) A space station or something like that... (*To himself*) Damn, damn, damn... This is bleedin' important, isn't it?

**DRUDGER** Please elaborate.

**ALBY** Never mind, Drudger... Never mind. Right. Well... (*To himself*) Sorry, Mirana, but you're just going to have to wait for me. (*To DRUDGER*) Alter course to head directly for it.

**DRUDGER** Confirmed.  
**ALBY** Maybe that's where the signal came from.  
**DRUDGER** I would be in a better position to give an answer if you informed me of the nature of the signal.  
**ALBY** Nosy parker.  
**DRUDGER** Please elaborate. The signal emanates from a 'Nosy Parker'?  
**ALBY** Huh. Well, I suppose there's no harm in telling you. That signal was a distress call from the Emperor of the Daleks.

#### 14. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Infirmary.

*Medical equipment bleeping.*

**JOHNSTONE** Pressure and temperature equalisation of the cryogenic pod in... (*reading it off a display*) thirty-four seconds.

**MIRANA** (*Edgy*) Is that revival kit ready?

**JOHNSTONE** It's ready. Don't worry.

*Comms bleep.*

**MIRANA** Captain to bridge. Marber?

**MARBER** (*Distort*) Captain. Still no sign of that rendezvous ship.

**MIRANA** Even at long range?

**MARBER** (*Distort*) Nothing at all, ma'am.

**MIRANA** (*Frustrated sigh*) Thank you, Mr Marber.

*Comms bleep off.*

**JOHNSTONE** Twenty-two seconds.

*A clunk and hiss. Little alarms buzz excitedly.*

**JOHNSTONE** Clamps releasing.

**MIRANA** Is that *supposed* to be happening?

**JOHNSTONE** I think so.

**MIRANA** You're never certain about anything, are you, Johnstone?

**JOHNSTONE** I find it's the best policy. Nothing in the universe is ever certain. Nine seconds.

**MIRANA** Are you certain about that?

**JOHNSTONE** Relatively. Five, four, three, two, one.

*A final clunk. A whirr of the pod opening. Hissing of cold gas escaping.*

**JOHNSTONE** Pod opening.

**MIRANA** I noticed that.<sup>15</sup>

*Pause as the hissing subsides.*

**MIRANA** Is... is she alive?

*Burble of medical equipment.*

**JOHNSTONE** It would seem so.

*SUZ exhales.*

**JOHNSTONE** I don't think we're going to need the revival kit. (*Suddenly alarmed*) Er... what are you doing?

*A gun cocks.*

**MIRANA** Taking precautions.

**JOHNSTONE** I don't really approve of guns in my infirmary.

**MIRANA** I take it you'd be even less approving of an Enemy Dalek agent trying to throttle you?

**JOHNSTONE** Is that what she is?

**MIRANA** As you say, Doctor... Nothing in the universe is ever certain.

**JOHNSTONE** (*Dubious*) Very amusing. Would you like me to wake her up or administer a lethal injection?

**MIRANA** (*Frustrated sigh*)

**JOHNSTONE** What's the matter?

**MIRANA** (*Preoccupied*) I was hoping Alby would be here by now.

**JOHNSTONE** I must warn you that any delay might cause cerebral degradation.

**MIRANA** Then you'd better get on with it. (*To herself*) Sorry, Alby.

**JOHNSTONE** Right... Here we go.

*Hypo-injection FX. SUZ gives a sudden gasp and exhales loudly. She breathes in and out, apparently agitated. Medical equipment lets out a little bleeping alarm.*

**JOHNSTONE** Blood pressure and heart rate rising a little.

**MIRANA** Is she going to be all right?

**JOHNSTONE** She's... a little agitated, it would seem. Try talking to her.

**MIRANA** Suz? Susan. It's all right. You're safe now.

*Her agitated breathing continues. She starts to murmur in distress, as if having a nightmare. The medical equipment alarms increase in intensity.*

**JOHNSTONE** She's going into shock.

**MIRANA** Is there anything you can do?

**JOHNSTONE** I'm not sure. If I knew the exact nature of the process she's undergone, I might... but as it is, if I take a chance... it might be fatal.

**MIRANA** Great. (*Determined*) Susan! Susan! Listen to me! Wake up! Wake - up!

*SUZ's breathing suddenly stops. The medical alarms stop.*

**MIRANA** Oh my God, what have I done?

*Burble of medical equipment.*

**JOHNSTONE** (*Incredulous*) I think you've done it.

**MIRANA** Done what?

**JOHNSTONE** Everything's returned to normal.

**MIRANA** Susan?

**SUZ** (*As in her death scene*) Nooooooo!!!

(*End of promo CD for DWM.*)<sup>16</sup>

### 15. Int. Saloran's Ship. Planet Velyshaa.

**TARKOV** (*Incredulous*) So Kalendorf was prepared to risk everything... just to recover this Susan Mendes.

**SALORAN** Yes. She was important to him... in many ways.

**TARKOV** Seems that he was quite fond of switching sides, doesn't it?

**SALORAN** He was a pragmatist.

**TARKOV** An opportunist, you mean?

**SALORAN** (*Solemn*) No... no, I don't think so. I think he always knew what he had to do.

### 16. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.

*Distorted sounds of the continuing space battle in the background. Chatter of bridge activity. An alarm bleeps. (KALENDORF is tense, worrying about the situation with SUZ, MIRANA and ALBY.)*



**KALENDORF** (*Agitated*) Mr Herrick! What's happening?  
**HERRICK** Our left lower flank are slipping out of formation, sir.  
**KALENDORF** (*Tense*) What's the matter with them? Have you signalled them?  
**HERRICK** Er, several times, sir. But they *are* coming under heavy fire.  
**KALENDORF** What have we got down there? Mainly Dalek drone ships?  
**HERRICK** Er... yes, sir. The battleship *Repulse* has had to withdraw for repairs to her main drive.  
**KALENDORF** (*More confidential*) That's the trouble with those drones. With their human sector commander gone, they lose the power of initiative.  
**HERRICK** They're still giving the Enemy Daleks a good pounding, sir.  
**KALENDORF** Yes... yes... Very well. I suppose we can't ask for any more than that. But - but keep an eye on them, Herrick!<sup>17</sup>  
**HERRICK** Yes, sir. I will, sir.  
**KALENDORF** (*Lost in troubled thoughts*) Good... good.  
**HERRICK** Are you all right, sir?  
**KALENDORF** Hm? What? Yes. Yes, I'm... all right.  
*Crossfade to:*

#### 17. Int. Mentor's Chamber.

*The sounds of the Courageous's bridge distorted as if on a screen.*

**MENTOR** (*To herself. Suspicions growing*) You seem troubled, Kalendorf. More troubled than I have ever seen you before.

#### 18. Int. Gunship MK4.

**ALBY** Is it just my wishful thinking, Drudger, or have we cleared the influence of that particle cloud?  
**DRUDGER** You are largely correct, Alby Brook. Scanners are now returning to near normal levels of efficiency.  
**ALBY** Let's have another butcher's at that space station thing, then.  
**DRUDGER** Confirmed. Scanning.  
**ALBY** Anything?  
**DRUDGER** Readings suggest a structure conforming to Alliance Dalek design.  
**ALBY** Life signs?  
**DRUDGER** Minimal and unclear. The particle cloud is still exerting some influence.  
**ALBY** Well, they haven't challenged us yet, so - 'ere, wait a sec, what's that? It looks like they've been in a fight.  
**DRUDGER** Structural damage of the type caused by Enemy Dalek firepower. Some loss of atmospheric integrity detected.  
**ALBY** Oh, God. Any Enemy Dalek readings?  
**DRUDGER** No such readings, although the particle cloud is still exerting -  
**ALBY** - 'some influence', yeah, thanks.  
*Pause.*  
**DRUDGER** What action do you wish to take?  
**ALBY** I'm thinking, aren't I?!

**DRUDGER** Apologies.  
**ALBY** (*Sighs*) Well, I suppose I've gone to the trouble of coming all the way out here... Mirana will be worrying herself to death wondering where I am. I'd better make it count for something. Let's break out the atmos suit. I'm going aboard.

**19. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Infirmary.**

*Door opens and closes. Footsteps as MIRANA enters.*

**MIRANA** How is she?  
**JOHNSTONE** As you see... up and about. Seemingly healthy enough. But not at all communicative.  
**MIRANA** Not a word?  
**JOHNSTONE** Not a word.  
**MIRANA** Could her mind have been affected? Don't tell me, you're not sure.  
**JOHNSTONE** It seems unlikely, given the readings.  
*Footsteps.*  
**MIRANA** Susan? How are you feeling? (*Pause*) Susan, I'm a friend.  
**SUZ** Then how is it I don't remember you?  
**MIRANA** (*Taken aback*) We... we never met.<sup>18</sup>  
**SUZ** Then how can you be a friend?  
**JOHNSTONE** She's got a point.  
**MIRANA** (*Irritated*) Doctor, please... just leave this to me, would you? (*After a deep breath*) Susan... or may I call you Suz? (*Pause*) Alby was supposed to be here. Do you remember Alby?  
**SUZ** This is a trick, isn't it? This is some kind of trick. You're working for the Daleks, aren't you?  
**MIRANA** No. We're not working for the Daleks. We're not working for either faction.<sup>19</sup>  
**SUZ** Faction? What do you mean?  
**MIRANA** (*Sighs*) Later...<sup>20</sup>  
**JOHNSTONE** Are you hungry? (*Pause*) You must be hungry. It's perfectly normal after -  
**SUZ** I won't take anything from you! (*Pause*) What do you mean, 'it's perfectly normal'?<sup>21</sup>  
**JOHNSTONE** For someone who's been in cryo-sleep.  
**SUZ** Cryo...? You mean... I've been in hibernation?  
**MIRANA** Yes. For a few years now.  
**SUZ** How many years?  
**MIRANA** Five... nearly six, I think. Is it?  
**JOHNSTONE** Yes. Nearly six years.  
**SUZ** How can I possibly know if you're friends or not?  
**MIRANA** Frankly, I don't know. If Alby was here -  
**SUZ** Alby? What do you know about Alby? Is he even real? I can't think straight. What I sense... in my mind... It's like a nightmare. (*In quiet terror*) A nightmare... I remember... A ship crashed. On Vega. A ship... A huge explosion. Destroyed so much of the city. Alby... Yes, Alby was there... on the boat. Then at the spaceport. He said we had to go. I wouldn't. Mum and Dad. I couldn't leave them. He said they were already dead.  
*She begins to cry.*

**SUZ** I hated him for that.  
**MIRANA** (*Trying to comfort*) Suz...?  
**SUZ** I HATED HIM! I hated Alby... (*More tears*) Did he kill them? Did he kill them by saying that? Are they dead? Are my Mum and Dad dead? Tell me! If you say you are my friends, you'd tell me, wouldn't you? TELL ME!!!  
*She sobs for a few moments. Her sobbing subsides.*  
**SUZ** Is Alby dead too?  
**MIRANA** No.  
**SUZ** I don't hate him.  
**MIRANA** I know. He loves you.  
**SUZ** I know.

## 20. Int. Hospital Station. Airlock Reception.

*Airlock door closes.*

**ALBY** (*Helmet distort*) I'm reading pressurisation. Safe to take off the atmos helmet?  
**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) You have entered a pressurised section of the space station. You may proceed.  
*ALBY removes his space helmet.*  
**ALBY** Ah... that's better... Let me get my torch on.  
*Click of torch activated.*  
**ALBY** There's a lot of blast damage here. Some Dalek wreckage. (*Nervously*) I take it you're still not picking up any life signs?  
**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Confirmed. Which Dalek faction does the wreckage belong to?  
**ALBY** Er... I think it's Alliance Daleks... no, wait a minute.  
*He shifts some metallic debris.*  
**ALBY** I think it's both. There's been a battle between Dalek factions here. Hang on... and there are human bodies too. God, it was a massacre.  
**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) I am detecting movement.  
**ALBY** Where? What sort of movement?  
**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Movement within the space station. I am unable to discern what is causing the movement.  
**ALBY** (*Scared*) Oh, God, there's something in here with me.  
*A metallic crashing in the distance.*

## 21. Int. Earth. Enemy Dalek Control.

*Much distortion and explosions over the distorted line.*

**DALEK COM** (*Distort*) Dalek solar defence fleet to Dalek Supreme Command on Earth. Am making urgent situation report.  
**DALEK SUPREME** This is the Dalek Supreme. Proceed with your report!  
**DALEK COM** (*Distort*) We have been defeated. The Alliance fleet is breaking through into the solar system on all fronts. Requesting permission to withdraw.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Permission denied.  
**DALEK COM** (*Distort*) Reinforcements are urgently required.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Our second wave of ships will arrive at your co-ordinates in one solar day.

**DALEK COM** (*Distort*) We cannot hold position until that time. We will be exterminated.

**DALEK SUPREME** Understood. You will link energy fields with all surviving ships from your fleet and instigate special emergency procedures. (*Pause*) Do you understand?

**DALEK COM** (*Distort*) Understood. We obey.

## **22. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber.**

*Door opens. KALENDORF's footsteps approach and stop.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Distort*) Holographic transmission commencing.  
*Holographic transmission FX.*

**MENTOR** Congratulations, Kalendorf. It seems that you have broken the Enemy Dalek line ahead of your planned schedule.

**KALENDORF** It was a calculated risk, but it seems to have paid off.

**MENTOR** Even in victory, you never lose your caution.

**KALENDORF** This isn't victory yet. The second wave of Enemy Dalek ships is only one solar day away from us. And if I know the Daleks, they'll have a back-up plan.

**MENTOR** A back-up plan? And what do you anticipate this plan might be?

**KALENDORF** I don't -  
*A huge explosion. An alarm sounds.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Tannoy*) Emergency! Emergency!<sup>22</sup>

**KALENDORF** What the hell - ?!

**MENTOR** What is happening? Has your ship been hit?

**KALENDORF** Kalendorf to bridge! Mr Herrick! Damage report!

**HERRICK** (*Distort*) Sir... the Enemy Dalek ships are -  
*Another huge explosion.*

## **23. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin.**

*Door opens. Footsteps of SUZ and MIRANA enter.*

**MIRANA** This is my cabin. You'll be more comfortable here.

**SUZ** We're aboard a spaceship then?

**MIRANA** Yes. The Alliance Scout-Ship *Defiant*. I'm the Captain. Please, sit down... if you like.

*Sounds of them sitting.*

**SUZ** Alliance? You mean the Earth Alliance?

**MIRANA** Let's just take one thing at a time.

**SUZ** A lot's happened, hasn't it? While I've been asleep, I mean.

**MIRANA** Yes.

**SUZ** (*Making sure*) And you say you know Alby?

**MIRANA** Yes.

**SUZ** And Karl... Kalendorf?

**MIRANA** Yes. Karl.

**SUZ** I don't know if I believe you.

**MIRANA** That's... understandable.

*Pause.*

**SUZ** What about the Daleks?

**MIRANA** What about them?

**SUZ** Are they still in control of the galaxy?

**MIRANA** No. Not in the way you mean.

**SUZ** (*Snaps*) How do you know what I mean?

*Pause. (Flashback clip of Project Infinity - Suz's 'Death to the Daleks' address - during next speech.)*

**SUZ** I remember... I started a rebellion. (*With realisation*) 'Death to the Daleks'. When I said those words... I saw the crowds overpowering my Dalek guards. For a moment, I thought I was going to live.

**MIRANA** You did live.

**SUZ** But is all that true? Is that what happened?

**MIRANA** Yes. We think that they fired a paralysis beam at you and transmatted you to a Dalek ship in orbit above Yaldos simultaneously.

**SUZ** And then put me to sleep?

**MIRANA** Yes.

**SUZ** Why?

**MIRANA** To... store you for future use.

**SUZ** Future use? As what?

**MIRANA** As a Dalek.

**SUZ** But you defeated the Daleks, didn't you? You, Kalendorf and Alby. Isn't that what happened? Wasn't the rebellion successful?

**MIRANA** Almost.

**SUZ** (*Confused*) 'Almost'?

**MIRANA** For a time.

**SUZ** I don't understand. (*Increasingly panicked*) You said the Daleks weren't in control of the galaxy anymore, at least not in the way I meant... But what do *you* mean? What *has* happened? What sort of galaxy have I woken up in? Why have you woken me up at all? And why has it taken you six years to get round to it?<sup>23</sup>

**MIRANA** (*Trying to calm her*) I know... I know... it's difficult. Please. Will you let me explain from the beginning?

**SUZ** (*Snaps*) I don't see... (*Stops herself. Continues, calmer*) I don't see that I have any other choice. Do you?<sup>24</sup>

**MIRANA** No. (*Takes a deep breath*) Right. It's difficult to know where to start. Your rebellion was successful. All the work you and Kalendorf did over the years... It paid off.

**SUZ** (*Moved*) Then it was worth it. All those years...

**MIRANA** Yes. The Daleks were apparently taken by surprise. The balance of power shifted very quickly.

**SUZ** What do you mean by 'apparently'?

**MIRANA** It was a word Kalendorf used a lot after the tide started to turn against the Daleks. (*Warmly*) You know Kalendorf. Always suspicious. Always cautious. Suspicious when victory comes too easily. He felt that the Daleks were letting us win. And he was right. Their invasion of the galaxy had simply been one enormous distraction tactic. And the rebellion...

**SUZ** They knew about that too. Didn't they?

**MIRANA** The Emperor did.

**SUZ** Then why did he let it happen?

**MIRANA** Don't you remember him telling you about Project Infinity?

**SUZ** Yes... (*Realising*) The Seer of Yaldos told you this, didn't she?

**MIRANA** Yes. Just as you wanted her to.  
**SUZ** (*Remembering*) Project Infinity... He said the Daleks would have infinite possibilities at their disposal. Was that true?  
**MIRANA** So he thought. So we thought.  
**SUZ** What was Project Infinity?  
**MIRANA** Originally, it was set up by the Earth Alliance. They wanted to find an alternative universe where humanity had worked out a way to defeat the Daleks for all time... then find out the secret of their success. Somehow – no one is quite sure how – the Daleks found out about Project Infinity. And so they waged war on us simply to get hold of it. Of course, *their* plan was to find a universe where the Daleks were in complete control of everything. But, being Daleks, they wanted to go one step further. They wanted to bring the triumphant, alternative universe Daleks through a gateway into our universe – to use them as an all-conquering army.  
**SUZ** Did they succeed?  
**MIRANA** We thought they would.  
**SUZ** You mean they didn't? What happened?  
**MIRANA** When we were captured by the Daleks – Kalendorf, Alby and me – we were taken to a massive cryo-chamber aboard the Emperor's ship. It was the same place where you were stored. Like you, we were put into hibernation.  
**SUZ** To be turned into Daleks?  
**MIRANA** Yes. So... we certainly weren't expecting to wake up still in... human form. Well, I don't think we were expecting to wake up at all.  
*Crossfade into flashback sequence:*

#### **24. Flashback: Int. Emperor's Ship. Cryo-Chamber.**

*Three cryo-pods open with a hiss of air and a loud clunk.*

**MIRANA** (*Exhales, coming round*) Hello? (*Pause*) Anyone out there?  
**ALBY** (*Distant*) Hello? Mirana? Is that you?  
*A few footsteps (KALENDORF's).*  
**KALENDORF** (*Dry*) It's both of you... and me.  
**MIRANA** Kalendorf?  
*Footsteps as they climb out of their pods. Vocal sounds of effort.*  
**ALBY** What the hell happened? How long have we *been* in these pods?  
**MIRANA** Feels like they only just put us to sleep.  
**KALENDORF** That's cryo-sleep for you.  
**ALBY** Weren't we supposed to wake up as Daleks? I don't feel like a Dalek, do you?  
**KALENDORF** No.  
**ALBY** I feel more like breakfast, actually.  
**KALENDORF** And look... We're the only three who have woken up.  
**MIRANA** My God, you're right. The rest of them are still asleep.  
**ALBY** (*Determined*) Suz... that bastard Tanlee said she's here... I've got to find her.  
**KALENDORF** Wait a minute, Alby.  
**ALBY** Don't try to stop me.  
**MIRANA** Alby, there are millions of pods here. You could spend your whole life looking.

**ALBY** So?

**KALENDORF** So it's pretty clear that something has gone wrong, don't you think? .

**ALBY** *(Reluctant)* Maybe.

**KALENDORF** If Suz really is here, I'm as anxious to find her as you are. Let's just work out what's happened first. Mirana. Are you sensing anything on the Dalek command net?

**MIRANA** That's a point.

**MIRANA** What's a point?

**MIRANA** I'm not sensing anything. At all.<sup>25</sup>

**ALBY** But you should be, shouldn't you? What with those Dalek implants still in your head.

*Door opens.*

**ALBY** Oh no.

**MIRANA** *(Under her breath)* Here comes trouble.

**ALBY** For one glorious moment I thought they'd all vanished in a puff of smoke.

**KALENDORF** There's something different about them.

**ALBY** So what. They've had a respray. They're still probably going to exterminate us.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Are you Alby, Kalendorf and Mirana?

**ALBY** No. Wrong room. Sorry. Try down the hallway.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You have nothing to fear from us.

**MIRANA** *(Confidentially)* What the hell's wrong with its voice?

**KALENDORF** *(Musing)* I don't know...

**ALTERNATE DALEK** We have accessed the Enemy Dalek database. Your likenesses match. Alby Brook, Kalendorf and Mirana are identified as the leaders of the human rebellion against the Enemy Daleks.

**ALBY** 'Enemy Daleks'? Aren't all Daleks enemies?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Enemy Daleks have committed the greatest crimes known to our universe.

**MIRANA** My God, they're from the dimensional gateway... Aren't you?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Correct.

**ALBY** You mean... the Project Infinity thing?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** As you say, the Project Infinity thing.

**KALENDORF** What's happened to the other... the Enemy Daleks?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** The Mentor will answer all your questions. Please follow.

**ALBY** Mentor?

**MIRANA** Who's the Mentor?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** She is our creator.

**ALBY** She?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Yes. She knows all things. She gave us life. She brings peace and understanding.

**ALBY** We're still asleep, aren't we? This is just some weird hallucination.

**KALENDORF** *(To ALBY)* Let's enjoy it until we wake up. *(Aloud)* Take us to your Mentor.

**25. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin.**

**MIRANA** We were taken to the Mentor. I don't think any of us were prepared for what we saw.

**SUZ** What do you mean?

**MIRANA** Have you heard the ancient stories about angels?

**SUZ** Angels? Huh... I was supposed to be one.<sup>26</sup>

**MIRANA** I remember seeing a statue of one on old Earth. That's what this Mentor reminded me of. An angel... but encased in a golden, glowing throne. The technological implants embedded in her skin... they were more like beautiful jewels than cold, Dalek mechanisms. She was inspiring... almost... beautiful.

## 26. Int. Mentor's Chamber.

*Alternate Dalek-style door opens and closes. Footsteps.*

**MENTOR** You are welcome. Please, approach me.

*Footsteps continue and stop.*

**MENTOR** I am the Mentor. I know you have many questions.

**KALENDORF** We've been told you are the Daleks from the other side of the dimensional gateway.

**MENTOR** We are.

**ALBY** Where are the other Daleks... the ones we were fighting?

**MENTOR** We have begun a war with these Enemy Daleks. We have achieved our first victory. They have retreated in some disarray, but we know that they will regroup.

**MIRANA** Why are these Daleks your enemies?

**MENTOR** Their actions contravene everything the Daleks in our universe stand for.

**MIRANA** And what do you stand for?

**MENTOR** Peace. Order. And we are the guardians of that peace and order. We protect it with every means and all the force at our disposal. That is why the Daleks were created in our universe.<sup>27</sup>

**ALBY** Then... that means that... that you're on our side?

**MENTOR** Will you help us to defeat them?

**KALENDORF** Will you help us to defeat them?

**MENTOR** I see that we share the same aims. That is good.

## 27. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Mirana's Cabin.

**SUZ** So you joined forces with these... these new Daleks?

**MIRANA** And things went well for us. Kalendorf was put in charge of the fleet. With the extra resources of the new Daleks at his disposal, he was able to cut off the Dalek Supreme's retreat to the Seriphia Galaxy.

**SUZ** The Dalek Supreme? What about the Emperor?

**MIRANA** The Emperor was captured at the first battle on Lopra Minor... at the dimensional gateway.

**SUZ** So he was destroyed.

**MIRANA** No... The Mentor hoped to use the Emperor to access the Dalek command net and take control of the Enemy Daleks. Maybe even 'pacify' them, I guess. But as soon as it was captured, the Emperor seemed to just shut himself down.

**SUZ** So what did you do?



**MIRANA** I was put in charge of analysing the Emperor. The Mentor told me to unlock its secrets.  
**SUZ** Did you succeed?  
**MIRANA** (Guarded) In a way... yes.  
**SUZ** What's the matter? What did you find out?

## 28. Int. Mentor's Chamber.

**MENTOR** (Slightly irritated) Then all you can tell me is that this Emperor is inert.  
**MIRANA** More or less.  
**MENTOR** (Suppressing anger) More – or – less? That much was obvious from the moment we captured this... creature.  
**KALENDORF** Are you suggesting that Mirana and her team have not done their best, Mentor?  
**MENTOR** I... (Restraining herself) Of course not, Mirana. I apologise for my... strength of feeling in this matter. I had hoped that the Enemy Dalek technology implanted in your mind might give you special insight into the Emperor's cerebral functions.  
**MIRANA** That was my hope too. I was able to detect a low-level distress signal emanating from the Emperor –  
**MENTOR** Did you shut it down?  
**MIRANA** Of course.  
**MENTOR** I am grateful.  
**MIRANA** But aside from that... Nothing. The Dalek creature inside the Emperor's casing seems to have undergone a kind of self-induced stasis. Dr Johnstone attempted a surgical solution, but he had no success.  
**MENTOR** (Curt) Then I must thank you for your work.  
**MIRANA** We have a few other avenues we wish to explore, if –  
**MENTOR** That will not be necessary. I can see that you have exhausted all meaningful research. We will assign you to other duties.  
**MIRANA** But...  
**MENTOR** Please! The matter has been decided.  
**KALENDORF** I'm sure I can find work for Mirana and –  
**MENTOR** Very well. That would be most satisfactory. Now, if you will excuse me, I have other pressing matters of importance to attend to.

## 29. Mirana's Narration.

**MIRANA** It was after this that Karl communicated with me telepathically. That's when we discovered that we were both harbouring the same fears about these new Daleks.  
*Telepathic conversation...*  
**KALENDORF** I'm not sure we can trust them any more.  
**MIRANA** I'm not sure I've ever trusted them.  
**KALENDORF** Me neither. On the fleet's return from the Vega System, we detected several planets that had been totally devastated.<sup>28</sup>  
**MIRANA** Devastated?  
**KALENDORF** Some of them wiped clean by some sort of neutron attack. Others were reduced to the level of medieval society by the destruction of their industrial and technological infrastructure.  
**MIRANA** What does that prove? What are you saying?

**KALENDORF** These civilisations weren't destroyed by Enemy Daleks. They were all well behind our lines. But I know that some of them had refused to supply troops for the war effort. One of the planets, Emmeron, was wrapped up in its own internal affairs – nuclear war to be precise.

**MIRANA** And you think the Mentor ordered their destruction?

**KALENDORF** That's the rumour. I think our new Dalek allies are as ruthlessly determined about peace and order as our old enemies were about conquest and subjugation. It seems we may have swapped one dictatorship for another. This one is perhaps a little more benign... but it's a dictatorship nonetheless.

**MIRANA** There's... something I didn't tell the Mentor.

**KALENDORF** About the Emperor?

**MIRANA** You knew?

**KALENDORF** I had the sense that you were hiding something.

**MIRANA** Do you think *she* did?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** I don't know. I don't think she entirely trusts us. (*Lighter*) But that just puts us on an equal footing, doesn't it? So come on, tell me.

**MIRANA** It was something that I was able to detect with my implant.

### **30. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin.**

**SUZ** What was it? (*Pause*) It's something to do with me, isn't it? Why are you looking at me like that?

**MIRANA** I was linked to the Dalek Emperor's mind for... a long time... until Dr Johnstone disabled the implants in my head. When I'm near to Enemy Daleks... sometimes, I've been able to... sense things. It hasn't happened in a long time. Maybe it's because I haven't been near enough to an Enemy Dalek for a long time. Maybe it's because they've changed their command net frequencies. I don't know.

**SUZ** But you're expecting to sense something *now*. Why?

(*Pause*) You think I'm working for your Enemy Daleks, don't you?

(*Pause*) Would I know if I was?

**MIRANA** I... don't know. But it's not just that.

**SUZ** What is it, then?

**MIRANA** When we analysed the inert Emperor's cerebral functions... I picked up some... I don't know what you'd call it... 'residue' of its final commands.

**SUZ** And?

**MIRANA** And, it seems the reason the Emperor was... *is* inert is that it compressed then transmitted its entire 'consciousness' into another mind.

*Pause.*

**SUZ** My mind?

**MIRANA** Your mind.

**SUZ** So you revived me to... what? Find out what the Emperor's thinking today? Or to kill me, is that it?

**MIRANA** No. The Mentor decreed that the inert Emperor be removed to some secret location. We didn't dare object or pass comment. We were too worried about arousing her suspicions. But then we heard that the Mentor had issued another decree. I had already begun serving

as captain of this ship, part of Kalendorf's fleet, when Alby contacted us...

### 31. Ext. Planet Emmeron.

*A backstreet in a wretched, diseased, backward city. The distant sound of hooves. Cries in the darkness etc. Very Dickensian.*

**MIRANA** He's late. I don't want to stay here any longer than I have to. I've a feeling I might catch something.<sup>29</sup>

**KALENDORF** I'm more worried about being missed. The Mentor still seems to be giving me a certain amount of leeway, but if I'm absent from my duties for too long, she's bound to start getting a bit twitchy.

**MIRANA** You've only just got back from the front, haven't you? Doesn't she let you have any leave?

**KALENDORF** Yes... but... well, let's just say I've been attending to some important business that I don't think she'd entirely approve of. I was expected back on Lopra some time ago.

**MIRANA** I think I know better than to ask what you've been up to.

**KALENDORF** (*Amused*) Do you now?

*Footsteps approach.*

**MIRANA** (*Harsh whisper*) Alby!

**ALBY** (*Approaching*) Sorry I'm late. Not exactly easy to find your way around in this place. Fog everywhere.

**MIRANA** Well, I suppose that makes it an ideal secret meeting place.

**ALBY** Welcome to the planet Emmeron.

**KALENDORF** One of a growing number of worlds people are starting to call the Punished Planets.

**ALBY** Then you've heard the rumours too? This place used to be pretty high-tech - look at it now. Heading towards the Stone Age.

**MIRANA** And what else have you heard? Presumably you have something to tell us. Or are we standing around here risking our health just for old time's sake?

### 32. Mirana's Narration.

**MIRANA** Alby had heard that the Mentor had ordered the destruction of all 'converted' dormant humanoids who had been held in the cryo-chamber over a certain amount of time. Anyone held longer than a specified cut-off point would be transported to the vicinity of a suitable collapsing star and fired into the centre of it.

### 33. Ext. Planet Emmeron.

**ALBY** Apparently, our glorious Mentor thinks that's the only sure way she can be certain that any Enemy Dalek implants are totally destroyed.

**KALENDORF** Well, she's thorough, I'll give her that.

**ALBY** And guess what?

**MIRANA** What?

**ALBY** They've just found a suitable collapsing star... and Suz is on the list for destruction.

### 34. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Mirana's Cabin.

**MIRANA** For some time, none of us could say anything. Then slowly, bit by bit, we formulated our plan. Alby already had plenty of undercover contacts in all the places that counted. That's the way he works. He managed to get your cryo-pod tagged for identification. Then he shadowed the ship taking you for -

**SUZ** - For extermination?

**MIRANA** He fired at the ship. Trying to make it look like it had been the victim of an Enemy Dalek raiding party. Then we arranged for me to 'accidentally' stumble across the wreckage and rescue you.

**SUZ** And just why should you want to rescue me?

**MIRANA** Do you doubt Alby's motives?

**SUZ** No. It's yours I doubt.

**MIRANA** And Kalendorf's?

*Pause.*

**SUZ** Why did the Emperor do this to me?

**MIRANA** We don't know. I'm sorry that -

**SUZ** *Sorry?!* What good will that do? If you're right about what I've got hidden somewhere in my mind... and if I know Karl... He's got a plan.

*Comms bleep.*

**MARBER** *(Distort)* Marber to Captain Mirana.

*Bleep.*

**MIRANA** What is it, Marber?

**MARBER** *(Distort)* A ship's come into range. It's one of ours. A small gunship. Is this the rendezvous?

**MIRANA** Thank you, Marber. I'm on my way to the bridge.

*Bleep.*

**SUZ** It's Alby, isn't it? Isn't it? Tell me.

*Pause.*

**MIRANA** I think so.

**SUZ** I'm coming with you.

**MIRANA** No, I think it would be best if -

**SUZ** *I'm coming with you.*

**MIRANA** I could have you sedated.

**SUZ** You'll have to. Well?

**MIRANA** Maybe one of us has to start trusting. *(Smiles)* Come with me.

### 35. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Bridge.

*Chatter of bridge activity. Proximity alarm is peeping away in background.*

**MARBER** This is Alliance Scout-Ship *Defiant* to unidentified gunship. Please send your call sign or we will be forced to consider you as hostile. *Door opens. Footsteps of SUZ and MIRANA entering.*

**MARBER** Ah... Captain, I - Who's this?

**MIRANA** A personal guest of mine.

**MARBER** Guest?

**MIRANA** Any contact with the ship?

**MARBER** Er... nothing yet. She's not sent us her call sign.

**MIRANA** (To herself) Come on, Alby, what's the matter with you?  
**SUZ** (Close. To **MIRANA**) Is that Alby's ship?  
**MIRANA** It looks like it. Mr Marber. Try again.  
**MARBER** Very well. This is Alliance Scout-Ship *Defiant* calling unidentified gunship. Please send your -  
**ALBY** (Distort) Scout-Ship *Defiant*. We are coming in to dock.  
**MIRANA** (Warm) Commander Brook. I thought you'd gone dumb on us.

Pause.

**MIRANA** Alby?  
**MARBER** He's not responding, Captain.  
**MIRANA** I'd noticed.  
**SUZ** What's wrong?  
**MIRANA** I'm not sure.  
*Proximity alarm buzzes again.*  
**MARBER** Gunship is moving into docking approach. Do we let him dock, Captain?  
**MIRANA** Have a security detachment meet me at airlock reception, Marber.

### 36. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Airlock Reception.

*Clunking and hissing of docking in progress. Running footsteps of security team approach and stop.*

**MIRANA** Security detachment! Take up defensive positions... just in case.

**SUZ** Why are you expecting trouble?

**MIRANA** Because I've caught the caution bug off Kalendorf. I think you'd better stay out of the way.

*Airlock door opens.*

**MORLI** (Approaching) Are these your friends?

**ALBY** (Kindly, as if to a child) Yeah - yeah, they are... but just keep quiet for now, Morli. There's a good girl.

Pause.

**MIRANA** Alby!? Come on out!

*Footsteps.*

**MIRANA** Who's that with him?

**SUZ** (Overjoyed) Alby!!!

**ALBY** Stay back! For God's sake just - !

**SUZ** But, Alby it's me!

**MIRANA** Enemy Daleks! Take cover!!!

**SECURITY MAN** Squad! Open fire!

*Several gunshots.*

**MORLI** Don't shoot! Aaargh!

**MIRANA** No! Cease firing!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Exterminate!

*Dalek gun fires. Security guard dies.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Lay down your weapons or we will exterminate Alby Brook! Obey!

Pause.

**ALBY** Sorry, Mirana.

**DALEK 1** Obey! Obey!

**MIRANA** Do as they say! Now!  
*Clatter of guns being laid down.*

**MIRANA** All right! Our weapons are down. Now... What are you doing here? What do you want?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Where is Susan Mendes? You will surrender her to us immediately!

*Crash in closing theme.*

## NOTES

1. Deleted dialogue – COMPUTER: '~~Playback commencing.~~'
2. Line changed to: 'Those are spacecraft... Enormous spacecraft, ~~moving between star systems at incredible speed.~~ And planets... huge populations... cities... cities full of people, creatures.'
3. There are no clips from *Dalek Empire* used in this scene.
4. Line changed to: 'It's hard to believe, I know. But this us what the galaxy was like back then. **Something they called** the Earth Alliance had established peace... until the Daleks invaded. When they did, Kalendorf was caught in the middle of it.'
5. Line changed to: 'He was... for a time. But it seems **that he'd** given other orders to Mirana and Alby. Orders that he hoped and believed his beloved Dalek allies **didn't** know about.'
6. 'Please respond in any way if you can hear this,' is said four times in total.
7. Line changed to: 'But, **Captain!**'
8. Line changed to: 'I am concerned for the mental well-being and efficiency of the human occupant of this craft. The human mind needs stimulation in order to stay alert. There are a variety of images in the ship's databanks which might more usefully engage your **attention** –'
9. Line changed to: 'Woah, wait, **wait, wait...** what the hell do you know about Susan Mendes? That's a private image I loaded into the ship's computer just before we set off.'
10. Line changed to: 'Susan Mendes *must* be located!!! Report status of ~~the~~ Alliance attack on this solar system.'
11. Line changed to: 'Our defence fleet is suffering heavy losses. It will be totally annihilated before our second wave is in position to engage **the** Human Alliance fleet.'
12. Line changed to: '**Right, well,** let's try the old-fashioned way, then. Maximum magnification on visual.'
13. Line changed to: 'All right... **Hold on,** pan left a bit.'
14. Line changed to: 'Down a bit – Woah, **woah!** Stop! What's that? Can we get in closer?'
15. Line changed to: '**Yeah,** I noticed that.'
16. In order to publicise *Dalek War*, the first 30 minutes of Chapter One were included on a CD given away free with **Doctor Who Magazine** issue 326, which went on sale in January 2003. The CD also contained *No Place Like Home*, an exclusive *Doctor Who* audio story written by Iain McLaughlin.
17. Line changed to: 'Yes... yes... Very well. I suppose we can't ask ~~for~~ any more than that. But – but keep an eye on them, Herrick.'
18. Line changed to: '(*Taken aback*) ~~We...~~ we never met.'
19. Line changed to: 'No. **No,** we're not working for the Daleks. We're not working for either faction.'
20. Line changed to: '(*Sighs*) **I'll, er... I'll explain that later...**'
21. Line changed to: '**Keep away!** I won't take anything from you! (Pause) What do you mean, "it's perfectly normal"?''
22. Deleted dialogue – ALTERNATIVE DALEK: '(*Tannoy*) **Emergency! Emergency!**'
23. Line changed to: 'I don't understand. (*Increasingly panicked*) **You said...** you said the Daleks weren't in control of the galaxy anymore, at least not in the way I meant... But what do you mean? What *has* happened? What sort of galaxy have I woken up in? Why have you woken me up at all? And why has it taken you six years to get round to it?'

- 24.** Line changed to: '(Snaps) I don't see... (Stops herself. Continues, calmer) I don't see ~~that~~ I have any ~~other~~ choice. Do you?'
- 25.** Line changed to: 'I'm not sensing anything. **Anything** at all.'
- 26.** Line changed to: 'Angels? Huh... ~~I was supposed to be one.~~'
- 27.** Line changed to: 'Peace. Order. And we are the guardians of that peace and order. We protect **them** with every means and all the force at our disposal. That is why the Daleks were created in our universe.'
- 28.** Line changed to: '**Nor me.** On the fleet's return from the Vega System, we detected several planets that had been totally devastated.'
- 29.** Line changed to: 'He's late. I don't want to **stand** here any longer than I have to. I've a feeling I might catch something.'





# CHAPTER ONE

The original 'teaser' prologue to Chapter One was different, wasn't it?

**SUZ** Karl?

**KALENDORF** Yes. It's me, Suz. Do you remember?

**SUZ** I... remember.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Extreme panic*) Emergency! Emergency!  
Exterminate! Exterminate them!

*A psychic whoosh followed by a gigantic explosion. Echoes into silence. Hold silence. Theme tune.*

Nicholas Briggs: I just wanted to have a prologue that hinted at some cataclysmic event near the climax of the story. As the series progressed, I wanted this prologue to take on more and more potential significance. At the start, I thought the significant moment would be when Suz finally snaps out of being the Dalek Emperor. But I soon realised that it was more important, story-wise, to hint at Kalendorf's sneaky plan. Foreshadowing it made it seem more bedded into the story. Just revealing at the last minute that Kalendorf had done a deal with the evil Daleks might seem a bit improbable and like a last-minute addition. Having a big hint about it at the very beginning of the series made it more of a satisfying revelation. We think, 'Oh, so that's what that scene meant' rather than, 'Oh, come on, you can't just come up with that idea now!'. I suppose you could view it as a bit of a sneaky trick.

**The first 14 scenes make up the bit of Dalek War Chapter One that was used on the DWM free CD. How did having that to deal with affect the writing process?**

The idea of Dalek War being on the DWM freebie CD was mentioned to me very early on, so it was quite easy to write the first Chapter with a halfway mark cliffhanger in mind. I think it was a mixture of design and happy accident. It looked like Suz would have to wake up around that point anyway, so why not make it the cliffhanger? And I have to confess that it is true that I included a Dalek scene before that cliffhanger, largely because I wanted that sample half episode on the freebie CD to contain a traditional Dalek scene.

**You start in medias res, rather than picking up directly from the events of Project Infinity. You must have known that there'd be great anticipation as to what happened after the end of the first series, so were you deliberately drawing out the tension here?**

I suppose it is about drawing out tension. It's also about giving the audience information at a point in the story when it will have the most impact and be the most rewarding. I think a food and drink analogy is appropriate here. You may really want a glass of

brandy, but it's probably not a good idea to drink it before you eat your meal, as it will lessen the flavour of everything that comes after it and won't be anywhere near as lovely as it would have been if you'd waited to drink it after your meal. By waiting, you end up enjoying both the meal and the brandy, rather than just satiating your brandy lust early for very little reward! So, what happened after *Dalek Empire* would have been a less tasty morsel to eat at the beginning of Chapter One of *Dalek War*. By the end of the chapter, when there's been a build-up of other, complimentary flavours, it tastes a lot better.

**One thing that the Saloran and Tarkov scenes do is shift the focus on to Kalendorf. It seems that you were keen on making him the main character of the story.**

The shift of focus to Kalendorf was caused by two things. One was an unconscious response on my part to Gareth's strength of character. His concerns about Kalendorf had, quite rightly, made the character more and more important in *Dalek Empire*. Given that I was largely writing in response to what the actors were doing – even though the plot had already been mapped out – his feelings about the character influenced me greatly. By the end of *Dalek Empire*, Kalendorf has emerged as the central character. Additionally, because I wanted the historical perspective in *Dalek War*, the discovery of Kalendorf's telepathic legacy seemed the only 'plausible' way for future historians to access the past with any degree of accuracy (although I wanted them to get stuff wrong, too). So there was very much a story reason as well as an actor and character reason for Kalendorf's increasing dominance.

**Tell us about the Mentor. Why is she a she?**

The Mentor is the other universe's Davros. In that, alternative version of Dalek history, the Daleks were created by a woman who didn't go power mad and crazy. I talked about this idea with Clayton Hickman a lot. My initial thought was to make her a very matter-of-fact, non-Dalekish, chatty lady. I'd originally thought Karen (who was Saloran, eventually) could play it. But I realised I needed something more traditionally dramatic at the centre of it all. Clay suggested that I get Terry Molloy to play an alternative Davros. But even though Davros is a great idea and both Michael Wisher and Terry Molloy have played the part brilliantly, I just felt that the alternative universe Dalek creator should be very different. To make the creator a woman was a huge, obvious way of striking the difference. I suppose I was doing the Davros trick, though, of having a Dalek-like character that would be slightly more easy on the ears for long conversations. I just wanted to do it in a way we hadn't heard before.

**There's a nice consistency of minor characters. Both Herrick and Johnstone, who had appeared in *Project Infinity*, crop up again.**

Well, why not? Characters who fulfilled those functions were needed, so rather than create new minor characters, I thought that bringing them back would give them the appearance of more depth, simply because they were more familiar to the audience. When you do a script that has a large element of space opera in it – which *Dalek War* has – you're always going to need people who say 'Yes, sir' and 'Opening fire' etc. Now, these are mundane but necessary roles. There were a lot of them in the original *Star Trek* for example, and almost all those parts were very thinly written. Sulu and Uhura were not very well defined parts as written, for example, because they didn't need to be. But the fact that it was very often those same characters popping up time after time gave them a

sort of 'assumed' depth of character. That was the sort of reasoning behind Herrick and Johnstone. I also knew Jez and Simon were good in those parts, so why get them to play new parts, or take the risk of employing new actors to play equally boring parts. It's not everyone who can make something good out of just a few 'yes, sir' type lines. Jez and Simon have a bit of a talent for that sort of thing. Er... I didn't mean that to sound damning with faint praise!

**How different is it writing for characters who are established and have actors who know their parts really well, rather than creating brand new roles? What factors come in to play? At the recording, Gareth Thomas said to you that 'Me neither' wasn't a very Kalendorf-like phrase, so it was changed to 'Nor me.' How helpful or how much of a hindrance is it to have actors who know what their characters would say or do?**

I'm always pleased when actors are so engaged with what they're doing that they offer opinions about the lines and the characters' actions. The worst thing is when their attitude is 'whatever you say, fine'. That's no fun at all. So that kind of input from Gareth was expected and welcomed. I have to say that I didn't really encounter it with anyone else. Mark and Sarah, in particular, treated the whole thing as an exciting unfolding story. They really wanted to find out what happened next and were very excited and accepting of everything I wrote. I think there was a very high level of trust between us.

**Suz having been asleep since "Death to the Daleks!" gives you a good chance to recap the events by having Mirana fill her in. What with Saloran and Tarkov's framing device, you're getting into flashbacks-within-flashbacks here. Did you ever feel worried that the audience would not accept the out-of-order storytelling?**

I think if you step back and think, 'Oh my God, here's someone telling a story within a flashback and shouldn't this be in the right order?!' you're going to panic yourself. The fact is that it's all very simple and logical if you just take it a scene at a time. It only gets confusing if you don't make sure the listener knows where he/she is at any one time. And anyway, I think the term 'flashback' is very unhelpful here. Saloran and Tarkov are discussing something. Now, we could just stay with them talking about it, or, more interestingly, we could jump to the story they are discussing and dramatise it. I don't see that as a flashback... it's just the main story. If anything, Saloran and Tarkov are a flash-forward, if you like. So any stories related by characters in the main narrative are just pieces of information they need to impart... So again, it's much more interesting to dramatise these rather than just have them as 'talking book' sections of the script. You won't confuse people if you give them the story in the most engaging way... that is, in the form of drama!

**It's such an intriguing idea: having Alby, Kalendorf and Mirana ally themselves with a faction of Daleks.**

Thank you. It touches on the issues of loyalty, honesty and survival. You put your main characters in a situation which demands that they play along with these new Daleks because firstly it seems the right thing to do, then later it seems the only thing to do if our heroes wish to survive to fight another day. It makes the situation more complex and therefore, in my opinion, gives it more of that smell of reality – which I think is essential the more 'unreal' your setting is.

**The Alternate Daleks throw up some interesting political points What was your inspiration for this? It has been noted in some quarters that the two sides represent either fascism versus communism, or the Shadows and the Vorlons from Babylon 5. Was any of this in your head during the scriptwriting process?**

I wasn't really thinking of communists and fascists, or indeed Vorlons and Shadows. The only analogy I'd come up with was *The Day The Earth Stood Still*. I was thinking of the Alternative Daleks being rather like Klaatu's people. They had a good aim, but would stop at nothing to achieve it: 'Be peaceful, or we will destroy you'. If you accept that the end justifies the means, then the Mentor is absolutely one hundred per cent right. She's never deceitful. She's pretty straightforward. The moral dilemma always comes when the means to achieve your aim – in this case, the destruction of the evil Daleks – starts to feel almost as bad as the tactics of the enemy you're trying to defeat. This is an idea that very much resurfaces towards the end of *Dalek Empire III*.

# CASTING

Nicholas Briggs: What I'm looking for when I cast a part is an actor who's not just good, but also pleasant to work with. I want them to be serious about the role and the fictional world of the script – even though it's Daleks and spaceships – but also to be able to make decisions about their performances quite quickly and without making an enormous fuss. Now, you'd think that would be easy to find in actors; but frankly, it's quite difficult. Some actors find science fiction so ludicrous that they just can't relate to it. Other actors are so serious and intense about their work that it's difficult to develop any kind of shorthand communication with them.

That shorthand is vital, because these plays are recorded very quickly. If you have to start from scratch on every scene with an actor, then it's just going to take too long. I need them to be able to take on board general notes about their character early in the day, and for those notes to filter through their performance for the rest of the day. Some actors need to be told everything you've already told them each time they step up to the microphone, and that's just tedious and frustrating for me and the rest of the cast. It also means you don't have time to fine-tune performances, build on what they've already established and focus on particularly complex changes of emotion and intention in the script. My hope is to excite the actor's imagination and then bring them along with me and my enthusiasm.

So, in order to make sure all this happens, I prefer to meet the actors beforehand, which means, unlike most of the *Doctor Who* casting, I invite actors in to read for me and just chat. For *Dalek Empire*, I had a big casting session to cast Suz, even though I had Sarah Mowat in mind from a very early stage. I saw a lot of good actresses I would have been very happy to work with, but none of them were quite as right for the part as Sarah was. One of the girls I saw for the role, Octavia Walters, is actually in *Dalek Empire III*. I've been planning to work with her for three years now!

I also tend to cast actors I've worked with before. Mark McDonnell was fantastic when we spent a difficult week in Bristol doing some *Doctor Who* plays with Paul McGann. It was all quite tense because Paul was a bit tired, my then girlfriend was going a bit bonkers and several of us had terrible, terrible colds. But Mark was excellent throughout and kept me laughing. I thought then, 'This is Alby Brook.' I'd been impressed by Gareth Thomas's performance in *Storm Warning* [one of the plays recorded in Bristol] and so was very keen to work with him. I'd worked with Hannah Smith in rep in Nottingham, and was really impressed by her attitude to work. She kind of embodies the qualities I've already described. She's serious about her work, smart about scripts, brilliant with her voice and lots of fun to be with. I could go on about the rest of the cast, but I think that's enough luvvie talk, don't you?



# DALEK WAR CHAPTER TWO

## 37. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Airlock Reception.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Where is Susan Mendes? You will surrender her to us immediately! (*Pause*) Answer!

**SUZ** (*Urgent. Sotto voce*) Mirana, give me your gun.

**MIRANA** (*Urgent. Sotto voce*) What - ? Why? What are you going to do -

**SUZ** (*Urgent. Sotto voce*) - Don't waste time, I know what I'm doing - just give it to me.

*Sound of gun being handed across.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** (*During the above*) Answer! Answer! Answer! (*After gun has been handed across*) Answer or we will exterminate Alby Brook!

*Footsteps and scuffle as SUZ stands up. (SUZ and ALBY are on opposite sides of the stereo soundscape. MORLI is paired with ALBY, MIRANA with SUZ.)*

**SUZ** (*Aloud*) I am Susan Mendes.

**ALBY** No! She's lying! She isn't.

**MORLI** Alby - don't make them angry again!

**SUZ** Alby, it's best this way -

**ALBY** - No! Susan Mendes... is dead.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence! Run computer scan.

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*Computer scan FX.*

**DALEK 1** Physical characteristics match with database information.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You are confirmed as Susan Mendes.

**SUZ** So, what now?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** These other humans are not required. Exterminate them.

**MORLI** (*Overlapping*) Nooo!

**DALEK 1** (*Overlapping*) We obey!

### CHAPTER TWO CD TRACK LISTINGS

1 Answer! Answer!	12 Bad stuff	24 Where are we heading?
2 Web of energy	13 Analysis disc	25 Cease firing!
3 Stay calm	14 Orders of a traitor	26 Alby! Go! Please!
4 Further risk?	15 Which Daleks?	27 Escape pod
5 Report!	16 Second wave	28 Paralysis beams
6 Going home?	17 Human hostages	29 Keep back...
7 Not a Dalek, then	18 Alert! Alert!	30 Surrender
8 Surviving humanoid	19 Negative!	31 Another risk, Kalendorf?
9 The Dalek Emperor	20 Stuck	32 Engage restraints!
10 Transolar disc	21 Drammankin Gas	33 We are one!
squadron	22 Await reinforcements	34 Suz?
11 Zero-grav	23 Internal scanners	35 Trailer



**SUZ** (Overlapping) No!!!  
**MIRANA** Get down!!!  
**DALEKS** (Variously) Exterminate! Exterminate! Exterminate!  
*Dalek guns fire. Security guard cries out as he's shot.*  
**ALBY** Suz!!!  
**MIRANA** Open fire!!!  
*Security guard guns fire. Dalek guns return fire.*  
**SUZ** No!!! Stop!!! Stop this! Stop this or I'll shoot myself. Do you hear me?! I'll kill myself!!!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Cease firing! Cease firing immediately!!!  
*Dalek gunfire stops. Security guard fire continues sporadically for a moment.*  
**MIRANA** Cease fire!  
*Gunfire stops.*  
**SUZ** I mean it. This gun is fully charged.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Drop the weapon! Surrender!  
**SUZ** No! I'm serious - keep away!!! (Pause) I mean it! I know why you want me. I know I'm vital to your plan.<sup>1</sup>  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You know nothing of our [plan] -  
**SUZ** - You want your Emperor back! Don't you? (Pause. Angry) You think that what's left of him is stuck in my brain. Don't you?! Well...? Answer!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** (Reluctant) Yes.  
**SUZ** So if I blow my brains all over this bulkhead... the Dalek Supreme isn't going to be very pleased with you, is he? (Pause) Is he?!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You will not sacrifice your own life.  
**SUZ** Why not? I did it before. Or so I thought... (Pause) Well?  
**ALBY** You've confused him... Suz.  
**SUZ** (Awkwardly) Hello... Alby.  
**ALBY** (Awkwardly) Hi.  
**SUZ** Um... We'll... (She stops) Well... Now's not exactly a good time, is it?<sup>2</sup>  
**ALBY** Sure. Yeah. I know. You... carry on.<sup>3</sup>  
**MORLI** Go on - tell her.  
**ALBY** Morli, just shut up.  
**MORLI** Ahhh... she's lovely, isn't she? Just like you said.  
**MIRANA** Daleks! I suggest you leave my ship!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We will not leave.  
**MIRANA** What choice do you have? You need Susan Mendes alive. If you stay, she will kill herself.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Our objective is to capture Susan Mendes. We cannot leave without achieving our objective.  
**ALBY** (A growl of frustration, under his breath) Stalemate...  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Why do you require Susan Mendes?  
**MIRANA** She... She is our friend.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** That is not the reason.  
**ALBY** It is.  
**MORLI** It's true. He loves her. Alby loves Suz.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We know of the emotional bond between them. But it is also clear that you are aware of the connection between Susan Mendes and our Emperor. What did you hope to achieve by reviving her? (Pause) Answer! (Pause) We know that (with distaste) the Mentor

ordered her destruction. Why have you disobeyed the orders of your ally in this war?

**SUZ** That's none of your business. Just leave this ship.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We will not leave. You - must - have - a - plan!

**SUZ** No I don't!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Kalendorf, Mirana and Alby Brook have a plan. What is it?

**ALBY** There is no plan. We're not Daleks! We did this because... I did this... because...

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Because you love Susan Mendes?

**ALBY** Yes.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Perhaps Kalendorf and Mirana have not shared knowledge of their plan with you, Alby Brook.

**ALBY** (*Rattled*) What are you trying to say?

**MIRANA** Divide and rule, Alby. That's what it's up to.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence! We will take control of this ship and you -

**SUZ** - No! You will be silent! All of you!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You will not kill yourself.

**SUZ** I will if you harm anyone else on this ship.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You value your own existence. Your threat is meaningless.

**SUZ** But can you be sure? Can you take that risk?

*Pause.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You do not want us to harm Alby Brook.

**SUZ** You will not harm anyone on this ship.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We will take control of this ship.

**SUZ** No!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We will take control!!! The crew will lay down their weapons and be taken hostage. You will be imprisoned with them. If you do not harm yourself, all humans on this vessel will live.

**MIRANA** What's the point of you taking control of this ship? You'll never get past [our fleet]...

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence! Silence!!! Those are our terms. (*Pause*) Susan Mendes. Alby Brook is safe. The crew is safe. Do you still wish to kill yourself? (*Pause*) Answer!

**ALBY** Suz...?

**SUZ** (*Sighs, defeated*) You bastards!

### **38. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.**

*The crackle of fire. Alarms blaring out. Groans and coughing of wounded.*

**KALENDORF** (*Coughing through smoke*) Mr Herrick? Mr Herrick!

**HERRICK** Sir! Over here... argh!

*KALENDORF's footsteps as he approaches HERRICK.*

**KALENDORF** Are you all right, Herrick?

**HERRICK** I think so... I - argh...

**KALENDORF** Medic! I need a medic here.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Approaching*) I obey.

**KALENDORF** Get this man to the infirmary.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Medical facilities are overstretched. Human patients are being treated in strict order of severity of injury.

**KALENDORF** (*Close and intense*) I'm the Fleet Commander and I'm giving you an order. This man is my executive officer and I need him fit enough to perform his duties as soon as possible.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I... obey. (*Moving off*) I will bring an anti-grav stretcher.

**KALENDORF** You'll be all right, Herrick.

**HERRICK** (*Weak*) Thank... thank you, sir. They hit us pretty bad, didn't they?<sup>4</sup>

**KALENDORF** It could've been worse. Did you see what happened?

**HERRICK** Just as we were... were closing on the survivors of the Enemy Dalek fleet... They... there was a glowing... They seemed to be firing at each other. For a moment, they were linked by... by something that looked like a giant web... a kind of web of energy.

*Hum of anti-grav stretcher approaching.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Approaching*) The Enemy Daleks linked the total mass output of their ships' reactors. Please climb aboard the anti-grav stretcher.

**HERRICK** Then they just... exploded.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Please climb aboard the -

**KALENDORF** - I'll help him. Come on...

*Vocal noises from KALENDORF and HERRICK as he's helped aboard.*

**HERRICK** Thank you, sir.

*HERRICK's groans of pain retreat into the distance as the stretcher hovers off and a door opens and closes.*

**KALENDORF** Anyone in a fit state to give me a damage report?<sup>5</sup>

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** I... I have sust-sustained damage, but re-remain op-operational.<sup>6</sup>

**KALENDORF** Are repairs underway?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Rep-repair teams report slow progress. Damage to outer hull plates and engines was severe.<sup>7</sup>

**KALENDORF** I knew the Enemy Daleks would have a back-up plan. They're trying to stall us until their second wave arrives. Any idea of fleet casualties?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Alliance fleet casualties currently stand at 132 ships. Approximately 25 per cent of our force.<sup>8</sup>

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) My God.

*Comms bleep.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** The Mentor wishes to speak with you.

**KALENDORF** (*Under his breath*) When doesn't she? (*Aloud*) All right. Tell her I'm on my way.

### 39. Int. Defiant. Loading Bay.

**DALEK** Move into the loading bay! Move!

*Footsteps and vocal rumble of crew.*

**MIRANA** Keep moving. Everybody stay calm.

*More footsteps etc.*

**ALBY** Suz... Suz, are you - ?

**SUZ** It's all right, Alby. Don't worry.

**ALBY** It's... it's good to see you. Did I say that already?

**SUZ** Who's your friend?

**MORLI** I'm Morli. There's no need to be jealous -

**SUZ** No, I was just -  
**MORLI** - Alby saved my life. Back on the Space Station.  
**SUZ** The Space Station - ?  
**MORLI** We're just good friends.  
**SUZ** (*Slightly embarrassed*) Right... I see. Er... Pleased to meet you. How did you save - ?  
**ALBY** There's a lot to explain, Suz.  
**SUZ** You think I don't realise that?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Now, Susan Mendes! You will surrender your weapon.  
**SUZ** No. It stays with me.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Surrender it now, or we will exterminate the hostages!  
**SUZ** If you do, I will kill myself. I've told you that. (*Flaring up*) What's the matter with you, don't you listen?  
**MIRANA** (*Sotto voce*) They're testing your resolve.  
**SUZ** (*Sotto voce*) I know. They never change.  
*Pause.*  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** (*Guarded*) Very well. Daleks will remain here to guard you.  
**MIRANA** Where are you going?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** (*Backing through the doorway*) Silence! There - will - be - no - escape - attempts!  
*Door closes.*  
**ALBY** Now what?  
**MIRANA** At least we're still alive.  
**ALBY** And that's thanks to you, Suz.  
**SUZ** 'Thanks'? Huh... for what? Giving in again?  
**MIRANA** What do you mean?  
**SUZ** Oh... (*Sighs*) I told the Daleks I wanted to die once before. Years ago.<sup>9</sup>  
**ALBY** That you wanted to die? When?  
**SUZ** When all this began.  
**MORLI** But they didn't kill you, though, did they?  
**SUZ** (*Cold*) No. Obviously not.  
**MIRANA** Because they needed you.  
*Pause.*  
**ALBY** Suz?  
**SUZ** They needed *someone*. They thought it might be me. But they didn't *force* me to work for them. They just... waited.  
**MORLI** Waited for what?  
**SUZ** (*Sighs*) Back on Vega VI, when they'd invaded... things got... Well, it wasn't what you'd call... pleasant. I couldn't see an end to it all. I wanted to see an end to it all. I told the Daleks I wanted to die because I was tired. And I was angry. But sometimes the Daleks understand us better than we understand ourselves. If you take someone who is tired and angry... and you give them food and rest... They get comfortable. They remember that life can be good. They regain their hope. And then you remember that you don't want to die. You can't feel angry forever... not if you're just... me. And the same thing's happened again here. When you lose control, the Daleks lose their power over you. But it never lasts for long.

**MIRANA** You're saying you should have just killed yourself the moment the Daleks docked with my ship?<sup>10</sup>

**SUZ** If I was dead, the Dalek Emperor would be dead too. And you'd win the war. Well, wouldn't you?<sup>11</sup>

**ALBY** It isn't as simple as that, Suz.

**SUZ** You don't want to win?

**MIRANA** It's a question of who exactly would be winning.

**SUZ** So the Dalek was right. You and Kalendorf do have a plan.

**MIRANA** I don't know what Kalendorf has in mind. He said it would be safer that way. But I trust him, don't you?

**ALBY** Huh... he's a warrior of noble birth. I've always thought that made him pretty bleedin' dangerous.

#### 40. Int. Flagship *Courageous*. Executive Communication Chamber.

**MENTOR** So you propose that we should take a further risk?

**KALENDORF** (*Impassioned*) We must press ahead into Earth's solar system before the second wave of Enemy Dalek ships can attack. If we can get a foothold on some of the outer moons, we can conserve power and hold out until our reinforcements arrive.

**MENTOR** But with 25 per cent of your current force destroyed, you will prove a poor match for the enemy's second wave if they should make their attack earlier than you predict.

**KALENDORF** But if we don't advance now, if we wait until their second wave can move into an optimum attack formation, we could be stuck out here for years trying to battle our way in.

**MENTOR** I sense you have lost your caution.

**KALENDORF** Sometimes caution can lose you the battle... even the war.

**MENTOR** Have you received any reports on Freighter Omega N7?

**KALENDORF** What? No! I haven't exactly had time to -

**MENTOR** My monitors tell me that the Scout-Ship *Defiant* has salvaged its cargo.

**KALENDORF** (*Feigning disinterest*) Has it? Well... er... good.

**MENTOR** You are aware of who commands Scout-Ship *Defiant* -

**KALENDORF** Yes... Mirana. But I don't see the relevance of -<sup>12</sup>

**MENTOR** Were you aware of the nature of the cargo carried by Omega N7?

**KALENDORF** No. Why?

*Pause.*

**MENTOR** Why was Scout-Ship *Defiant* taken out of your attack formation and sent on routine patrol duties?

**KALENDORF** I have no idea. It must have been a command issued by one of the fleet sub-commanders. If you like, I'll spend my time finding out for sure rather than getting on with winning this war. I take it I am still in command of the fleet.

*Pause.*

**MENTOR** Mirana is your close friend, is she not?

**KALENDORF** You know that.

**MENTOR** I thought you might have taken a personal interest in her duties. (*Pause*) The answer to your previous question is 'yes'. You are still in command of the fleet. You may proceed with your plan.

**KALENDORF** Thank you.

#### 41. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Bridge.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Report!

**DALEK 1** All Daleks have disembarked from Alby Brook's ship with all necessary equipment.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Has Dalek interface with this scout-ship's control systems been achieved?

**DALEK 1** I have achieved full interface with all Scout-Ship *Defiant's* systems.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Activate main drive.

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*A bleep and rumble of engines begins.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Drammankin gas tanks must now be prepared for operation.

#### 42. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Loading Bay.

*Rumble of engine power.*

**MORLI** Oooh... that noise... we've started movin', haven't we?

**MIRANA** The Daleks have fired up our engines.

**MORLI** Alby! Alby! Look through the window! They're leaving your ship behind. What about Drudger?

**ALBY** (*Humouring*) He'll be all right, Morli. Don't worry.

**MORLI** Won't he get lonely, like? Oooh, poor old Drudge.

**ALBY** (*To MIRANA*) The Daleks can't be planning to take us to Earth.

**MORLI** Earth? Going home? Are we?

**MIRANA** Where else?

**MORLI** Actually, I've never been there.

**SUZ** Earth? But -

**ALBY** That's where the Dalek Supreme is... It's the Enemy Dalek stronghold now... and it's probably where the Emperor's casing is by now.<sup>13</sup>

**SUZ** The Emperor's casing? (*To MIRANA*) I thought you said that'd disappeared.

**MIRANA** Yeah, that's what I thought. Alby?

**ALBY** Yeah, me too. But how do you think I ended up with a bunch of Daleks on board my ship?

**MIRANA** You tell me.

**ALBY** (*Sighs*) Well, I was about to set off for the rendezvous point.

**MIRANA** When you were jumped by Daleks?<sup>14</sup>

**ALBY** Not quite. I picked up that distress call... you know, the one you detected when you were working on the Emperor's casing.

**SUZ** But didn't you say you shut that off, Mirana?

**MIRANA** Yeah.

**ALBY** I know. That's why I knew I had to go and take a look when I picked up the signal. I traced it to a space station in the Pkowiik System. I decided to take a look... Huh, don't know what came over me. Must've thought I was a hero or something. Anyway, when I went aboard, I found there'd been a massive punch-up between the two Dalek factions. Chunks of smashed casing all over the place. My drudger was having

trouble picking up life readings because of a nearby particle cloud or something - but suddenly it detected movement... and then I started to remember that I'm not a hero...

*Crossfade to:*

### **43. Int. Hospital Station. Airlock Reception.**

*(Recap a few lines from Scene 20 in Chapter One, then continue...) Sound of feet scampering over metal flooring in the distance.*

**ALBY** (To DRUDGER) Sounds as if it's got feet. (To himself) So... not a Dalek, then. Thank God. (Aloud) Hello! Who's there?

**MORLI** (Moans in pain)

**ALBY** Drudger... getting any clearer readings yet?

**DRUDGER** (Distort) Negative.

**ALBY** So, no ideas about what I'm dealing with here?

**DRUDGER** (Distort) No ideas at all.

**ALBY** (To himself) Bugger.

*He cocks his gun.*

**ALBY** (Aloud, trying to be brave) All right! Now listen to me... If you come out with your hands up, I won't shoot. (To himself) Come on... come on...

*A crash of MORLI bumping into something. ALBY takes a sharp intake of breath.*

**MORLI** (Distant) Don't shoot. Please don't hurt us. I think I've bashed me knee. Owwww...

**ALBY** 'Us'? How many of you are there?

*MORLI's slightly limping footsteps approach tentatively.*

**MORLI** (Approaching) Eh? There's just me, man. Everyone else... they got killed, like. Don't shoot, mister. I'm starvin'.

**ALBY** Who are you?

**MORLI** Morli.

**ALBY** Morli?

**MORLI** That's my name, yeah. I'm one of the patients.

**ALBY** Patients? You mean this is a hospital?

**MORLI** Yeah... but I'm the only patient left now. Since the bad Daleks came.

**ALBY** The bad Daleks? They attacked?

**MORLI** Yeah. The good Daleks was lookin' after us. Then the bad'n's attacked. Bloody huge battle. They was lookin' for something.<sup>15</sup>

**ALBY** Who was?

**MORLI** The bad Daleks.

**ALBY** What were they looking for?

**MORLI** Dunno, mister.

**ALBY** Alby.

**MORLI** What?

**ALBY** My name's Alby.

**MORLI** Oh. Alby. Mine's Morli.

**ALBY** I know.

**MORLI** Do ya?

**ALBY** Yeah, you just told me.

**MORLI** Did a? Oh aye... sorry... I sometimes forget things, when I'm scared, like, you knah?<sup>16</sup>

**ALBY** Okay... well, look, there's nothing to be scared of. Okay?<sup>17</sup>

**MORLI** Okedokey, mister – er Alby.

**ALBY** How's your knee?

**MORLI** Me knee? Oh, it's not bad. Just knocked it on something when I was runnin' just then. Have you got ought to eat, like?<sup>18</sup>

**ALBY** How long since the Daleks were fighting here?

**MORLI** Dunno. Quiet now. Seems like ages. I've had to miss me dinner and everything. And breakfast... I think. Can't really remember, like, you knah?

*Rustle of plastic wrapper.*

**ALBY** Here... have some of this.

*She grabs the food.*

**MORLI** (*Eating hungrily*) Thanks, mister. What is it? Tastes funny, like.

**ALBY** Basic nutrition bar. It'll build up your strength.

**MORLI** (*Still eating*) Well I'm strong, me, anyways, mister.

**ALBY** Alby.

**MORLI** (*Still eating*) Alby, ooh aye, sorry. Wanna feel me muscles?

**ALBY** Morli, listen to me. Who won the battle? The good or the bad Daleks?

**MORLI** (*Thinking, with difficulty*) Er... er...

**ALBY** It's all right. Take your time.<sup>19</sup>

*Distant rending of metal echoes threateningly.*

**MORLI** (*Fearful*) Oh no. Not again.

**ALBY** What was that?

*More rending metal. It's the hull buckling.*

**MORLI** Keeps happening. There was a lot of big explosions when the Daleks was fightin'. I think they may have done some serious damage, like.<sup>20</sup>

*A breeze starts to pick up.*

**ALBY** Oh no... Drudger. I think there's a hull breach.

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) You are correct, Alby Brook. I am reading severe buckling in the section adjoining your current position. I suggest you leave the space station immediately.

**ALBY** Yeah, well I've picked up a survivor, and she hasn't got a space suit. Morli, do you know where they keep the spacesuits?

**MORLI** Errr...

*Distant sound of rending metal. The breeze has turned into quite a vicious wind. The air is rushing towards the hull breach.*

**ALBY** Come on! You've got to come with me. Maybe we can shut off this section. Come on!

**MORLI** Right, man. I'm with you, like.

**ALBY** Come on!

*Hurried footsteps. Laboured breathing from them both as they struggle against the wind. The wind reaches tornado level.*

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Alby, there is a bulkhead door ahead of you.

**ALBY** (*Above the wind*) Yeah! I see it!

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) If you can shut it behind you, you will seal yourself off from the damaged section.

*The wind crescendos. Sound of ALBY and MORLI struggling. One last vocal sound of struggle from ALBY. Click of a button depressing, hiss of*



a servo. A huge door begins to close. As it does, the wind is slowly shut off.

**ALBY** (Above the din) That's it! It's closing!

**MORLI** Well done, Alby!!! Ya've dunnit!

Door finally closes with a huge crunch. The wind is muffled behind it. They recover, huffing and puffing.

**ALBY** (Still recovering) Now... Morli, are you sure that there are no Daleks left here?

**MORLI** Pretty sure.

**ALBY** 'Pretty' sure?

**MORLI** Aye, well... ya knah, I think good'ns were killed and I saw the bad'ns when they were leavin'.

**ALBY** The bad Daleks left?

**MORLI** Yeah. After they broke right through those walls into the special place, they just took that big thing and left.

**ALBY** Woah... hold on a minute. What big thing?

**MORLI** Massive. Big container thing.

**ALBY** Can you show me?

**MORLI** Nah, cos they took it. It's gone.

**ALBY** No, Morli. Can you show me where they took it from?

**MORLI** Sure.

**ALBY** All right. Drudger, how's the hull of this thing standing up?

**DRUDGER** (Distort) I am detecting no other areas of structural instability at the moment.

**ALBY** Good. I need to take a look around. I think we may have found where our Daleks have been keeping the Enemy Dalek Emperor.

#### 44. Int. Enemy Dalek Transport Ship.

*Burble of controls.*

**DALEK DRONE** Particle cloud signal interference now successfully filtered. Contact confirmed with Alby Brook's spacecraft. He has docked with the Hospital Station.

**DALEK COMMANDER** As predicted. Has he entered the Station?

**DALEK DRONE** Readings indicate he has entered and encountered a surviving humanoid.

**DALEK COMMANDER** Dispatch transolar disc squadron to capture them.

**DALEK DRONE** I obey.

**DALEK COMMANDER** The moment the squadron has launched, we must engage hyper drive and leave this system.

**DALEK DRONE** Understood.

#### 45. Int. Hospital Ship. Examination Bay.

*Large door opens.*

**ALBY** My God...

**MORLI** What is it?

**ALBY** It's the bloody Emperor of the Daleks... that's what it is. What is this place?

**MORLI** Special place. Where the good Daleks did all their special stuff, like.<sup>21</sup>

**ALBY** It's special, all right. Drudger, are you tapping into my suit camera?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Tapping in now.

**ALBY** Do you see what I see?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) The Dalek Emperor.

**ALBY** Then I'm not imagining it. Looks like our Daleks were giving it a right old going over. They've got it on... well it looks like a huge operating table.<sup>22</sup>

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Agreed. This suggests they were attempting to access its cerebral functions.

**ALBY** And talking of suggestions... any idea what I should do? We can't take it with us and... Wait a minute.

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) What is troubling you, Alby Brook?

**ALBY** Morli, you said the Enemy Daleks left with a huge container.

**MORLI** Aye, they did.

**ALBY** Big enough to carry this thing?

**MORLI** Definitely, aye. 'Bout the same size, I'd say, man.<sup>23</sup>

**ALBY** Then why the hell didn't they take it with them?

*Pause.*

**MORLI** Dunno. Does it matter?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Attention, Alby Brook.

**ALBY** What's the matter?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) I am detecting a squadron of Enemy Dalek transolar discs approaching at high speed.

**ALBY** What - ? Oh, shit! What am I supposed to do now? Er... (*Getting a grip*) Morli, you remember those spacesuits we passed down the corridor on the way here?

**MORLI** In the big locker, aye.

**ALBY** Go and get one and get in it - now!

**MORLI** You're not angry with us, are you?

**ALBY** No. I'm just frightened, because -

**MORLI** The bad Daleks are coming back to get us?

**ALBY** Yeah... But I think they're coming back to get this.

**MORLI** The Emproary thing?

**ALBY** Yeah - Look, just go and get in that suit. I've got to think of a way to blow this thing up.

**MORLI** Why bother? We should just get out -

**ALBY** Shut up, Morli! Go!<sup>24</sup>

**MORLI** (*As she runs off*) Blimey. Keep your hair on, man. Her footsteps recede into the background.

**ALBY** Right... now... Drudger, tell me... what do you make of these controls? (*Pause*) Well?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) I am processing visual information.

**ALBY** Can you hurry up?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) The controls relate to holographic projection.

**ALBY** What?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Please touch the Emperor's casing.

**ALBY** But... okay.

*Fizz of hand hitting holographic projection.*

**ALBY** Oh my God - it's a bloody hologram. It's not the real thing. The Enemy Daleks must have taken the real thing. But why -?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Since the control configuration matches known Alliance Dalek technology, I would suggest that this is a holographic chamber designed for the testing of experimental procedures.

**ALBY** Then why are the Enemy Daleks coming back?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Perhaps they are coming for you.

**ALBY** Why does this smell like a trap all of a sudden?

*Clumsy footsteps of MORLI approaching.*

**MORLI** (*Spacesuit distort*) Have I got this thing on right? Feels funny.

**ALBY** Oh, Morli, you've got the boots on the wrong feet! Come here!

#### **46. Ext. Space. Enemy Dalek Transolar Comms.**

*The purr of transolar disc engines.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Transolar disc squadron now moving to final approach on Alliance Hospital Space Station. Squadron will disperse into search pattern Ceranud 5.

**DALEKS** We obey.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Calibrate rangescopes to detect two humanoids. *Insistent bleeping.*

**DALEK 1** (*Distort*) Attack unit 7 now in position. Am detecting two humanoid figures moving on foot across Station's lower hull support structures.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** All units will close on those co-ordinates immediately!

#### **47. Ext. Hospital Space Station. Hull.**

*ALBY and MORLI's voices are distorted inside space helmets. Much vocal effort and breathing as they clamber across the hull.*

**ALBY** Come on, Morli! Keep up!

**MORLI** It feels all funny... like me stomach's all floaty... Ooh, I think I'm gonna puke, man. It's that bar o'stuff you gave me!<sup>25</sup>

**ALBY** No, it isn't! It's zero-grav. Haven't you been in zero-grav before?<sup>26</sup>

**MORLI** Nah, ya soft get. D'ya think I'm an astronaut or summit? I've spent all me life on the station... least ways, I canna remember anything else.

*Dalek gun and explosion.*

**ALBY** Oh no, they've found us! Quick!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Attention escaping humans! You are our prisoners! Do not move!

**ALBY** Drudger! Can you track our position, bring the ship to us?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) I am already heading towards you.

**ALBY** Fantastic! Well done!

**MORLI** He's a clever beggar, your Drudger, isn't he?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) But I regret to report that rescue is not possible.

**ALBY** What? Why not?

**DRUDGER** (*Distort*) Daleks have taken over control of this ship. Approaching your position now.

*Sound of Gunship MX4's descending engines.*

**ALBY** (Intense frustration) Oh shit.  
**DALEK** (Distort) Surrender! Surrender! Surrender!

#### 48. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Loading Bay.

**MIRANA** And then they made you bring them here? (Pause) Alby?  
What's the matter?  
**MORLI** They did bad stuff to him.  
**SUZ** Bad - ? Alby, what did they do?

#### 49. Int. Gunship *MX4*.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Attach brain analysis disc to his head.  
**ALBY** Get off me!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Restrain him!  
**ALBY** Aaargh!  
**DALEK 1** Activating disc.  
*Buzz of hovering disc.*  
**DALEK 1** Disc attaching to subject's head now.  
*Fizz of attachment.*  
**ALBY** Aaaaargh!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Do not struggle! If you struggle, the disc will administer pain.  
*Fizzzzz.*  
**ALBY** Aaaaaargh! Bastards!  
**MORLI** Leave him alone!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Exterminate her!  
**DALEK 2** I obey.  
**ALBY** No!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Wait! We will keep her alive.  
**DALEK 2** Understood.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** She may be of use. We will begin. Where is Susan Mendes?  
*Disc hums.*  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Answer!  
**ALBY** (In pain) I don't know.  
*Fzzzzz.*  
**ALBY** Aaaaargh!!!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The analysis disc monitors your brain waves. If you fail to answer or do not tell the truth, you will experience pain. Where is Susan Mendes?  
*Fzzzzz.*  
**ALBY** Aaaaargh!  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We know that your associate, Mirana, will have accessed her cryo-pod.  
**ALBY** (Taken aback) What?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We know that you are to rendezvous with Mirana's ship.  
**ALBY** (In pain) If you know, then why are you asking?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** These statements create mental images in your mind. The analysis disc is downloading them to the disc operator. (To other *DALEK*) Report analysis of download.

**DALEK 1** Rendezvous co-ordinates are pre-programmed into this ship's nav computer. Hovering robot drone is able to initiate main drive and course settings.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Order the hovering robot drone to initiate main drive and set co-ordinates for the rendezvous.

*The disc fizzes.*

**ALBY** Aaaaaaargh! No way!

*More disc fizzing.*

**ALBY** Aaaaaargh! Oh, God!!! Aaaargh!

**DALEK 1** Brain analysis suggests further motivation is required.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Understood. If you do not give the order to your hovering robot drone, we will exterminate this humanoid female.

**MORLI** No!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Restrain her!

**MORLI** Aaargh! Let go!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Give the order to the hovering drone!

**ALBY** *(In pain)* I'm sorry, Morli. But I... I can't... can't do it.

**MORLI** Alby! Please!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Report analysis of download.

**DALEK 1** Hovering robot drone's control systems can be overridden by Dalek technology.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Proceed!

**DALEK 1** I obey.

**MORLI** You mean you're not going to kill me?<sup>27</sup>

**ALBY** Why did you make that threat?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The statement provoked additional mental stress. You envisaged that which you did not wish to reveal.

*Disc FX wind down.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Remove the analysis disc.

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*Disc disconnects and hovers off.*

**ALBY** *(Exhausted)* Satisfied?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We also now know how important this secret is to you.

**ALBY** What do you mean?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** You were prepared to sacrifice a friend to keep us from finding the Mendes woman.

**ALBY** Morli isn't my friend. I only just met her.

**DALEK 1** The disc detected your concern for her.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** This weakness in your character may be of further use to us.

**ALBY** *(Suspicious)* Did you get that stuff about Mirana and the rendezvous out of my brain, or did you already know all that?<sup>28</sup>

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence!

**ALBY** What's going on here? Eh? Why did you take your Emperor and then come back for me? Did you know I'd be coming here?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Secure the humans!

*MORLI lets out a yelp as she's grabbed by a Dalek.*

**ALBY** *(Struggling. Being dragged away)* You deliberately sent that distress call, didn't you? Why? Why did you want to trap me... and how did you know I'd be out here anyway?!

## 50. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay.

The conversation is hushed.

**SUZ** So what are you saying, Alby?  
**ALBY** I'm not sure.  
**MIRANA** How could those Daleks have been expecting you?  
**MORLI** Have you got any food? I'm hungry again.  
*Rustle of wrapper.*  
**ALBY** Here.  
**MORLI** Ahhh, thanks, man. I don't hold it against you, you know.  
**ALBY** (*Distracted*) What?  
**MORLI** Saying the Daleks could kill me.<sup>29</sup>  
**ALBY** Oh. Morli... look, I'm sorry about - <sup>30</sup>  
**MORLI** Nah... I understand. You canna go givin' the Bad'ns top secret information, can you? We'd be right bugged if they knew what we was plannin', wouldn't wu?  
**SUZ** You're right, Morli. The trouble is, the Daleks seem to have a habit of always knowing more than they should.  
**MORLI** Aye, that's what they told us on the machine at the hospital.  
**MIRANA** Machine? What machine, Morli?  
**MORLI** The Good'ns machine. Talks in your head, you know? 'The Bad'ns commuted the greatest crimes known to their uni-' thing.  
**MIRANA** (*Musing*) Universe...  
**MORLI** Aye, that's it. You hear it too?  
**MIRANA** Sounds like some sort of Alliance Dalek conditioning.  
**ALBY** Conditioning?  
*Footsteps, approach.*  
**MARBER** (*Approaching*) Captain... Er, excuse me, ma'am.  
**MIRANA** (*Suppressed irritation*) What is it, Marber?  
**MARBER** (*Confidentially*) I don't know if you have any idea where they're taking us, but - <sup>31</sup>  
**MIRANA** Why?  
**MARBER** Some of the crew and I have been taking a look out of the viewport at some of the star formations.  
**ALBY** And?  
**MARBER** I think... Well, we think we're heading for Earth's solar system.  
**ALBY** Top marks.  
**MARBER** You knew?  
**MIRANA** Wasn't it obvious that's where they'd be taking us?  
**MARBER** But what would be the point? I mean, our fleet's about to destroy all their forces in Earth's solar system.  
**ALBY** You really believe all the propaganda, don't you?  
**MARBER** Propaganda? Look, if what our security guards have been telling me about her is even half true -  
**SUZ** (*Pointedly*) And what have they been telling you about 'her'?  
**MARBER** That the Enemy Daleks need your mind to reactivate their Emperor.  
**ALBY** What about it?  
**MARBER** Then it's true? Well... isn't it obvious? We can't let them take her back to Earth. If the Daleks were to create a new Emper-

**SUZ** So what do you propose we do?

**MARBER** Look, we've got your gun and we outnumber the Enemy Daleks on this ship by about three to one.

**ALBY** And that means the odds are still in their favour.

**MARBER** So what are we going to do? Just sit here and let the enemy win?

**MIRANA** Kalendorf has a plan.

**MARBER** What sort of plan?

**ALBY** Look, we'll never get through the Alliance lines into the solar system -

**MARBER** And if that's true, the situation is even more urgent. These Daleks here will probably hold us hostage, try to force the Alliance to let us through. The Mentor will never accede to their demands, so...

**MIRANA** So?

**MARBER** They'll end up killing us one by one.

**ALBY** If the Mentor doesn't order our destruction first... just to simplify the issue.

**SUZ** Your Mentor wanted me dead anyway.

**MARBER** What do you mean? (*It's dawning on him*) Wh - ? Then... Captain, why did we rescue her if the Mentor...? What's going on here?

**ALBY** Do we have ourselves a real boy-scout?

**MIRANA** Oh yeah, I believe we do.

**MARBER** (*Aghast*) You people are working against the Alliance Daleks, aren't you? Against the Mentor.

**SUZ** Your Mentor ordered my destruction. I was supposed to be fired into a collapsing star and forgotten about.

**MARBER** Well maybe if your mind is controlled by the Enemy Dalek Emperor, that's the best place for you.

**ALBY** (*Angry*) You just watch what you're saying!

**SUZ** Alby... It's all right. Look, I am not controlled by the Emperor. (*Slightly sarcastically*) He's just used my mind as somewhere to store his consciousness... for reasons best known to himself.

**MARBER** And you expect me to believe that?

**MIRANA** I expect you to obey orders, Mr Marber.

**MARBER** Obey the orders of a traitor?

**ALBY** Traitor? Who have we betrayed? The human race? The Earth Alliance? Or were you just thinking of the Mentor?

**MARBER** What's the difference? We're all on the same side!

**ALBY** The difference, my friend, is that in her own, sweet, beautiful way, your precious Mentor is every bit as bad as the old Daleks we know and hate so well. Haven't you ever heard of the Punished Planets? (*Pause*) Yeah... I see you have. But like so many of us, you decided not to listen to the rumours... or just not think.

**MARBER** Look, the Mentor is -

**ALBY** And what *did* you think? Oh, there has to be an explanation for it. The Mentor and her Daleks are here to save us. She wouldn't order the destruction of planets, just because they wouldn't, or couldn't help with the war effort... or couldn't help to the degree that *she* felt appropriate.

**MARBER** The Mentor is the only reason we're defeating the Enemy Daleks. Without her forces, we'd have been overrun years ago.

**MIRANA** Maybe, but what do you think's going to happen when

we've won? Do you think the Mentor and her Daleks are just going to say, 'Glad we could be of service' and shoot off back to their own universe?<sup>32</sup>

**ALBY** Well?

**MARBER** I... I don't know.

**MORLI** Have you got any more food, like?

**ALBY** Here...

*Another rustle of a food bar being given and unwrapped.*

**MORLI** Aw... magic. (*Eating*)

**SUZ** Alby, what do you think they'll do?

**ALBY** They'll take over. They may give us the illusion of freedom... of choice... of happiness. But if any system of planets... any planet... any one person steps out of line -

**SUZ** They'll exterminate them?

**ALBY** For their own good, you understand. Peace and order... but on the Mentor's terms, nobody else's.

**MARBER** Even if you are right, isn't that better than being conquered and enslaved by the Enemy Daleks?<sup>33</sup>

**MIRANA** Yes. But that's just the lesser of two evils. I'd prefer a third option.

**MARBER** So what is Kalendorf planning? (*Pause*) Well? You might as well tell me. (*Pause. Realising*) You don't know, do you?

**MIRANA** We trust him.

**MARBER** (*Incredulous*) You trust him? Is that all?

**SUZ** With a man like Kalendorf... that means everything. He's a Knight of Velyshaa. I don't think he'll rest until he's sure that every last Dalek - of whatever faction - has been driven out of this galaxy.

### 51. Int. Planet Velyshaa. Saloran's Ship.

**TARKOV** Have you any idea why Kalendorf didn't trust his friends?

**SALORAN** I'm not sure it was a case of him not trusting them. He just felt in his heart that Daleks could never be trusted... no matter which dimension they came from.

**TARKOV** You mean... The more people who knew about his secret plan, the more likely it was that the Daleks might find out?

**SALORAN** (*Pointedly*) Which Daleks are you talking about?

### 52. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.

*Rumble of engines at full thrust.*

**KALENDORF** Maintain course and speed. Give me a scope reading.

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Second wave of Enemy Dalek ships still well beyond strike distance.

**KALENDORF** (*Tense, under his breath*) Good... good.

**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Our fleet is now entering Earth's solar system.

**KALENDORF** Start scanning for likely landing spots on some of the moons of Jupiter.

**ALTERNATE DALEK 3** I obey.

*Scanning FX commence.*

**KALENDORF** I don't like the look of our power reserves. If we can land and recharge a significant number of ships, we'll be in better shape to tackle their second wave... if it gets here before our reinforcements.



**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Understood, Kalendorf.

*Chatter of electronic readouts.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK 3** Scans are yielding unexpected results.

**KALENDORF** Unexpected? What do you mean exactly?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 3** (*During and beneath the following*) Relaying scan results to main view plate.

*Door opens.*

**HERRICK** (*With some effort*) Reporting for duty, sir.

**KALENDORF** Herrick? Are you sure you're fit enough to -

**HERRICK** Sir, look! On the screen... What the hell's that?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 3** The planet Jupiter.

**HERRICK** (*Gobsmacked*) Jupiter... but... (*Is lost for words*)

**KALENDORF** I thought Earth was the only inhabitable planet in this system.

**HERRICK** It is... I mean, was.

**KALENDORF** What exactly is the scan reading?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 3** Nitrogen/oxygen atmosphere: breathable for human beings. Seventeen large continental landmasses. Large H<sub>2</sub>O oceans. Conditions are suitable for human habitation.

**KALENDORF** But... why? How?

*Bleep of controls.*

**HERRICK** There's something in orbit... several somethings by the look of it.

*Burble of scanners.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Terraforming generators. Energy signatures are those of Enemy Dalek technology.

**HERRICK** You're saying that the Enemy Daleks have deliberately turned the biggest gas giant of the solar system into an inhabitable planet?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** It would seem so.

**HERRICK** But it doesn't make sense.

**KALENDORF** No... No, it doesn't. What the hell are they playing at?

### **53. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Report.

**DALEK 1** This scout-ship is now within scanning range of Earth's solar system.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We must now deal with our human hostages.

**DALEK 1** Understood. Drammankin gas tanks have been fitted to loading bay air-supply vents, as ordered.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Proceed with Drammankin gas release.

**DALEK 1** The humans may become hostile when they realise the Drammankin gas is being released. Susan Mendes is armed and may attack Dalek guards.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Dalek guards in the loading bay will be ordered to withdraw.

**DALEK 1** Understood.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** When the Drammankin gas has done its work, we will retrieve Susan Mendes for brain analysis.

**DALEK 1** Understood.

*Comms beep.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Dalek commander to Dalek guards in loading bay. Withdraw immediately.

**54. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay.**

*Door opening in mid distance.*

**MORLI** Look!  
**MARBER** Captain! *Captain!* The Daleks – they're leaving!  
**MIRANA** What?  
**ALBY** Now where the hell are *they* going?  
**SUZ** Alby –  
**ALBY** What?  
**SUZ** I – I don't –  
**ALBY** *What?!*  
**SUZ** I've got a feeling –  
**ALBY** So have I. (*To Daleks*) Hey! You two! Where the hell are you going?!!  
**MARBER** They're up to something –  
**ALBY** My thoughts exactly – Suz, give me that gun!  
**SUZ** Here.  
*Gun fires. Impact on Dalek.*  
**MORLI** You hit one!<sup>34</sup>  
**DALEK GUARD 1** Alert! Alert! Under fire! Under fire! Alert! (*Continues*)  
**ALBY** Too right, you bastards!  
*ALBY fires again. Another explosion.*  
**ALBY** Everyone down!  
*He fires again. Another explosion.*  
**DALEK GUARD 2** Motive units damaged. I cannot move.  
**DALEK GUARD 1** I will give covering fire.

**55. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Negative! Do not give covering fire! Susan Mendes must not be put at risk.  
**DALEK GUARD 1** (*Distort*) I... obey.  
**DALEK 1** Command network diagnostic data indicates one of the Dalek guards has sustained severe damage to motive power.

**56. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay.**

**MORLI** It's stuck in the doorway.<sup>35</sup>  
*ALBY fires again.*  
**MIRANA** Alby, no! Don't fire again!  
**ALBY** What?  
**MIRANA** Leave it! They can't close the door. That Dalek's in the way!  
**MARBER** Why isn't it firing back?  
**SUZ** It's me! They don't want to risk harming me.  
**MARBER** Aim for that other Dalek's gun!  
*ALBY's gun fires.*  
**DALEK GUARD 2** Alert! Alert!  
*(Continues into next scene...)*

## 57. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

**DALEK GUARD 2** (*Distort*) Alert! Am under fire!

*An explosion on distort.*

**DALEK GUARD 2** (*Distort*) Weaponry disabled! Unable to defend!

**ALBY** (*Distort*) Come on! All of you! Let's get out of here!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Close loading bay doors immediately! The humans must not escape!

**DALEK 1** The immobilised Dalek guard is obstructing the doorway!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** (*With more emphasis*) Close loading bay doors immediately and release Drammankin gas! Now!

**DALEK 1** I obey!

## 58. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay.

*Doors activate. Panic and chatter and footsteps of crew escaping.*

**MARBER** Quick! They're closing the doors! Move it!<sup>36</sup>

**ALBY** Come on! Suz?

**SUZ** I'm all right, let's go -

*A hissing noise.*

**SUZ** What's that?<sup>37</sup>

**MIRANA** What do you mean?

*The door crashes into Dalek.*

**MORLI** Oh blimey, look at that! (*She laughs over the following*)

**DALEK GUARD 1** Aaargh! Alert! Casing being crushed by loading bay door! I cannot move! Assist me! Assist!

**DALEK GUARD 2** (*Moving into distance*) Cannot assist! Cannot assist! I have orders to withdraw and await reinforcements!

**MORLI** That's magic, that is! Crushin' the bastard!

*Door mechanism is clicking on and off, like a car engine with crashing gears. Mechanism is in trouble. The Dalek casing is being slowly crushed under its weight, but it's a bit of battle.*

**DALEK GUARD 1** Aaargh! Asssssssst!<sup>38</sup>

**ALBY** That Dalek casing's not going to take the weight of that door indefinitely, folks! Come on!

*Coughing and screaming of crewmembers. Hissing increases in volume.*

**MIRANA** What the hell's happening?

**MARBER** (*Spluttering*) It's gas! Coming from the air vents! Gas! Everyone out! For God's sake! Now!<sup>39</sup>

**ALBY** The cheaky beggars were gonna gas us!

**MIRANA** Are gassing us!

**SUZ** Alby, come on!

*Screaming, panic and coughing crescendos.*

## 59. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The humans are escaping! Track them on internal scanners.

*Ping of scanners tracking.*

**DALEK 1** Tracking. Fifty-seven humans rendered unconscious by Drammankin gas. The remaining sixteen are moving at speed along walkway adjoining loading bay.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Dispatch a security squad to intercept them immediately.

**60. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway.**

*Footsteps and much exhausted breathing of the sixteen survivors running.*

**MARBER** What about the others we left behind? Are they dead?  
**SUZ** They wouldn't have wanted to kill me. That gas must've just knocked them all out.<sup>40</sup>  
**MORLI** Yeah, but there'll be others after us soon, won't there?  
**ALBY** Mirana! Where are we heading?  
**MIRANA** We have to get to the armoury – We're not going to get back control of my ship with just one gun!  
**MARBER** We should take this lift!<sup>41</sup>  
*Footsteps come to a halt. Much recovery vocal noises.*  
**MIRANA** Level Nine.  
**MARBER** (Irritated) I know!  
*Bleep of lift activation. Then negative bleep.*  
**MARBER** It's not working.  
**SUZ** They'll have shut down the lifts.  
**ALBY** Makes sense. The Daleks never miss a trick.  
**MORLI** Are we bugged then?  
**ALBY** Let's hope not, Morli.  
**MIRANA** If they've accessed the security shutdown controls, it won't be long before they activate the emergency bulkhead doors and cut off our escape routes.  
**MARBER** So what do we do?  
**MIRANA** Use the maintenance access ladders and get to the nearest escape pods.  
**MARBER** There are four on the level below us. Should be enough to take us all – at a squeeze.  
**ALBY** Well let's go then!  
*Footsteps start (led by MIRANA at first).*  
**MIRANA** This way. Should be a maintenance hatch along –  
*Door opens in distance.*  
**DALEKS** (Variously, in distance) Surrender! Surrender now! You are our prisoners!  
**MORLI** Look out! More of the buggers!  
**ALBY** Move it, everyone! I'll cover you!  
*Running footsteps begin.*  
**SUZ** No, Alby! Give me the gun! They won't shoot me!  
**MIRANA** Marber, help me with this hatch!  
**MORLI** I'll help. Got big muscles, me! Wanna feel?  
*Metallic creak and click of hatch being opened. Continues under...*  
**MARBER** (With effort) Got it!  
*MIRANA grunts with effort too.*  
**MORLI** (With effort) Argh! It's all crusted up! You wanna look after these hatches, man!  
**MARBER** (With effort) Keep pulling!  
**DALEK** Exterminate!  
*Dalek firing. Several humans cry out and die.*

### 61. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

*Cry of humans and firing continues on distort as if on screen.*

**DALEK 1** Dalek security squad opening fire. Eleven humans exterminated.

**DAL SQUAD LEADER** (*With urgency*) Cease firing! Cease firing! Susan Mendes must not be harmed!

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Cease fire! All of you! You daren't kill me! You daren't!

*Firing has ceased.*

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Now, quickly! All of you!

**DALEK 1** Humans are escaping through maintenance hatchway. Schematic suggests they are heading for escape capsules on the level below.

**ALBY** (*Distort*) Suz!

**SUZ** (*Distort*) Just go, Alby! Get out of here! If you stay, sooner or later, they're going to kill you and... and I couldn't bear that!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** They must not escape! They must not escape! Security squad will switch weaponry to paralysis mode.

**MORLI** (*Distort*) Come on, Alby - !

### 62. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway.

**MORLI** (*...continued*) Come on!!!

**SUZ** Alby! Go! Please!!!

**ALBY** I can't leave you, Suz! Not again. I can't!

*Gun fires. Impacts.<sup>42</sup>*

**SUZ** (*To DALEKS*) Get back! Get back!

**DALEK** Under fire! Under fire!

**DALEK 1** You will surrender! Surrender!

**ALBY** Suuuz!

### 63. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

*Gunfire continues on distort from previous scene, with cries from Daleks etc.*

**DALEK 1** Two humans have escaped down maintenance ladder. Security scan identifies them as Captain Mirana and First Officer Marber. Alarm bleeps.

**DALEK 1** They have entered an escape pod. Escape pod engines now firing. They have escaped.<sup>43</sup>

### 64. Ext. Space.

*Escape pod launches into space.*

### 65. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Security squad will fire paralysis beams at the two remaining humanoids with Susan Mendes, immediately!

**DALEK** (*Distort*) We obey. Firing!

**66. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway.**

*Dalek guns fire.*

**SUZ** Noooo!!!

**ALBY** Su - aaaargh!

**MORLI** Aaaaaargh!

*Silence.*

**SUZ** You... you've killed them! Keep back or I'll fire!

**DALEK** You are our prisoner!

**SUZ** Then I'll be your dead prisoner.

**DALEK** No! No! You must not kill yourself! You are essential to our plan!

**SUZ** You've just killed the one reason for me staying alive. I don't care anymore.

**DALEK** He is not dead.

**SUZ** What?

**DALEK** Alby Brook is not dead. We were ordered to fire paralysis beams only.

**SUZ** Alby?

**DALEK** He is unconscious, but he will recover shortly.<sup>44</sup>

**67. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Tell her, 'If you do not surrender, we will exterminate Alby Brook'.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) If you do not surrender, we will exterminate Alby Brook.

*Pause. SUZ starts to laugh, a slow laugh of despair. It grows in momentum. Crossfade:*

**68. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway.**

*SUZ's laugh becomes hysterical.*

**DALEK** Silence!

*She stops.*

**SUZ** Or you'll exterminate me? I don't think so.

**DALEK** Drop the weapon or the man you love will die.

*Long pause. The weapon drops to the floor with a clang.*

**69. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber.**

**MENTOR** Another risk, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** I don't think it's a dangerous risk. We'll leave half the fleet orbiting in defensive formation. The rest will land and refuel. Our scientists have located more than enough chemical and mineral deposits on Jupiter for our purposes.

**MENTOR** Fortuitous.

**KALENDORF** Indeed. If all goes well, we'll leave Jupiter with more power at our disposal than we had when we first engaged the enemy outside this solar system. We'll also be able to give our non-Dalek soldiers some time to stretch their legs or whatever else it is they need to stretch. They've been cooped up in those troop carriers for several

months. The Orearlisians in particular have been complaining rather a lot.<sup>45</sup>

**MENTOR** And you are certain that Jupiter is completely uninhabited?

**KALENDORF** I'm sure you've accessed the scans yourself, Mentor. No intelligent life whatsoever.

**MENTOR** Have you formed any opinion as to why the Dalek Supreme might have... laid this golden egg for us?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** I think the Enemy Daleks were intending to make it a military base, but had to retreat when we defeated their first fleet.

**MENTOR** That is... an optimistic assumption.

**KALENDORF** I don't see any other reasonable interpretation.

**MENTOR** (*Firm*) That this newly terraformed planet Jupiter is a trap, Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** In what way? You've seen the scans. Lush vegetation. A breathable atmosphere. Rich in minerals and -

**MENTOR** Ideal for human habitation. The Daleks have no such requirements.

**KALENDORF** You would rather we stayed here and met their second wave with our energy depleted and our crews exhausted?

*Pause.*

**MENTOR** When you land on this planet, Kalendorf... be on your guard. You and I know how cunning the Dalek Supreme can be. Do not forget that caution I have admired in you so much.

**KALENDORF** I won't, Mentor. I won't.

**MENTOR** Before you proceed, I feel I must inform you that Scout-Ship *Defiant* has been detected at long range, approaching this solar system.

**KALENDORF** Then I'll contact Mirana and ask her why she -

**MENTOR** My monitors have already attempted contact. The *Defiant* seems to have suffered a communications breakdown.

**KALENDORF** Then I'll take a ship and intercept -

**MENTOR** I have already dispatched a gunship to offer assistance. (*Pause*) Is something troubling you, Kalendorf?

## 70. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Bridge.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Engage restraints!

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*Bleep. Then massive clunking of three huge metallic restraint devices. As each clunks shut, gasps of pain from MORLI, ALBY, then finally SUZ.*

**SUZ** What are you going to do to us?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Activate brain analysis disc.

**DALEK 1** I obey.

*Hum of brain analysis disc rising.*

**SUZ** What is that?

**ALBY** (*Groggy*) It's that thing they used on me to -

**DALEK 1** Silence!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Brain analysis disc will attach to the Mendes woman's head.

**DALEK 1** I obey.

Controls bleep. Disc hum as it hovers to SUZ. 'Glitch' of it attaching.

**SUZ** Aaaaargh!

**DALEK 1** Silence!

**ALBY** Leave her alone!

*Massive electrical shock.*

**ALBY** Aaaaargh!

**MORLI** Alby!<sup>46</sup>

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence! All of you!

*SUZ and ALBY make noises of recovery.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Susan Mendes, the brain analysis disc will scan your mind for traces of the Emperor's consciousness. If you resist us, your friends will die in agony. The girl first, then the man you love. We will begin.

**ALBY** (*Weakly*) Suz... I'm sorry.

*Buzz of disc activating. SUZ gives out a yelp of pain, which settles into moans of discomfort.*

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Where is the Emperor?

**SUZ** I... I...

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Where is the Emperor? Do not resist. Surrender your mind to us. Where is the Emperor?

**SUZ** I... I... can't -

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Maximum scan power. Now!

*Control bleep. Huge charge from the disc.*

**SUZ** Aaaaaargh!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We are entering your mind. You cannot resist.<sup>47</sup>  
We are entering your miiiiind!

*Cut immediately to:*

### 71. Int. Suz's Mind.

**SUZ** (*Close and echoing*) I... I cannot resist. You are entering my mind. Who are you?

**EMPEROR** (*Very distant and echoing wildly*) Susan Mendes... Susan Mendes... Susan Mendes... (*Continues, coming ever closer*)

**SUZ** (*With dread*) It's... it's you... It's you. No. No. I don't want to think this... No.

**EMPEROR** (*Clearer and foreground*) I am part of you. You are part of me. You will obey! You will obey! You will obey!

**SUZ** No! Please! No!

**EMPEROR** We are one! We are the same! We are the Emperor of the Daleks!

**SUZ** (*Screams*)

### 72. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

*SUZ is screaming.*

**ALBY** Leave her alone! Stop this! I'll kill you! I'll bloody kill you all! Bastards!

*Electric shock.*

**ALBY** Aaaaargh!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence!

*ALBY recovers noisily.*



**MORLI** Alby... Alby, are you okay, man?<sup>48</sup>  
**ALBY** (*Recovering from agony*) Argh... yeah... I... I'm... I'm okay.  
**DALEK 1** Scan complete.  
*Disc hums away then the hum winds down.*  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Report analysis.  
**DALEK 1** Total success.  
**ALBY** Success? What do you mean?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Silence!  
**ALBY** What do you mean? Success? Have you killed her? Suz?  
**MORLI** Alby, don't! They - <sup>49</sup>  
*Massive electric shock again.*  
**ALBY** AAAAAaaaargh!  
*He recovers.*  
**ALBY** (*Very weak*) Suz?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Susan Mendes?  
**SUZ** (*Dazed*) Mmm? What?  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Susan Mendes. Speak.  
*Pause.*  
**SUZ** I... we... I... am the Emperor of the Daleks.  
**ALBY** (*Screams*) Nooooo!

*Crash in closing theme*

## NOTES

1. Line changed to: 'No! I'm ~~serious~~ — ~~keep away!!!~~ (Pause) I ~~mean it!~~ I know why you want me. I know I'm vital to your plan.'
2. Line changed to: 'Um... We'll... (She stops) Well... Now not's exactly a good time, is it?'
3. Line changed to: 'Sure. Yeah. I know. You... carry on.'
4. Line changed to: '(Weak) Thank... thank you, sir. They hit us pretty hard didn't they?'
5. Line changed to: 'Is anyone in a fit state to give me a damage report?'
6. Line changed to: 'I... I... I... I have sust-~~sust~~-sustained ~~da~~-damage, but re-re-remain ~~op~~-operational.'
7. Line changed to: 'Rep-~~rep~~-~~rep~~-repair teams report slow progress. Damage to outer hull plates and engines was severe.'
8. Line changed to: 'Alliance ~~fl~~-~~fl~~-fleet casualties currently stand at 132 ships. Approximately 25 per cent of our force.'
9. Line changed to: 'Oh... (Sighs) I told the Daleks I wanted to die once before. Years ago.'
10. Line changed to: 'You're saying **that** you should have just killed yourself the moment the Daleks docked with my ship?'
11. Line changed to: 'Yeah. If I was dead, the Dalek Emperor would be dead too. And you'd win the war. Well, wouldn't you?'
12. Line changed to: '(Impatient) Yes... Mirana. But I don't see the relevance of **that** - '
13. Line changed to: 'That's where the Dalek Supreme is... It's the Enemy Dalek stronghold ~~new~~... and it's probably where the Emperor's casing is by now.'
14. Line changed to: 'When you were **hijacked** by Daleks?'
15. Line changed to: 'Yeah. The good Daleks **were** lookin' after us. Then the bad'n's attacked. Bloody huge battle. They **were** lookin' for something.'
16. Line changed to: 'Did a? Oh aye... sorry... I sometimes forget things, **like**, when I'm scared, **like**, you knah?'
17. Line changed to: '**All right**... well, look, there's nothing to be scared of. Okay?'
18. Line changed to: 'Me knee? Oh, it's not bad. Just knocked it on something when I was runnin' just then. Have you got ought to eat, **like**?'
19. Line changed to: 'It's all right. **Just** take your time.'
20. Line changed to: 'Keep happening. There was a lot of big explosions when the Daleks was fightin' I think they **might** have done some serious damage, like.'
21. Line changed to: 'Special place. Where the good Daleks did all their special stuff, **like**.'
22. Line changed to: 'Then I'm not **imagining** it. Looks like our Daleks were giving ita right **good** old going over. They've got it on... well it looks like a huge operating table.'
23. Line changed to: 'Definitely, aye. 'Bout the same size, I'd say, ~~man~~.'
24. Line changed to: 'Shut up, Morli! **Just** go!'
25. Line changed to: 'It feels all funny... like me stomach's all floaty... Ooh, I think I'm going to puke, man. It's that bar o'stuff you gave **us**!'
26. Line changed to: 'No, it isn't! It's zero-grav. **Have** you been in zero-grav before?'
27. Line changed to: 'You mean you're not going to kill **us**?'
28. Line changed to: '(Suspicious) Did you get that stuff about Mirana and the rendezvous out of my brain, or did you already know ~~all~~ that?'

29. Line changed to: 'Saying the Daleks could kill **us**.'
30. Line changed to: 'Oh. Morli... look, I'm sorry ~~about~~ - '
31. Line changed to: '(Confidentially) **I, er...** I don't know if you have any idea where they're taking us, but **some of the crew** - '
32. Line changed to: 'Maybe, but what do you think's going to happen when we've won? Do you think the Mentor and her Daleks are just going to say, 'Oh, glad we could be of service' and shoot back off to their own universe?'
33. Line changed to: '**Look**, even if you are right, isn't that better than being conquered and enslaved by the Enemy Daleks?'
34. Line changed to: '**Ah, great, man!** You hit one!'
35. Line changed to: '**Ee, that Dalek.** It's stuck in the doorway.'
36. Line changed to: 'Quick! They're closing the doors! Move it! **Come on!**'
37. This line and the following three were re-ordered as:  
*The door crashes into Dalek.*  
**MORLI** Oh blimey, look at that! (*She laughs over the following*)  
**DALEK GUARD 1** Aaargh! Alert! Casing being crushed by loading bay door!  
 I cannot move! Assist me! Assist!  
**SUZ** What's that?  
**MIRANA** What do you mean?
38. Deleted dialogue - **DALEK GUARD 1**: '~~Aaargh! Aaassssssssst!~~'
39. Line changed to: '(*Spluttering*) It's gas! Coming from the air vents! Gas! **Come on**, everyone out! For God's sake! Now!'
40. Line changed to: '**The Daleks** wouldn't have wanted to kill me. That gas must've just knocked them all out.'
41. Line changed to: 'We should take **the** lift.'
42. The rest of the scene was re-ordered as:  
**DALEK 1** You will surrender! Surrender!  
**SUZ** (*To DALEKS*) Get back! Get back!  
**DALEK** Under fire! Under fire!  
**ALBY** Suuuz!
43. 'They have escaped,' was moved to the beginning of Scene 65.
44. Line changed to: 'He is unconscious, but he will recover **shortly**.'
45. Line changed to: 'Indeed. If all goes well, we'll leave Jupiter with more **energy** at our disposal than we had when we first engaged the enemy outside this solar system. We'll also be able to give our non-Dalek soldiers some time to stretch their legs or whatever else it is they need to stretch. They've been cooped up in those troop carriers for several months. The Orearlisians in particular have been complaining rather a lot.'
46. Line changed to: 'Alby! **Stop hurting him, man.**' Also, added dialogue - **DALEK 1**: 'Silence!'
47. Line changed to: 'We are entering your mind. You cannot resist **us**.'
48. Line changed to: 'Alby... Alby, are you okay, **man**?'
49. Line changed to: 'Alby, don't! They'll hurt you.'

## CHAPTER TWO

**When you're writing, do you consider sound design – or is it a completely separate process that you only worry about after recording?**

Nicholas Briggs: Since I invariably do my own sound design, I think I can't help thinking about it when I write. Mostly, it's to do with knowing what is achievable. I can't imagine writing audio drama without being able to think of a way of technically achieving what I'm writing. That's just automatic. However, I do try to do just one job at a time. So I do set myself incredibly difficult problems with sound design. They're the kind of problems I'd curse another writer for creating. But ultimately, I can't help hearing a scene in my head when I write it... and that involves hearing the sound effects, which starts me thinking how I'd achieve them.

**Occasionally in the scripts, you'll note where some music should go and sometimes what it's doing ('Music cue – "o-oh"). Was this a guide for the actors, or for you when you did post-production?**

I really do leave most of the music ideas until the sound design is done. However, sometimes I feel it helps to make sense of the scene for me and the actors if you note that this will be one of those 'oh-oh, here comes trouble' type of moments. I don't generally put music notes into the script. I only do it when I feel the script wouldn't seem so effective without it. It's something I only do when I know I'm going to be directing and sound designing. In many ways, I think it's a bit of a crass thing to do. But it works for me. I forgive myself.

**Alby says 'shit' a couple of times in Chapter Two. Tell me about your attitude to swearing. Do you think the rules were flexible/different because it wasn't Doctor Who?**

The swearing thing is an ongoing debate in Big Finish. Now that the TV series is coming back and will, quite rightly, be targeted at Doctor Who's traditional family audience, I think that swearing shouldn't feature in any of our Doctor Who releases. It's contradicting the core brand image. However, before the return of the TV series, I feel that our audience was mainly (not totally, I agree) made-up of people in their twenties and thirties who were probably receptive to a more 'adult', 'gritty' kind of drama. I wanted Dalek Empire and Dalek War to be that kind of drama, so I felt that limited swearing was allowable, in line with what the BBC Doctor Who books have done. I would never have wanted to use the f- or c-words, though. I think that would have been too ugly in this context. With Dalek Empire III, I'm not having any kind of swearing at all. It's been a challenge for me, but, in the final analysis, swearing offends some people, but a lack of swearing never offends. Perhaps that should be the tag-line for Dalek Empire III... 'This time, it's less offensive, so Justin Richards's son can listen to it'.

**Jupiter? A habitable planet? ...that's just silly.**

I wanted the Daleks to do something audacious! I know it's totally impossible, but so are the Daleks and so is all the space travel without the time dilation effect. It's just different degrees of fantasy, and it's very personal as to what an individual will buy into. John Ainsworth thought it was unforgivable. We laughed a lot about it. He said it would have been easier for the Daleks to build a new planet from scratch rather than try to terraform a gas giant. Maybe that's what the Daleks did... blew up Jupiter and built a new planet. And let's not get started about the effect this would have on gravitational pull in the solar system. Remember, folks. It's fantasy. It's not predictive science fiction.

**Although she appears in the final few moments of Chapter One, this part sees us meet Morli. The dialogue was written almost phonetically – you could hear her accent in your head, couldn't you?**

I hope Clayton Hickman won't mind me quoting him, but he said one of the things he liked about *Dalek Empire* was that Alby's voice made it feel like 'common people in space', rather than the usual southern English accents dominating. I'd met Dannie Carr and seen her work and fell in love with her accent. I thought it would be fun to have a Geordie character... and she's a great actress. Because I know the way she talks, I couldn't help writing it phonetically. I did apologise to her in advance, in case she thought it was patronising. She changed some of the phraseology. It's also good to have a mixture of accents. I know it's one of the 'no-no's of radio drama to have loads of spurious different accents just for the sake of delineating the characters – so you end up with a German, a Scot, an American and a Hungarian all just happening to share a train carriage – but, a mix of accents, judiciously used, can be helpful in this respect.

**Why was the line 'When you were jumped by Daleks?' changed to 'When you were hijacked by Daleks?'**

It made everyone laugh. It sounds like the Daleks 'got off' with Alby... if you've got a dirty mind. And most actors do have dirty minds. They're always looking for something smutty to laugh about... oh, maybe that's just me. I kind of want to avoid as much unintentional *double-entendre* as possible. My favourite one is 'her energy pods are glowing', which was a line from an Audio Visuals play, referring to a space ship which was about to explode. The actors laughed like drains, even though it wasn't really a *double-entendre* at all. It just inexplicably sounded smutty.

**The Mentor and Kalendorf scenes must have been fun to write. All the time, the pair of them are trying to not give away their true beliefs or knowledge – there's marvellous tension in those scenes. How difficult is it to write scenes like that – scenes where characters aren't saying something?**

I find scenes like this a lot of fun to write, because the characters have very clear motivations. And when the motivation is to achieve your aim covertly, it leads to all sorts of interesting twists and turns of phrase. I particularly liked it when the Mentor just paused and let Kalendorf stew for a while.

DALEK EMPIRE II  
**DALEK WAR**

Recording Schedule

Nicholas Briggs: *I hate recording things out of order, but the advantage of it is that you can have bigger casts. If you recorded each episode one at a time and in order, you'd have to keep bringing back actors day after day to do their scenes from each episode. If, however, you record in character blocks, someone who's in all four episodes need only come in for a day. That saving then gives you money to employ other actors so that you can reduce doubling up... or indeed save money, make Jason Haigh-Ellery very happy, and leave enough pennies for Nick Pegg to blow the budget again on his spectacular star casting!*

*There is, of course, also the issue of cast availability. When you're doing a second series of anything, you need the same actors back, and the chances are that this time round they're far less available. It was a bit of a nightmare, because Sarah was on tour, and Mark and Gareth were also very busy on stage in Scotland. It was a real juggling act doing the scheduling and it nearly drove me insane. I've just done it again for Dalek Empire III and my head's really hurting.*

Sunday 27 October 2002

**ACTORS** Gareth Thomas (Kalendorf), Sarah Mowat (Suz), Mark McDonnell (Alby), Hannah Smith (Mentor), Jeremy James (Herrick & Tech 1), Ian Brooker (Marber, Drudger, Sparks), Nicholas Briggs (Dalek voices)

Scenes may not be recorded in the order listed below. The numbers in brackets indicate roughly how many pages to each scene.

- 2. Int. Flagship Courageous. (1) Alternate Dalek, Kalendorf
- 6. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge. (2) Tech 1, Alternate Dalek, Kalendorf
- 7. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber. (3) Alternate Dalek, Mentor, Kalendorf
- 16. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge. (1) Kalendorf, Herrick
- 22. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber. (1) Alternate Dalek, Mentor, Kalendorf, Herrick
- 38. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge. (2) Kalendorf, Herrick, Alternate Dalek, Alternate Dalek 1
- 40. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber. (1.5) Mentor, Kalendorf
- 52. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge. (2) Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek 1, Alternate Dalek 2, Alternate Dalek 3, Herrick
- 69. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber. (2) Mentor, Kalendorf
- 98. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (2) Dalek, Dalek 1, Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 2, Alby, Suz, Kalendorf
- 101. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (4.5) Suz, Kalendorf, Alby, Dalek Squad Leader
- 104. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (4.5) Suz, Kalendorf, Alby, Dalek Supreme
- 112. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (1) Alby, Kalendorf, Suz, Dalek Supreme
- 114. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (1.5) Dalek Supreme, Kalendorf, Suz
- 5. Int. Gunship MX4. (1) Drudger, Alby
- 9. Int. Gunship MX4. (2) Drudger, Alby
- 13. Int. Gunship MX4. (2) Drudger, Alby
- 18. Int. Gunship MX4. (1) Alby, Drudger

20. **Int. Hospital Station. Airlock Reception.** (1) Alby, Drudger (also do Drudger lines for 43, 45 and 47)
24. **Flashback: Int. Cryo-Chamber. Emperor's Ship.** (3) Alby, Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek, Mirana (to be recorded 10 November)
26. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (1) Mirana (to be recorded 10 November), Mentor, Kalendorf, Alby
28. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (1) Mentor, Mirana (to be recorded 10 November), Kalendorf
31. **Ext. Planet Emmeron.** (1) Mirana (to be recorded 10 November), Kalendorf, Alby
33. **Ext. Planet Emmeron.** (0.5) Alby, Kalendorf, Mirana (to be recorded 10 November)
123. **Int. Flagship Courageous. Secure Room.** (1) Dalek, Herrick, Kalendorf
73. **Ext. Jupiter.** (1) Herrick, Kalendorf
74. **Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.** (1) Kalendorf, Herrick, Alternate Dalek 1
80. **Int. 5th Airborne Brigade HQ. Jupiter.** (1) Kalendorf, Herrick
82. **Int. Allenby's Skimmer.** (1.5) Sparks, Kalendorf's lines only, Trooper (to be recorded 4 November)
83. **Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.** (1) Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek 1
88. **Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber.** (4) Mentor, Kalendorf, Monitor, Alternate Dalek
89. **Int. Flagship Courageous. Corridor.** (1.5) Alternate Dalek, Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek Tannoy, Vaarga-man, Alternate Dalek 1
91. **Int. Space Transport Ship.** (0.5) Kalendorf

### Sunday 3 November 2002

**ACTORS** Gareth Thomas (Kalendorf), Mark McDonnell (Alby), Sarah Mowat (Suz – arriving PM), Hannah Smith (Mentor), Dannie Carr (Morli), Helen Goldwyn (Godwin & Computer), Jack Gallagher (Command & Trooper), Nicholas Briggs (Dalek voices)

Scenes may not be recorded in the order listed below. The numbers in brackets indicate roughly how many pages to each scene.

116. **Ext. Battlefield. Planet Meeccros V.** (4.5) Godwin, Command, Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek, Trooper
117. **Int. Flagship. Bridge.** (2) Godwin, Kalendorf
118. **Int. Recovery Capsule.** (2.5) Godwin, Kalendorf, Computer
120. **Int. Recovery Capsule Docking Arm.** (0.5) Kalendorf, Computer
121. **Int. Mentor's Base.** (1) Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek
122. **Ext. Mentor's Garden.** (2) Mentor, Kalendorf
124. **Ext. Mentor's Garden.** (3.5) Mentor, Kalendorf
126. **Int. Flagship. Kalendorf's Cabin.** (2) Kalendorf, Godwin
127. **Int. Dalek Control. Earth. Tracking Centre.** (1) Dalek, Dalek 1, Dalek Supreme, Kalendorf
128. **Int. Dalek Control. Earth. Dalek Supreme's Chamber.** (0.5) Dalek Supreme, Kalendorf
130. **Ext. Dalek Control. Landing Pad Zeg. Earth.** (1) Dalek, Dalek 1, Kalendorf
131. **Int. Dalek Emperor's Antechamber. Earth.** (7) Dalek, Dalek Supreme, Kalendorf, Suz, Dalek Tannoy
43. **Int. Hospital Station. Airlock Reception.** (5) Alby, Morli, Drudger
45. **Int. Hospital Ship. Examination Bay.** (3) Alby, Morli, Drudger
47. **Ext. Hospital Space Station Hull.** (1) Alby, Morli, Dalek, Drudger
49. **Int. Gunship MX4.** (3.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Alby, Dalek 1, Morli, Dalek 2
57. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.** (0.5) Dalek Guard 2, Alby, Dalek 1
61. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.** (1) Dalek 1, Dalek Squad Leader, Suz, Alby, Morli; cry of humans

62. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway. (0.5) Morli, Suz, Alby, Dalek  
 66. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway. (1) Suz, Alby, Morli, Dalek  
 68. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway. (1) Dalek, Suz  
 70. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (2) Dal Squ Leader, Dalek 1, Suz, Alby, Morli  
 71. Int. Suz's Mind. (0.5) Suz, Emperor  
 72. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (1.5) Suz, Alby, Dal Squ Leader, Morli  
 85. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Holding Cell. (2.5) Morli, Alby, Suz  
 97. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Cell. (3.5) Alby, Suz, Morli, Dalek  
 103. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception. (1) Alby  
 129. Int. Dalek Emperor's Chamber. Earth. (0.5) Suz, Dalek Supreme

**Monday 4 November 2002**

**ACTORS** Teresa Gallagher (Mirana), Mark McDonnell (Alby), Sarah Mowat (Suz), Dannie Carr (Morli), Ian Brooker (Marber & Sparks), Jeremy James (Herrick & Trooper), Mark Donovan (Allenby, Scientist & Trooper 1), Nicholas Briggs (Dalek voices)

Scenes may not be recorded in the order listed below. The numbers on the right indicate roughly how many pages to each scene.

14. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Infirmary. (3) Johnstone, Mirana, Marber, Suz  
 19. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Infirmary. (2.5) Mirana, Johnstone, Suz  
 23. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin. (3.5) Mirana, Suz  
 25. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin. (0.5) Mirana, Suz  
 27. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin. (1) Suz, Mirana  
 30. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin. (1.5) Suz, Mirana  
 32. Mirana's Narration. (0.5) Mirana  
 34. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Mirana's Cabin. (1.5) Mirana, Suz, Marber  
 35. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (1.5) Mirana, Marber, Suz, Alby  
 36. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception. (1.5) Mirana, Suz, Morli, Alby, Security Man, Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 1  
 37. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception. (5.5) Suz, Mirana, Alby, Morli, Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 1, Daleks  
 39. Int. Defiant Loading Bay. (3) Mirana, Alby, Suz, Morli, Dalek, Dalek Squad Leader  
 42. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (1.5) Morli, Mirana, Alby, Suz  
 48. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (0.5) Mirana, Morli, Suz  
 50. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (5.5) Suz, Alby, Mirana, Morli, Marber  
 54. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (1.5) Morli, Marber, Mirana, Alby, Suz, Dalek Guard 1  
 56. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (0.5) Morli, Mirana, Alby, Marber, Suz, Dalek Guard 2  
 58. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Loading Bay. (1.5) Marber, Alby, Suz, Mirana, Morli, Dalek Guard 1, Dalek Guard 2; coughing and screaming of crewmembers; screaming, panic and coughing crescendos.  
 60. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Walkway. (2) Marber, Suz, Morli, Alby, Mirana, Daleks; several humans cry out and die.  
 76. Int. 5th Airborne Brigade HQ. Jupiter. (2) Scientist, Herrick, Allenby  
 77. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night. (0.5) Allenby  
 78. Int. Allenby's Skimmer. (1.5) Allenby, Trooper, Sparks  
 79. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night. (1) Allenby, Trooper, Trooper 1  
 81. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night. (1) Trooper, Allenby  
 82. Int. Allenby's Skimmer. (1.5) Sparks, Kalendorf, Trooper



Plus as many of the following Dalek-only scenes as is possible.

11. Int. Enemy Dalek Control. Earth. (1) Dalek Supreme, Daleks, Dalek, Dalek 1, Dalek 2
21. Int. Enemy Dalek Control. Earth. (1) Dalek Com, Dalek Supreme
41. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 1
44. Int. Enemy Dalek Transport Ship. (0.5) Dalek Drone, Dalek Commander
46. Ext. Space. Enemy Dalek Transolar Comms. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Daleks, Dalek 1
53. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (1) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 1
55. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek Guard 1, Dalek 1
59. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek 1
63. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek 1
65. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek
67. (0.5) Dalek Supreme, Dalek, Suz (laugh, transferred from Scene 68)
84. Int. Enemy Dalek Command. Earth. (1) Dalek, Dalek Supreme
93. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek, Dalek Squad Leader
94. Int. Gun Ship B68. Bridge. (0.5) Alternate Dalek
95. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge. (0.5) Dalek, Dalek Squad Leader
96. Int. Enemy Dalek Control. Earth. (0.5) Dalek, Dalek Supreme
100. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception. (0.5) Dalek Guard
102. Int. Attack Squadron Dalazar Command Ship. (0.5) Dalek Squad Leader, Dalek Supreme

### Wednesday 6 November 2002

**ACTORS** Karen Henson (Saloran Hardew), Steven Elder (Siy Tarkov), Jack Gallagher (Nav Computer, Computer, Technician, Tannoy), Nicholas Briggs (Trooper & Dalek voices)

Scenes may not be recorded in the order listed below. The numbers in brackets indicate roughly how many pages to each scene.

3. Int. Saloran's Ship. Planet Velyshaa. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
15. Int. Saloran's Ship. Planet Velyshaa. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
51. Int. Saloran's Ship. Planet Velyshaa. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
87. Int. Saloran's Ship. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
105. Ext. Space. (0.5) Nav Computer
106. Ext. Planet Velyshaa. (1) Tarkov, Trooper
107. Int. Kalendorf's Burial Chamber. (1.5) Tarkov, Saloran, Trooper
108. Int. Star Yacht Crusader. Corridor. (1) Saloran, Tarkov
109. Int. Crusader. Tarkov's Cabin. (4.5) Tarkov, Saloran
110. Int. Kalendorf's Burial Chamber. (3.5) Saloran, Tarkov, Dalek
111. Int. Saloran's Ship. (3) Computer, Saloran, Tarkov
113. Int. Saloran's Ship. (1) Tarkov, Saloran
115. Int. Saloran's Ship. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
125. Int. Saloran's Ship. (0.5) Tarkov, Saloran
132. Int. Saloran's Ship. (1.5) Saloran, Tarkov
133. Int. Saloran's Ship. Computer Room. (1.5) Technician, Saloran, Tarkov, Dalek, Dalek 1
134. Ext. Velyshaa. (2) Tannoy, Trooper, Tarkov, Saloran, Daleks

Plus any of the following Dalek-only scenes left over from Monday 4 November.

### Sunday 10 November 2002

**ACTORS** Gareth Thomas (Kalendorf), Teresa Gallagher (Mirana), Hannah Smith (Mentor), Ian Brooker (Marber), Simon Bridge (Johnstone), Nicholas Briggs (Dalek voices)

Scenes may not be recorded in the order listed below. The numbers in brackets indicate roughly how many pages to each scene.

- 4. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.** (0.5) Marber, Mirana
- 8. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.** (2) Marber, Mirana
- 10. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Cargo Bay.** (2.5) Mirana, Crewman, Marber, Johnstone
- 12. **Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Cargo Bay.** (1) Mirana, Johnstone
- 86. **Int. Escape Pod.** (3) Marber, Mirana
- 24. **Flashback: Int. Cryo-Chamber. Emperor's Ship.** (3) Mirana, Alby (previously recorded), Kalendorf, Alternate Dalek
- 26. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (1) Mentor, Kalendorf, Alby (previously recorded), Mirana
- 28. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (1) Mentor, Mirana, Kalendorf
- 29. **Mirana's Narration.** (1.5) Mirana, Kalendorf
- 31. **Ext. Planet Emmeron.** (1) Mirana, Kalendorf, Alby (previously recorded)
- 33. **Ext. Planet Emmeron.** (0.5) Alby (previously recorded), Kalendorf, Mirana
- 17. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (0.5) Mentor
- 75. **Int. Mentor's Chamber.** (1) Mentor, Alternate Dalek Monitor
- Chapter Three Prologue.** Mentor, Alternate Dalek
- 90. **Int. Mentor's Chamber. Lopra Minor.** (1) Mentor, Monitor
- 92. **Int. Alliance Gunship B68. Bridge.** (1) Alternate Dalek, Mentor, Monitor

Plus pick-ups from previous days with Gareth.

[Editor's Note: **Prologue Scene 2. Int. Flagship Courageous** from Chapter Three was not included on the schedule as it was written by Briggs during the recording process. It was recorded on 10 November.]



# DALEK WAR CHAPTER THREE

## Prologue.

**MENTOR** Peoples of the planet Emmeron. This is your last chance to join our crusade against the evils in this galaxy. We have come to save you from destruction and enslavement, but you must learn to fight for yourselves. We must all unite against a common enemy. Your leaders tell me that the petty affairs of your planet are more important than our great cause. They would rather wage war with other continents than face up to their wider responsibilities. It would seem they have made their choice for you all. I give you one last chance to overthrow your leaders or to make them see sense. If you do not respond... your fate is sealed.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Readings show intercontinental ballistic missiles firing and impacting. The planet Emmeron is at war.

**MENTOR** They are not listening. We must make them listen. Release the plague.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** I obey.

## Prologue Scene 2. Int. Flagship *Courageous*.

*Door opens.*

**KALENDORF** (*Surprised*) Mirana? I didn't expect -

**MIRANA** (*Angry and upset*) Have you heard the news about Emmeron?

**KALENDORF** (*Affecting a lack of concern*) Yes. A pity, really. But the Mentor really didn't have a choice.

**MIRANA** (*Shocked*) Didn't have a choice?!

**KALENDORF** Yes. I'm sure that's what she'd say now... *if she were here... (quietly) listening... or watching. (Normal level)*

*Pause.*

**MIRANA** Yes. Yes, of course. Of course.

**KALENDORF** Is there anything else I can help you with?

### CHAPTER THREE CD TRACK LISTINGS

- |                             |                          |                        |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Emmeron                   | 12 Cactus...             | 23 I'm on my way       |
| 2 Unidentified transmission | 13 Gunfire               | 24 Gunship B68         |
| 3 Surface of Jupiter        | 14 Exacuate!             | 25 Main armament       |
| 4 Time is of the essence    | 15 Vaarga                | 26 Alert!              |
| 5 Kalendorf's agenda        | 16 Bad Daleks            | 27 Totally destroyed   |
| 6 Red light                 | 17 Middle of nowhere     | 28 The Emperor's Brain |
| 7 Are you there?            | 18 Dark One              | 29 Second Wave         |
| 8 Motion scanners           | 19 Hive Leader Stralos   | 30 Enter               |
| 9 Lost contact              | 20 Disaster              | 31 Karl!               |
| 10 Search-beams             | 21 Not so very different | 32 Advance Party       |
| 11 Atmosphere checks        | 22 Monitors report       | 33 Barricades          |
|                             |                          | 34 Pure... destruction |

**MIRANA** (*Carefully*) Yes. There's been report that a... an 'unidentified' transmission was detected, coming from this ship.<sup>1</sup>

**KALENDORF** 'Unidentified'?

**MIRANA** Only a fragment of it was picked up. There's some suggestion that it might have been on a wavelength used by the Enemy Dalek Command network.

**KALENDORF** Some suggestion?

**MIRANA** There's really not enough data for us to be sure.

**KALENDORF** So, to all intents and purposes, it really was an unidentified transmission.

**MIRANA** If... if it happens again, we'll be ready for it this time. Do you think it's likely to happen again?

**KALENDORF** (*Nonchalantly*) No. No, I don't think it's likely.

**MIRANA** I... I wonder what it could have been.<sup>2</sup>

**KALENDORF** I wonder.  
*Crash in opening theme.*

### 73. Ext. Jupiter.

*A gentle breeze. Some birdsong. A spacecraft approaches from the distance. It gets nearer and nearer. Its retro rockets fire with a loud roar as it descends upon us. The rumble and crunch of the spacecraft landing. Pause for a moment. The gentle breeze and birdsong. A massive hatch opens. A metallic gangplank thuds to the ground. Footsteps of soldiers moving down the gangplank. The sound of soldiers fanning out. Their field gear clunking and jingling as they move. Some background 'soldier chatter' (post production), some of it on radios. An impression of general activity. Bleep of communicator.*

**HERRICK** Herrick to *Courageous*.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) This is *Courageous*. Go ahead, Herrick.

**HERRICK** Commander Kalendorf, we have touched down on the surface of Jupiter. All surface scans checked out on the way in. 5th Airborne brigade now setting up camp.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) We have processed all your surface scan data. I'm giving the order for all units to land at their designated sites. You have the co-ordinates of those mineral deposits?

*Click and bleep of a personal scanner being operated.*

**HERRICK** That's confirmed, sir.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Then get your science and engineering teams to work, Herrick. The sooner you begin extraction and processing, the sooner the fleet can be in a fit shape to tackle the Enemy Dalek second wave.

**HERRICK** Any news on their position, sir?

### 74. Int. Flagship *Courageous*. Bridge.

**KALENDORF** Still no change since they stopped just off Venus solar orbit.

**HERRICK** (*Distort*) I'd like to know what they think they're up to, sir.

**KALENDORF** So would I, Mr Herrick, so would I. You'd better get to work. Time is of the essence.

**HERRICK** (Distort) Will do, sir. Out.

*Bleep of comms clicking off.*

**KALENDORF** Do we have an update on that gunship approaching the Defiant?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Gunship B68 still unable to establish contact with Defiant. It will be several hours before they are in visual range.

**KALENDORF** Is the gunship moving at maximum speed?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Gunship B68 is travelling at optimum cruising speed.

**KALENDORF** (Anxiously) Order it to increase speed to maximum. If Mirana and her crew are in trouble, then we need to know as soon as possible.

## 75. Int. Mentor's Chamber.

**MENTOR** (To herself) And now you are concerned about Mirana, Kalendorf. Why now, when you have so blatantly neglected to investigate the matter for so very long? Monitors?

*Screens activate.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK MONITOR** (Distort) What are your orders, Mentor?

**MENTOR** All information from Gunship B68 is to come to me before it is released to Kalendorf.

**ALTERNATE DALEK MONITOR** (Distort) That is understood, Mentor.

**MENTOR** Also... I want you to access all Kalendorf's personal records together with all logged and unlogged flightplans and surveillance data relating to his movements.

**ALTERNATE DALEK MONITOR** (Distort) What are we looking for?

**MENTOR** I don't know... But I sense that Kalendorf is not being entirely honest with me. It would appear that he has his own agenda. We must discover what that agenda is and... take him to task over it. (Suddenly very sharp and Dalek-like) Proceed!

**ALTERNATE DALEK MONITOR** (Distort) I obey.

*Build music, then subside for passing of time.*

## 76. Int. Jupiter. 5th Airborne Brigade HQ.

*Fade in on... Sound of drilling in background. Much chatter of soldiers working etc.*

**SCIENTIST** (Distort) These are the purist deposits of Sytesium I've ever encountered. It means we can process the ore for the fleet's energy storage batteries even faster than we'd anticipated. We'll have doubled our quota by morning. It's quite remarkable. I've never seen anything like it.

**HERRICK** Well, I suppose it's about time we had some good luck. All right, keep me informed.

**SCIENTIST** (Distort) Yes... yes, of course, Mr Herrick.

*Comms bleep off. A tiny alarm buzzes. Comms bleep.*

**HERRICK** (Sighs. Not unduly concerned) Er, perimeter sector guard Niner Seven, I'm showing a red light on your perimeter sensor. Report, please.

*Hiss of static.*

**HERRICK** Niner Seven, are you reading me?

*Hiss of static.*

**HERRICK** Niner Seven?

*Hiss of static.*

**HERRICK** (Voice raised slightly) Sergeant Allenby! Sergeant!  
**ALLENBY** (Approaching) Sir! Sorry, sir. I was just on the comm-link to a Beta Section patrol.

**HERRICK** Beta Section? What do they want from us? They're several hundred kilometres to the east, on the coastline, aren't they?

**ALLENBY** Er, yes, sir. Seems they have a bit of a medical emergency... far as I could gather, sir.

**HERRICK** Well why didn't they call for their own med-team?

**ALLENBY** Said they couldn't make contact with their base-camp, sir.

**HERRICK** Couldn't...? What was the medical emergency?

**ALLENBY** That's just it, sir. They didn't say. Their comms just cut off. I was trying to raise them again when you called me.

*Pause.*

**ALLENBY** Er... why did you call me, sir?

**HERRICK** (Distracted) I was just wondering if there's a connection.

Can't be.

**ALLENBY** Connection with what, sir?

**HERRICK** Sergeant, how are your night-flying skills?

**ALLENBY** It's what the 5th Airborne are all about, sir.

**HERRICK** Good. I want you to get your section airborne in surface skimmers. I had a red light on Niner Seven's perimeter sensor just now, but couldn't raise them. No comms signal at all. It's like they're not there.<sup>3</sup>

**ALLENBY** What do you think it is, sir?

**HERRICK** It could be nothing, Sergeant ... or a whole lot of trouble. Split your force, Allenby. One skimmer to Niner Seven's last reported position, the rest can head out to Beta Section. I'll get our comms people to check in with all brigade headquarters. You'd better get moving – and stay in touch!

**ALLENBY** Sir!

*His boots crash to attention, then he marches out at the double. Comms bleep.*

**HERRICK** This is Executive Officer Herrick. Get me Commander Kalendorf on the *Courageous*.

### **77. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night.**

*A breeze is blowing through trees and plants. We hear a sinister rustling – and just a hint of some harsh breathing for a moment. A skimmer fades in from the distance and hovers nearby.*

**ALLENBY** (Via loudspeaker) Perimeter guard unit Niner Seven! Are you there? Perimeter guard unit Niner Seven, show yourselves!<sup>4</sup>

### **78. Int. Allenby's Skimmer.**

*Skimmer engines in hover mode.*

**ALLENBY** Any trace on the motion scanners?

**TROOPER** Nothing, Sarge. Just a few plants swaying around a bit.

**ALLENBY** Hit the search-beams.

*Searchlights activate.*

**ALLENBY** Are you sure this is the right position?

**TROOPER** Positive, Sarge.

**ALLENBY** *(Suddenly spotting something)* What was that?

**TROOPER** What, Sarge?

**ALLENBY** Thought I saw someone moving behind those cactus-things.<sup>5</sup>

**TROOPER** Think it was just the plants moving in the breeze.

**ALLENBY** I suppose we'd better take a look on foot. Take us down nice and slow, Trooper. First sign of trouble and -<sup>6</sup>

**TROOPER** Don't you worry, Sarge. They don't call me the grasshopper for nothing.

*Engines start the descent.*

**ALLENBY** Sparks!

**SPARKS** Sarge?

**ALLENBY** Signal Brigade HQ, tell them we're landing at Niner Seven's last reported position.

**SPARKS** Sarge.

**ALLENBY** Anything from our people heading for Beta Section?

**SPARKS** They just called in to let us know they'd made contact.

**ALLENBY** Good. Everything seem okay?

**SPARKS** Far as I could tell.

**ALLENBY** *(A bit edgy)* Good, right... that's what I like to hear.

*Retros fire.*

**TROOPER** Touching down now, Sarge.

**ALLENBY** Right. Grab five guys and follow me, trooper.

**TROOPER** Yes, sarge.

### 79. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night.<sup>7</sup>

*Skimmer door is closing.*

**ALLENBY** Okay, people. Let's use the light from the skimmer's search-beams. Fan out ahead.

**TROOPER** What are we looking for, Sarge?

**ALLENBY** Anything at all, Trooper. Anything out of the ordinary.

**TROOPER 1** Hostiles, maybe?

**ALLENBY** Now, Trooper, they've told us there's nothing on this planet but plants, insects and rodents. But if you see a hostile-looking bug, you have my express permission to blow its ugly head off.<sup>8</sup>

*A murmur of laughter from the troopers.*

**ALLENBY** All right. Let's go.

*The sound of soldiers wading through the undergrowth. The breeze starts to howl a bit louder. Mingled with the breeze, we start to hear some harsh, ragged breathing. Threatening music builds through this.*

### 80. Int. Jupiter. 5th Airborne Brigade HQ.

*Howl of the growing breeze in background.*

**KALENDORF** *(Distort)* What do you mean, lost contact?

**HERRICK** Just that, sir. Over ten different sections are now not responding.

**KALENDORF** *(Distort)* Have you sent out skimmer patrols to investigate?



**HERRICK** I have two skimmers at Niner Seven's last reported position. They checked in just now. Found nothing yet. And the rest of Allenby's unit headed out to Beta Section.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) And?

**HERRICK** We've er... we've lost contact with *them*.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) And you don't want to lose contact with any more skimmer units, I see.

**HERRICK** Sir... either there's something pretty worrying going on, or it's just a change in atmospheric conditions causing transmission jamming. There's quite a wind getting up now. Could be an electrical storm brewing higher up, maybe. Can your people run an atmosphere check?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) We'll do it right away and I'll have our comms people attempt transorbital contact with the affected sections. Maybe all that's needed is a stronger signal.

**HERRICK** Thank you, sir. I didn't want to cause a panic, but -

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) No, Herrick. You did the right thing. Patch me through to Allenby's lot at Niner Seven's position, would you?

### 81. Ext. Jupiter. Forest. Night.

*The sounds of soldiers wading through the undergrowth. The wind is quite severe now.*

**TROOPER** (*Close*) Argh!

**ALLENBY** (*Some distance off*) You all right, Trooper?

**TROOPER** Yeah, yeah, I'm fine, Sarge. Just caught meself on one of these bleedin' cactus things. Owwww... not very nice, but I'll live. Owwww... (*His pained breathing continues under the following*)

**ALLENBY** All right.

*Comms crackle.*

**ALLENBY** (*Distort*) Right... Everybody, listen up. Five more minutes, then we head back to the skimmer.

*As the breeze gets louder and we hear soldiers moving around, the TROOPER's breathing gets more and more manic, until...*

**TROOPER** (*Close and intense*) Uuuurgh! Must... mussssst... Must kill.<sup>9</sup>

*ALLENBY's footsteps approach through the undergrowth, then stop.*

**ALLENBY** Trooper? What's the matter? (*Pause*) Wh - what are you doing?

*Music crescendo.*

### 82. Int. Allenby's Skimmer.

**SPARKS** Yes, Commander. No signs of trouble at all -

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Apart from the fact that you can't find guard unit Niner Seven.

*Distant, sustained gunfire.*

**SPARKS** What the hell - ?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Sparks? What is it? Sounds like -

**SPARKS** Gunfire, Commander, and lots of it.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) What kind of gunfire?

**SPARKS** Our kind, sir.

*More gunfire. Screams of soldiers being killed.*

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Sparks? Sparks - !  
**SPARKS** Hold on, Commander.  
*Comms bleep.*  
**SPARKS** Skimmer to Sergeant Allenby. Sarge? What's going on?  
*Comms hiss.*  
**SPARKS** Sarge?  
*Door suddenly opens. The wind howls in violently. Ragged breath of the trooper.*  
**SPARKS** Oh my God.  
**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) What is it? What's happening? Sparks?  
*Gunfire. SPARKS cries out and dies. Hiss and buzz of comms controls fizzing and shorting.*  
**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Sparks! Sparks?! Airborne unit! Come in!  
**TROOPER** Must kill... must kill...  
*His feverish breathing builds.*

### 83. Int. Flagship Courageous. Bridge.

**KALENDORF** Come in! (*To DALEK*) Check the signal - now, do it!  
**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** I obey.  
*Bleeps etc.*  
**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Signal has been cut off at source.  
**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) Gunfire? What the hell's going on? (*To DALEK*) Get me Herrick again.  
*Bleep, the buzz and hiss of static.*  
**ALTERNATE DALEK 2** Signal carrier wave not established. Our signal is not being received.  
**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) Herrick? Not you too.  
*Music cue: foreboding. Pause. KALENDORF sucks breath in, considering.*  
**KALENDORF** Signal to all ground forces on Jupiter you can raise. Evacuate! Evacuate now! Code the message with my ident and send it now! Do it!  
**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** I obey.  
**KALENDORF** (*Through gritted teeth*) It would seem the Mentor was right. I don't know what the hell's happened, but we've walked right into a trap.

### 84. Int. Earth. Enemy Dalek Command.

**DALEK** (*Distort*) Report for the Dalek Supreme.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Enter!  
*Door opens.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Speak!  
**DALEK** The Vaarga plants on Jupiter have begun their work.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Excellent! Soon Kalendorf's forces will be powerless to resist us. He will have no choice but to co-operate.  
**DALEK** Shall we move in for the final attack?  
**DALEK SUPREME** No. We must await the coded signal from our advance party.<sup>10</sup>  
**DALEK** Understood.  
**DALEK SUPREME** When it is confirmed that Susan Mendes has been captured, we - will - advance!

## 85. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Holding Cell.

**MORLI** Alby... Alby!  
**ALBY** (*Groggy and in pain*) Yeah... what is it, Morli?  
**MORLI** Are you gonna be okay, man? You're not gonna die, like... Like the others did?  
**ALBY** Others? What others?  
**MORLI** In the hospital. When the bad Daleks came. They killed everyone. All me mates.  
**ALBY** No... no, it's all right, Morli. Don't panic. I may feel dead. I thought I was for a moment back there. But, apparently, I'm not. You okay?<sup>11</sup>  
**MORLI** Yeah. (*Pause*) I think she's awake now. She just opened her eyes. Just then... look, there.  
*Sounds of effort and movement from ALBY as he moves towards SUZ.*  
**ALBY** Suz? Suz? Speak to me.  
**SUZ** Hello, Alby.  
**ALBY** It is... you, isn't it? (*Pause*) Suz?  
**SUZ** What do you mean?  
**ALBY** It's just that... back on the bridge... Well, you said you were the Dalek Emperor.  
**SUZ** Yes... I was. I am... in a way. It's all in my mind - stored away. The Daleks woke him up for a moment. I suppose they wanted to make sure that he was still in here. Checking up on him. Worrying that they'd made a wasted journey. But they haven't, have they?  
**ALBY** Suz?  
**SUZ** Mm?  
**ALBY** Will you hold me?  
*Rustle of movement as she moves close to him. We hear them kiss.*  
**SUZ** What do you think? That we're kissing each other goodbye?  
**ALBY** I hoped it'd be something a little more lasting than that.  
**SUZ** (*Laughs warmly*) Yes. We haven't... huh. Well, we haven't had much luck, have we? There's always been... something in the way, hasn't there?  
**ALBY** Several light years of space, you mean.  
*They both give a weak, warm laugh.*  
**ALBY** And now the Emperor of the Daleks. Do you think he's sitting in your mind, laughing at us? Do Daleks laugh?  
**SUZ** They ought to. Isn't that what mad people are supposed to do? (*With some venom*) Mad, twisted, psychotic murderers.  
**ALBY** Why do you think he did this to you, the Emperor?  
**SUZ** I... I don't know. (*Pause*) Do you?  
**ALBY** Well... I have a nasty theory about that. I've suspected it ever since we found out about it.  
**SUZ** Suspected what?  
**ALBY** That the Dalek Emperor knew that, of all the people they put into hibernation, you'd be the one most likely to be rescued.  
**SUZ** Why?  
**ALBY** Because of Kalendorf. Because you were the legendary Angel of Mercy.  
**SUZ** And because of... us? Because we love each other?

**ALBY** Yeah. Because of that.  
*They kiss again.*  
**SUZ** But what good will that love do us now? What good has it done? It's just given the Daleks what they want.  
**MORLI** I tell you what you two need.  
**SUZ** What's that?  
**MORLI** A bit of food inside yous. If you're anything like me, you must be bleedin' starvin'.  
*SUZ and ALBY can't help but laugh.*

### 86. Int. Escape Pod.

*Escape pod whooshes past through space. Cut to interior of pod:*

**MARBER** Nothing. Still can't see a damn thing out there.  
**MIRANA** *(Determined)* If we keep on this course, we should find Alby's ship. We can get onboard and –  
**MARBER** And what? Catch up with the *Defiant* and save the day?! I think you've lost your grip on reality.  
**MIRANA** Calm down, Marber.  
**MARBER** What, and conserve air? What's the point? We're just about out of fuel and we're in the middle of nowhere.  
**MIRANA** The scanners in this pod have a very limited range. We could find Alby's ship at any moment.  
**MARBER** *If we set off in the right direction in the first place.*  
*Engines cut out.*  
**MARBER** That's it. Engines out.  
*Scanner bleep.*  
**MARBER** Nothing on the scanner  
*Pause.*  
**MIRANA** What do you want me to say? That we're finished?  
**MARBER** I don't need you to say it. But I know what I do want you to tell me...  
**MIRANA** What?  
**MARBER** Kalendorf's plan. *(Pause)* All right, maybe you don't know what he's up to for sure. Maybe it was safer that way. But you must have some idea. Well, haven't you?  
*A sombre, electronic chiming.*  
**MARBER** That's the final oxygen warning light. Come on, it's nearly all over, Captain. Don't let me die of curiosity as well as asphyxiation.  
**MIRANA** He really did never tell me.  
**MARBER** And you were still prepared to risk your life for him?  
**MIRANA** For the freedom of the galaxy. Yes. And anyway, I asked him not to tell me.  
**MARBER** Why?  
**MIRANA** Because I had a feeling I wouldn't like... the means.  
**MARBER** The means?  
**MIRANA** Well, think about it. You've got two factions of the most evil, destructive race the galaxy, probably the universe, has ever known. You've allied yourself with one faction to defeat the other. It looks like you might win. But then you find out the Daleks on your side are pretty much as bad as the bad Daleks. So what do you do?  
**MARBER** I don't know. That's what I'm asking, isn't it?

**MIRANA** I think you have to do something pretty bad. Take some enormous risks... probably involving the potential loss of billions of lives. That's what happened last time, when Suz and Kalendorf started that rebellion. The slaughter was virtually incalculable.

**MARBER** So?

**MIRANA** So... *(Pause)* I chickened out. Fell into line behind a great man. Left the moral difficulties to him.

**MARBER** You've never struck me as a coward, Mirana.

**MIRANA** Thanks.

**MARBER** I wasn't being kind. I mean that you must have formed some idea of what Kalendorf intended for you to be that scared of it.

**MIRANA** No clear idea. No.

**MARBER** But you *did* have an idea. Didn't you?

*Final hiss of oxygen tanks emptying. Both MIRANA and MARBER have difficulty breathing.*

**MARBER** Mirana... for God's sake... tell me the idea... tell me...

**MIRANA** I... think... I thought to myself... What's the thing I feared most?<sup>12</sup>

**MARBER** Yes? And... *(Splutters, gasping)* And what was that?

**MIRANA** *(After a final gasp)* That he'd switch sides.

*Big music cue of rumbling doom. Hold. Then crossfade to:*

### 87. Int. Saloran's Ship.<sup>13</sup>

**TARKOV** You must have formed an opinion of the man.

**SALORAN** Why do you ask?

**TARKOV** Well... all this. It must have been a kind of... intimate experience for you.

**SALORAN** Yes. You want me to sum Kalendorf up in one word?

**TARKOV** *(A chuckle)* You can have more than that. Is he really the monster who brought about the Great Catastrophe. The 'Dark One'? The 'Bringer of Death' we were all told about at school?<sup>14</sup>

**SALORAN** There is one word that comes close to summing him up.

**TARKOV** There is?

**SALORAN** Yes. 'Warrior'. And a warrior must be prepared to risk everything in order to win his war.

### 87A. Orearlisian Transmission.

*A highly distorted transmission.*

**HIVE LEADER STRALOS** This is Hive Leader Stralos on Emergency Frequency Delta Four Zero. This is an emergency! All humanoid personnel occupying Jupiter have been infected! Orearlisians and other non-humanoids are unaffected by this plague of madness, but we are outnumbered! Send help immediately! My people are being slaughtered! Emergency! Send help immediately!!!

*The voice is swamped in static.*

### 88. Int. Flagship Courageous. Executive Communication Chamber.

*Door opens. Footsteps.*<sup>15</sup>

**MENTOR** I summoned you over two hours ago, Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** (*Approaching*) My apologies, Mentor, but there is something of an emergency in prog -

**MENTOR** (*Suppressed anger*) There something of a *disaster* in progress, Kalendorf. My monitors keep me fully informed at all times. Do not insult my intelligence.

**KALENDORF** I assure you that no insult was intended.

**MENTOR** I am not so sure.

**KALENDORF** (*Bridling*) As I'm sure you're aware, we have lost contact with all ground forces on Jupiter. I have spent the last two hours doing all I can to -

**MENTOR** You have spent the last two hours attempting to make amends for your catastrophic error of judgement, and you have failed, Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** I've sent two craft into lower Jupiter orbit. They've been fitted with transmission boosters because we have reason to believe that some atmospheric disturbance may be responsible for -

**MENTOR** I am aware of your inadequate efforts. And there is no atmospheric disturbance!

**KALENDORF** But -

**MENTOR** There are other developments of which you are not aware. Observe!

*Screen activation. Rhythmic bleep of motion tracking.*

**KALENDORF** Those are ships taking off from Jupiter. Then our signals must have got through! Thank God! Then everything's -

**MENTOR** Silence! I have made a full analysis of the data obtained from your surface scans. Observe!

*Screen image change FX.*

**MENTOR** Tell me what you see, Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** It's... just an aerial view of some forest land.

**MENTOR** There are now areas of vegetation such as this all over the surface of Jupiter. Observe!

*Zooming in and scanning effect.*

**MENTOR** These forests contain many varieties of plant life. Do you recognise this particular plant?

**KALENDORF** I don't know. It's some sort of cactus, maybe.

**MENTOR** Access to our full database has identified it as a Vaarga plant.

**KALENDORF** (*None-the-wiser*) A... Vaarga?

**MENTOR** A species of hostile plant-life originally native to Skaro. The Enemy Daleks' planet of origin.

**KALENDORF** How is this plant hostile?

**MENTOR** Because it is a hybrid creature, part animal, part plant. All indications are that it was engineered into existence by the Daleks as a form of defence. The poison from its spines attacks the brain of its victim. Rational thought is replaced by an overwhelming desire to kill. Eventually the poison seeps through the system and the victim is gradually transformed into a Vaarga.

**KALENDORF** You're saying that's what happened to our people on Jupiter?

**MENTOR** By now, they will be in the grip of the psychotic phase.

**KALENDORF** Then how come ships are now leaving the surface? Perhaps it's our people escaping.

**MENTOR** Observe.

*Burble of screen graphics.*

**MENTOR** This is the Vaarga plant image as stored in our database. This is the Vaarga found on Jupiter.

**KALENDORF** It looks the same.

**MENTOR** Almost. Molecular examination, made possible by more thorough analysis of data collected by your surface scans, shows an adaptation of the spines and the poison contained within them. Our analysis of this augmented 'poison' reveals that it contains an additional agent which induces a 'pack mentality'. Those people affected by it will not just have become mindless psychotic killers; they will have joined forces to become a mass, psychotic army, intent on the destruction of all others.

**KALENDORF** *(Realising)* And they're heading this way...

*Comms alarm.*

**MENTOR** Speak!

*Explosions in background on 'distort'.*

**MONITOR** *(Distort)* Transmission booster ships in lower Jupiter orbit are being fired upon and destroyed by those ships rising from the planet's surface.

**MENTOR** The ships rising from Jupiter must be destroyed the moment they are in range.

**MONITOR** *(Distort)* The order will be given, Mentor.

**KALENDORF** We must -

**MENTOR** You are relieved of your command, Kalendorf. My Daleks will take control of the situation.

*Doors open.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You will come with us or you will be neutralised.

**KALENDORF** Mentor, you're making a big mistake.

**MENTOR** It is you who have made the mistake, Kalendorf, in betraying me. We are here to help your people; to restore peace and order in this galaxy. But I now know that you are working against me. Until now, I have trusted you, even encouraged your individualistic traits. But detailed analysis of your actions over the last few years reveals mysterious periods of absence, secret assignments with Captain Mirana and Alby Brook... I believe that you are responsible for the destruction of Cargo Freighter *Omega N7*. I believe that you knew of the cargo it contained. I believe that you have attempted to save the life of the dangerous Enemy Dalek agent Susan Mendes. *(Pause)* I see that you do not deny any of it. I do not know what your plan is - that is irrelevant to me at this precise moment - but rest assured that it is over.

**KALENDORF** What are you going to do with me?

**MENTOR** You are to be brought to me, here on the planet Lopra Minor, where you will undergo full interrogation and brain correction.

**KALENDORF** Brain correction. Ah yes, the techniques you've been developing in your secret station in the Pkowik System.

**MENTOR** A station that we now know has been attacked and destroyed by an Enemy Dalek raiding party operating deep in our territory. You supplied the enemy with information on the Pkowik Station? *(Pause)* Just what is the depth of your treachery, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** Well... I look forward to our little chat on Lopra.

**MENTOR** Bring him to me on Lopra Minor! Now! Take him to the transport ship!

**ALTERNATE DALEK** We obey.

### 89. Int. Flagship *Courageous*. Corridor.

*Door closes. KALENDORF's footsteps.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You will move.

**KALENDORF** Not so very different from your cousins from *this* universe, are you?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You will not speak!

*A deep rumble of impact.*

**KALENDORF** Sounds like the trouble is really starting.

*An alarm sounds.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK TANNOY** Battle stations! Battle stations! This fleet is under attack from ships crewed by Vaarga-infected humanoids! Battle stations! (*Continues under*)

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You will move, faster!

*A bigger, more immediate explosion. KALENDORF gasps as he steadies himself.*

**KALENDORF** That was a direct hit.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Move faster!

*Another, even bigger explosion.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK TANNOY** Emergency! Emergency! Vaarga-infected humanoids are now boarding this ship! Emergency! (*Continues under*)

**KALENDORF** You see what happens when I'm not in command!

*Gunfire and impacts close by.*

**KALENDORF** Look out, chaps!

**ALTERNATE DALEKS** Under attack! Under attack! Alert!

**VARGA-MAN** Must kill! Must kill! Kill them all!!!

*Gunfire and chants and screams of other Vaarga-infected humans.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Neutralise them! Neutralise!

*Neutralising beams fire. Mayhem of gunfight in full swing. Vaarga-humans screaming as they're shot and much gunfire.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** AAAAaargh!

*ALTERNATE DALEK explodes.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** Kalendorf is escaping! Alert! Alert!

*Battle mayhem escalates. Hold for a while, then crossfade to:*

### 90. Int. Lopra Minor. Mentor's Chamber.

**MENTOR** Monitors, report to me! What is happening?

**MONITOR** (*Distort*) Craft piloted by Vaarga-infected humanoids are inflicting severe damage upon our fleet orbiting Jupiter.

**MENTOR** Where is Kalendorf?

**MONITOR** (*Distort*) Reports from the Flagship *Courageous* are confused. Vaarga-infected humanoids have breached the airlock and are attacking our Daleks. I am receiving no monitor signal from the Daleks escorting Kalendorf to the transport ship.

*Bleeping.*

**MENTOR** Your sensory array is indicating that the transport ship is now leaving the *Courageous*.

**MONITOR** (*Distort*) No Daleks are detected aboard.

**MENTOR** Kalendorf is escaping. Track the course of the transport ship! He must not get away!



### 91. Int. Space Transport Ship.

*Whooshes past in space, then cut to interior:*

**KALENDORF** *(A self-satisfied laugh)* Don't worry, Suz. I'm on my way.  
*The transport ship whooshes off into space.*

### 92. Int. Alliance Gunship B68. Bridge.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** This is Alliance Gunship B68 calling Mentor. Scout-Ship *Defiant* is now in visual range, but is still not responding to our transmissions.

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Is there any sign of structural damage? Perhaps the *Defiant* has been under attack and is unable to respond.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Preliminary visual scans give no such indication.

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Then approach with caution.  
*An alarm sounds on 'distort'.*

**MONITOR** *(Distort)* This is Monitor Control. We are tracking the trajectory of Kalendorf's escape.

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Proceed.

**MONITOR** *(Distort)* Projections of his course indicate he is heading for the *Defiant*. He is travelling at maximum hyper velocity and will arrive within the hour.

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Gunship B68, be advised that Kalendorf has betrayed the Alliance and has escaped in a stolen space transport.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Understood. Is he to be captured or neutralised?

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Neutralisation is a final resort. Instruct him to surrender. But do not hesitate to destroy his ship if he does not obey.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Understood.

**MENTOR** *(Distort)* Continue with your approach to Scout-Ship *Defiant*.

### 93. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

**DALEK** The Alliance gunship is still approaching us and attempting contact.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Continue to ignore their comms signals.

**DALEK** I obey.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Are they now within weapons' range of this scout-ship?

**DALEK** They are.<sup>16</sup>

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Activate main armament. Target and destroy them without delay.

**DALEK** I obey.

*Targeting sensors bleep.*

**DALEK** Gunship targeted.

### 94. Int. Gunship B68. Bridge.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Alert! The *Defiant's* weaponry systems have targeted this vessel. Evasive manoeuvres, immediately! Activate defence –

*A massive explosion.*

### 95. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Bridge.

**DALEK** Gunship totally destroyed.  
**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Transmit coded signal to Dalek Control on Earth.  
**DALEK** I obey.

### 96. Int. Earth. Enemy Dalek Control.

**DALEK** Report for the Dalek Supreme.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Speak!  
**DALEK** We have received the coded signal from our advance party. Susan Mendes has been captured.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Brain analysis report?  
**DALEK** Her mind contains the consciousness of our Emperor.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Excellent! Where is Kalendorf?  
**DALEK** Intercepted Alliance Dalek signals indicate he is approaching the *Defiant* at speed and will arrive shortly.  
**DALEK SUPREME** Order our second wave to advance. The main assault force will destroy all surviving Alliance ships in Jupiter orbit. Attack Squadron *Dalazar* will proceed with all speed to intercept Kalendorf and the *Defiant*.

### 97. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Cell.

**ALBY** I wonder what the hell they've got planned. Any ideas?  
**SUZ** No. Mirana seemed to think they'd never get through your Alliance Dalek forces to Earth. But they must have a plan. I know the Daleks.  
**ALBY** How well?  
**SUZ** Better than I'd like to. When I was working for them, in the last war... Kalendorf accused me of thinking like a Dalek. Huh. Why are you looking at me like that?  
**ALBY** Oh... nothing.  
**SUZ** You're thinking... She's got the Emperor's brain in her head. Can I trust her? (*She laughs loudly*)  
**ALBY** I was thinking... maybe the Emperor knows what the plan is... and since his brain's in your head...  
**SUZ** (*Sighs*) I don't think it works like that, Alby. I think he's asleep.  
**MORLI** (*Quiet, concentrating*) Perhaps it's time you did what you threatened to do, like.  
**ALBY** I thought you were asleep.  
**MORLI** I never sleep, me. Just think, with me eyes closed.  
**SUZ** What did you mean?  
**MORLI** You said you should've killed yourself.  
**ALBY** Morli!  
**MORLI** Well, you did, din't ya?  
**ALBY** Yeah, all right, Morli. Just close your eyes and do some more thinking -  
**SUZ** No, Alby. She's right.  
**MORLI** You said, 'If I was dead, the Dalek Emperor would be dead too. And you'd win the war.' That's what you said.

**ALBY** Yeah, and I said it wasn't that simple.

**MORLI** But it is, isn't it? We want to win, don't we?

**ALBY** Well, yes, but –

**MORLI** We have to win. We have to defeat the bad Daleks. What else is there to do?

**ALBY** It's not as simple as that.

**SUZ** Morli... these... 'good' Daleks are just as bad in their own way. They've been killing people.

**ALBY** That's right. All sorts of bad stuff, like blowing up whole planets, just because their governments said they were too poor to help in the war effort.<sup>17</sup>

**MORLI** But, Alby, the war's the only thing, like. The Bad Daleks have commuted the... you know... nastiest things in the whole uni-thing. We have to be on the side of the Good Daleks. That's the only way.<sup>18</sup>

**ALBY** (*Dismissive*) Look, Morli, just –

**MORLI** Nah, it is the only way! That's what they taught us at the hospital, like. We has to do what they tells us. We has to, man. And they can't have their Emproary... boss man back, can they? That would be the worst thing for all of us. The worst bloody thing of the lot.<sup>19</sup>

**SUZ** Morli... you say that's what they *taught* you?

**MORLI** I don't think I should be listening to you. You've got the Emproary thing in yer head, like.<sup>20</sup>

**ALBY** How did they teach you, Morli?

**MORLI** Not teachin' really. Not old fashioned teachin' with computers and stuff. They just made us sleep... and when we woke up... we knew. Some didn't get it. Some went funny and had to sleep for a long time. But the rest of us... we knew all right. And I know now. I've been listening... thinking, like. And I *know*.

**SUZ** Know what, Morli?

**MORLI** Alby?

**ALBY** Yeah?

**MORLI** Will you help me?<sup>21</sup>

**ALBY** Help you? Help you to do what?

**MORLI** I know you loves her and all that. But we have to kill her.<sup>22</sup>

**ALBY** Morli, just sit down and shut up. We've heard enough of this. I don't know what they did to you in that hospital, but whatever it was, it was –

**MORLI** (*Yells*) Are you gonna help me?!<sup>23</sup>

**ALBY** Morli... I'm warning you. Sit down –

**MORLI** *hits ALBY hard.*

**ALBY** Aaaaargh!

*And again.*

**ALBY** Ooooffff! Ugh.  
*He collapses, spluttering and groaning in agony. He's been well and truly immobilised.*

**MORLI** Now stand still, Suz. I have to kill ya now. And I know that you knows that it's for the best. You said it yerself, din't ya?

**SUZ** Yes... yes, I did.

**ALBY** (*Spluttering through agony*) No... no, Suz! Get away from her! We'll find a way out of this! We have to!

**MORLI** There's a good girl. There's a good girl.

**SUZ** (Quiet, and accepting) Oh God...

*Door opens.*

**DALEK** Exterminate!<sup>24</sup>

*Dalek gun fires. MORLI screams, dies and falls to the floor.*

**DALEK** Why was she attempting to kill you? Answer!

**SUZ** (In shock) Because she was brave.

**ALBY** Because she'd been brainwashed by the Alliance Daleks...  
on that base in the Pkowitz System.

**DALEK** You are required on the Bridge. Both of you! Move!

### 98. Int. Scout-Ship *Defiant*. Bridge.

**DALEK** Long-range scanners detect that our second wave is now destroying the Alliance fleet orbiting Jupiter. Alliance reinforcements are detected approaching this solar system.

**DALEK 1** Attack Squadron *Dalazar* now on course for our coordinates.

*Tracking bleeps.*

**DALEK 2** Tracking approach of Kalendorf's transport ship.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Is Kalendorf alone?

**DALEK 2** Running scan of his vessel.

*Bleep of scan.*

**DALEK 2** Scan complete. He is alone.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Where is Susan Mendes?

**DALEK** She is being brought to the bridge, as ordered.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** What is the delay?

**DALEK** The other female captive attempted to kill her.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Why?

**DALEK** It would appear that the other human female had been subjected to the Alliance robotisation techniques we detected in operation in the Pkowitz System. She has been exterminated.

*Door opens. ALBY is still in pain.*

**ALBY** What are you going to do to us now?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Put them in the restraint devices.

**DALEKS** We obey!

*The sound of struggling and discomfort from SUZ and ALBY as they are locked into the devices. The restraints crash shut. Pause.*

**SUZ** So... What happens now?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Kalendorf will be here soon.

**ALBY** Kalendorf? You mean... the Alliance fleet?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The Alliance fleet is being destroyed.

**ALBY** How? I mean, I thought we had you outnumbered -

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Kalendorf will explain all.

**SUZ** Karl? How can he explain that?

*Alarm sounds.*

**DALEK 1** Kalendorf's ship is approaching.

**KALENDORF** (Distort) Kalendorf to *Defiant*, are you reading me?

**SUZ** Karl!

**DALEK 1** Silence!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** This is Scout-Ship *Defiant*. You will begin docking procedures immediately.

**KALENDORF** (Distort) Understood.

**ALBY** What the hell's going on?

*Crossfade to:*

**99. Ext. Space.**

*KALENDORF's space transport docks with Defiant.*

**100. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception.**

*Airlock door opens.*

**DALEK GUARD** Enter!<sup>25</sup>

*Footsteps.*

**DALEK GUARD** You will proceed to the bridge.

*Footsteps continue, echoing down corridor. Build music.*

**101. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

*Pause. Door opens.*

**SUZ** Karl! It really *is* you!

**KALENDORF** *(To Daleks)* Is the Alliance second fleet approaching?

**ALBY** You mean – reinforcements?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** They will be within scanning range in 70 rels.

**ALBY** So you lot'd better get going before they burn your metal arses off!

**KALENDORF** Then we don't have long. You must evacuate this ship immediately.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Unacceptable! You will *proceed* immediately.

**SUZ** Proceed with what? Karl – what's going on? What's he talking about?

**KALENDORF** Suz. *(Pause)* Leave this to me. *(To DALEK)* Talk to the Dalek Supreme or do what you like – but I am going to do nothing unless you take your Daleks and leave this ship. We both know your attack squadron is well within transmat range by now – so go!

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** I will contact the Dalek Supreme for orders.

**KALENDORF** Do that – but do it fast, for all our sakes.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Accessing command network. *(Fade into background)*

*Bleeps of Dalek command network in operation.*

**KALENDORF** *(His old self)* Are you two all right?

**ALBY** Not really. *(Pointedly)* Are you?

**KALENDORF** You have to trust me, Alby. Both of you do. *(Sighs)* Suz... it's good to see you. I'm sorry there isn't time for a better reunion just now.

**SUZ** It's good to see *you*, Karl.

**KALENDORF** Where's Mirana?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The Dalek Supreme confirms your order.

**ALBY** Order?

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We will now transmat to Attack Squadron Dalazar.

**KALENDORF** Then get on with it.

*Daleks transmat away.*

**SUZ** I don't believe it. They really did go because you told them to.

**ALBY** He's up to something. What are you up to, Kalendorf?  
*Clunk of restraint devices being released.*

**KALENDORF** Getting you two out of these for a start.  
*SUZ and ALBY make vocal noises of relief as they step out of the restraints.*

**ALBY** Thanks - but you still haven't answered me.

**KALENDORF** Alby, I don't have time for this.

**ALBY** Very convenient.

**KALENDORF** Just listen! You heard that our second fleet is on its way. So we don't have much time.

**SUZ** But if your reinforcements are - <sup>26</sup>

**KALENDORF** What you don't know is that the Enemy Daleks have just about finished exterminating our first fleet and will be ready to take our second force by surprise.

**ALBY** How the hell did that happen? I thought you were supposed to be good at your job - !

**KALENDORF** We walked into an Enemy trap on Jupiter.

**SUZ** On Jupiter?

**KALENDORF** PLEASE! BOTH OF YOU!!! *(Pause)* Alby, on the approach to this ship, my scope showed thirty-odd crewmembers trapped in the loading bay.

**SUZ** They were knocked out by nerve gas. We thought the Daleks would've killed them by now.

**KALENDORF** Is Mirana with them?

**ALBY** No. We think she and her first officer got away in an escape pod.

**KALENDORF** I see... Alby - go and let those people out of the loading bay and arm them against attack.

**ALBY** Attack from where?

**KALENDORF** The airlock.

**ALBY** But if the Daleks can trans -

**KALENDORF** There isn't time for this, Alby. Go!

**ALBY** What are you going to do?

**KALENDORF** I have to talk to Suz.

**SUZ** What about?

**KALENDORF** About everything that's happened - everything that is going to happen. You're the key to this whole situation, Suz.

**SUZ** Me? How?

**ALBY** Yeah - what are you talking [about?]  
*Proximity alarm.*

**ALBY** What's that?

**KALENDORF** That is a Dalek attack squadron closing in for the kill. Alby, you've got to get moving.

**ALBY** But -

**SUZ** Alby, I'll be all right. Do as he says.

**ALBY** *(Moving off)* All right, all right. I don't like it - but I'm going, I'm going.  
*During this, we hear his footsteps retreat to the door. Doors opens and closes. Pause.*

**SUZ** I thought you were in a hurry.

**KALENDORF** It is good to see you again.

**SUZ** What are you up to, Karl?

**KALENDORF** Stopping the Daleks. *All of them.*

**SUZ** Should I trust you?

**KALENDORF** Yes. You should.

**SUZ** Then why don't I?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** Sometimes it's difficult to trust. Hold my hand. Look into my mind – and find out.

**SUZ** All right.

*The telepathic sound (as heard before). Their voices becoming echoed. They are communicating telepathically.*

**KALENDORF** Look into my mind, Suz.

**SUZ** *(In distress)* Oh my God... what have you done, Karl?

**KALENDORF** What is necessary. As I know you will too.

*A sudden whoosh of psychic energy begins to build.*

**SUZ** No... no, keep away from me... now, please... Karl – why are you doing this to meeeee?!!

*The whoosh comes to a violent conclusion. SUZ screams in agony.*

### **102. Int. Attack Squadron Dalazar Command Ship.**

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** Advance party Squadron Leader to Dalek Supreme.

*Crackle of hyperlink.*

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Report.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** We are now aboard Attack Squadron *Dalazar's* command ship. We are closing to within 10 hyper-rels of Scout-Ship *Defiant*.

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Excellent! Maintain that position. Our second wave of ships has totally destroyed Alliance forces around Jupiter, and is now moving to your sector of space.

**DALEK SQUAD LEADER** The second Alliance fleet is now within range of our scanners. It is far superior in number and firepower to our fleet. If we engage it, we will be defeated.

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* That will not be necessary.

### **103. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Airlock Reception.**

*Sounds of great activity. The thirty-odd crewmembers are alert, armed and busy barracading the airlock. Welding equipment and barked orders etc.*

**ALBY** All right – get the barricades up!

*Sounds of effort and crashing of large objects. Comms bleep.*

**ALBY** Alby to bridge. We're setting up defences at the airlock as best we can.

*Pause. Bleep.*

**ALBY** Bridge? Kalendorf? Suz? *(A sound of frustration)* Guys, I've got to go to the bridge – keep it together here. I'll be back.

*Footsteps and breathing from ALBY as we follow him. Activity fades into the background.*

**ALBY** *(Mumbles to himself)* Kalendorf... what the hell are you up to? Bastard... Never trust a man of noble birth... They'll sell you all down the river just for the sake of honour.

Fade up footsteps and crossfade to:

**104. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

*SUZ regains consciousness. She groans, recovering as if from a bad dream.*

**KALENDORF** (Close) Suz?

**SUZ** (Close) I couldn't... It was... Pure... destruction...

**KALENDORF** (Close) Now, do you understand?

**SUZ** (Close. Now calm) Yes. I do.

*Door opens.*

**ALBY** (Approaching, out of breath) Leave her alone! What are you doing to her? What's going on?

*Feet scuffle as SUZ stands.*

**SUZ** (Getting up) It's all right, Alby.

**ALBY** Is it? Here, take this gun.

*Acoustic FX.*

**KALENDORF** Don't I get a weapon?

**ALBY** Not until you explain what you're up to. Why didn't you answer my call on the intercom?

**SUZ** What call?

**ALBY** What's been going on here? You've been doing your telepathic stuff on her, haven't you, Kalendorf?<sup>27</sup>

*Comms alarm.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) This is the Dalek Supreme.

**ALBY** What the hell - ?!

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) Kalendorf, you will respond.

*Gun cocked.*

**ALBY** Stay where you are. Don't even think of touching those comms controls.

**KALENDORF** (To DALEK SUPREME) I know you can hear me - I'm sure your Daleks left enough surveillance devices on this ship to -

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) I can hear you.

**ALBY** You mean they've been listening to us all -

**KALENDORF** Are you ready to relay the signal?

**ALBY** What signal?

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) Attack Squadron *Dalazar* is equipped with trans-hyper signal projectors. Your transmission will be relayed throughout the entire galaxy.

**KALENDORF** Suz? Are you ready?

**SUZ** I'm ready.

*Gun cocks.*

**ALBY** Suz - don't move! Kalendorf, don't touch those controls -

*I mean it!!!*

**KALENDORF** Put the gun down, Alby - and trust me.

**ALBY** Do as I say!

**SUZ** Alby - it's all right.

**ALBY** Is it? Then tell me what you're going to do?

**DALEK SUPREME** (Distort) The Alliance fleet is manoeuvring into attack formation. Prepare for transmission in 60 rels.

**ALBY** What are you supposed to transmit?! *I SAID DON'T TOUCH THOSE CONTROLS!!!*



**KALENDORF** Alby, if you're going to kill me, you'd better do it now. But I warn you, the next person you'll have to kill will be Suz.

**ALBY** Suz – tell me what you're going to do.

**KALENDORF** There isn't time!

**SUZ** I'll make time.

**KALENDORF** But –

**SUZ** Karl... it's important to me. (Pause) Alby, I'm going to tell the galaxy that the Angel of Mercy has returned – and that the Daleks have made that possible.

**ALBY** Which Daleks? The *Enemy Daleks*?

**SUZ** Yes.

**ALBY** But –

**SUZ** We have to join forces with our old enemies to defeat our new enemies.

**ALBY** You've *got* to be joking.

**KALENDORF** You know all about the Punished Planets, Alby –

**ALBY** Yeah, but – look, I know we've found out that the Mentor and her lot are not all sugar and spice – but that's no reason to go running into the arms of the Daleks who nearly wiped us out last time.<sup>28</sup>

**KALENDORF** And what about that station you found in the Pkowitz System?

**ALBY** You know about that? How?

**SUZ** And Morli? What about her? That's the way the Mentor wants us all to be one day – simple, lovable, obedient and murderous on cue. Is that what you want to be like?

**ALBY** (To **KALENDORF**, *realising*) Kalendorf... You told the Enemy Daleks about the Pkowitz station, didn't you? That's why they were waiting there for me. That's how they knew how to find the Emperor's casing. My God. When did this start? How long have you been selling us out to the Enemy Daleks?

**KALENDORF** Not quite as long as the Mentor has been plotting to turn us all into mindless cattle. Now, if you'll excuse me –

**ALBY** Don't!!! I'm warning you! I *will* fire.

**KALENDORF** Alby, I'm not going to bother to attempt justifying my actions –

**ALBY** – because you can't! How would that be possible? Oh yeah, I know the Mentor's lot are bastards in their own way. I know that – I've *always* known that. I was *with* you on *that*. But how is joining forces with an even worse enemy gonna put that right?

**KALENDORF** The Dalek Supreme has given us certain... assurances.

**ALBY** Which'll go right down the pan the moment he gets what he wants.

**KALENDORF** Maybe.

**ALBY** Maybe? What's the matter with you? You *know* that!

**KALENDORF** Whether you agree with me or not is immaterial! If Suz doesn't make that broadcast soon, that Dalek attack squadron will blast us out of existence.

**ALBY** (Locked in anger) You *bastard*.

**KALENDORF** Killing me won't stop Suz making the broadcast. Will it?

**SUZ** No. Put the gun down, Alby.

**ALBY** He's got you under his influence somehow. Don't you see, Suz? He's gone bad! He's sold us out. What he's doing can't be right.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) You must make the broadcast now. Soon, the Alliance fleet will attack and we will be defeated.

**ALBY** This is our chance to defeat them, Suz. Isn't that what you've always been fighting for? Suz?

**SUZ** Put the gun down, Alby. I can't let you kill Kalendorf. You have to trust us.

**ALBY** I trust you, Suz. But you don't know what you're saying. He's a traitor and he's done something to your mind. You must trust me.  
*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Kalendorf to Dalek Supreme, commencing transmission now.

**ALBY** Noooo!  
*Gun fires.*

*Crash in closing theme.*

## NOTES

1. Line changed to: '(Carefully) Yes. There's been report that a... an "unidentified" transmission was detected, coming from this ship.'
2. Line changed to: 'I... I wonder what it could have been.'
3. Line changed to: '**Good.** I want you to get your section airborne in surface skimmers. I had a red light on Niner Seven's perimeter sensor just now, but couldn't raise them. No comms signal at all. It's like they're not there.'
4. Line changed to: '(Via loudspeaker) Perimeter guard unit Niner Seven! Are you there? Perimeter guard unit Niner Seven, show yourselves! **Perimeter guard unit Niner Seven! Are you there?**'
5. Line changed to: 'I thought I saw someone moving behind those cactus-things.'
6. Line changed to: '**Yeah**, I suppose we'd better take a look on foot. Take us down nice and slow, Trooper. First sign of trouble ~~and~~ - '
7. Scenes 79 and 80 were reordered in post-production, with Scene 79 being inserted between two halves of Scene 80. The point in which Scene 79 was placed is during HERRICK's fourth line; 'Can your people run an atmosphere check?' being the first bit of the second half.
8. Line changed to: 'Now, Trooper, they've told us there's nothing on this planet but plants, insects and rodents. But if you see a hostile-looking bug, you have my express permission to blow its ugly **nuts** off.'
9. Line changed to: '(Close and intense) Uuuurgh! **Must...** mussssst... Must kill!'
10. Line changed to: 'No. We **will** await the coded signal from our advance party.'
11. Line changed to: 'No... no, it's all right, Morli. Don't panic. I may feel dead. I thought I was for a moment back there. But, apparently, I'm not. **Are** you okay?'
12. Line replaced by:

**MIRANA** There was a transmission.  
**MARBER** Transmission?  
**MIRANA** Oh, it doesn't matter. The thing is... I thought to myself... What's the thing I feared most?
13. Added dialogue at the beginning of the scene:

**TARKOV** Do you want some more?  
**SALORAN** Yes, thanks.  
*TARKOV pours a drink. SALORAN takes a drink.*  
**TARKOV** You know... Are you okay?  
**SALORAN** Hmm. Yes, fine.
14. Line changed to: '(A chuckle) You can have more than that. Is he really the monster who brought about the Great Catastrophe. The "Dark One"? **The...** the "Bringer of Death" we were all told about at school?'
15. Added dialogue at the beginning of the scene:

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Holographic transmission commencing.
16. Line changed to: '**Now in range.**'
17. Line changed to: 'That's right. All sorts of bad stuff, like blowing up whole planets, just because their governments said they were too poor to help ~~in~~ the war effort.'
18. Line changed to: 'But, Alby, the war's the only thing, ~~like~~. The Bad Daleks have commuted the... you know... nastiest things in the whole uni-thing. We have to be on the side of the Good Daleks. That's the only way.'
19. Line changed to: 'Nah, it is the only way! That's what they taught us

at the hospital, ~~like~~. We has to do what they tells us. We has to, man. And they can't have their Emproary... boss man back, can they? That would be the worst thing for all of us. The worst bloody thing of the lot.'

**20.** Line changed to: 'I don't think I should be listening to you. You've got the Emproary thing in yer head, ~~like~~.'

**21.** Line changed to: 'Will you help **us**'?

**22.** Line changed to: 'I know you loves her and all that. But we have to kill her.'

**23.** Line changed to: '(Yells) Are you gonna help **us**?!!'

**24.** Line changed to: 'Exterminate! **Exterminate!**'

**25.** Line changed to: 'Enter! **Enter!**'

**26.** Line changed to: 'But if your reinforcements are **just** - '

**27.** Line changed to: 'What's been going on **in** here? You've been doing your telepathic stuff on her, haven't you, Kalendorf?'

**28.** Line changed to: 'Yeah, but - look, I know we've found out that the Mentor and her lot are not all sugar and spice - but that's no reason to go running into the arms of the Daleks who nearly wiped us out **the** last time.'



# CHAPTER THREE

**Prologue 2 – Chapter Three’s extra scene – was written during the recording, wasn’t it?**  
Nicholas Briggs: More or less from the moment John and I had agreed the script was finished, I had this grumbling feeling in my waters about the whole business of Kalendorf covertly working against the Enemy Daleks. As it turned out, it was clear that Chapter Three was underrunning, so during the recording process – one evening after a studio session – I decided to write an extra scene for Chapter Three. The beginning of this chapter already had an ‘out-of-sequence’ scene, involving the Mentor destroying Emmeron, so I thought I’d just build on that a bit. I wanted to cement the idea that Kalendorf was up to something, so that the revelation that he’d retrieved Suz to use her as bait for the Dalek Supreme wasn’t such an out-of-the-blue shock. I still wanted it to be a shock, but not one that seemed to have no basis.

**Chapter Two had largely been about Alby, Mirana, Suz and Morli – and we left them on some pretty mighty cliffhangers. Why then shift focus to Jupiter and other characters?**  
Although I do quite a bit of planning and scribbling down of ideas, I’m a firm believer in writing being a lot to do with gut feeling. When I’m writing and I have a gut feeling that the story needs to go somewhere else for a while, I invariably act upon that feeling – because I feel I’m being the audience as well as the writer. It’s like being stuck in one room too long. Sometimes, you just need to get outside and go for a walk. So that’s one reason why I got outside and went for a walk with all the soldiers on Jupiter. But, once again, it was also a way of heightening tension, by not immediately resolving the previous set-up of Alby and Suz in trouble and Suz confessing she had the Dalek Emperor in her brain.

**Scene 85 is beautiful – for the first time since *Invasion of the Daleks*, we hear Alby and Suz really talking together. Was it difficult to write – did you feel any expectation?**

Thanks. I just wanted to create an intimate moment, and to be fair, it really works because of Sarah and Mark’s acting. They were totally uninhibited about it. And, because the two of them genuinely felt that it was high time that the characters ‘consummated’ their relationship, it was the scene they were dying to do. They instinctively knew how to do it. I think it does come across well, as this very contained, almost trivial moment of reality amongst the most momentous events. As for writing it... I don’t recall that it was difficult. When you’ve been building up to a scene like this for almost two whole series, you know exactly what the characters are thinking. When you’re positive of that, and know the characters really well, it’s exhilarating to write such a scene. I felt real anticipation for it.

Scene 86 is Mirana and Marber's only appearance in Chapter Three. As a listener, you're constantly thinking that they're going to be rescued, that something will happen – and then you kill 'em off!

I'm always trying to do what is 'realistic', even though the backdrop is often preposterous. I enjoy writing my characters into situations, and then having no idea of how I'm going to get them out of trouble. I'd had Marber and Mirana leave in the escape pod, I knew they'd still be floating around in it. I thought, what are the chances that they're going to be rescued? Virtually none at all. I think, when I initially wrote it, I hoped right up until the last breath that I'd think of a plausible way out of it... but there wasn't. I think my hope comes through in the performances of Tree [Gallagher] and Ian [Brooker]. We all worked very hard on that scene.

**Chapter Three has only one scene of Saloran and Tarkov, as did Chapter Two. Were you worried that the audience would lose sight of the framing device – or, on the other hand, were you concerned about returning to them too often?**

To be honest, that's just the way it worked out. It didn't worry me, although I seem to remember John Ainsworth picking up on this. The **Doctor Who Magazine** reviewer certainly did. But I needed narration at this point and not at any other during this chapter. I'm a great believer in using dramatic devices as and when they're needed, and not just for the sake of uniformity. I'm always trying to tell the story the most effective way I can at any given point.

**The one Saloran and Tarkov scene begins with a bit of ad-libbing:**

<b>TARKOV</b>	Do you want some more?
<b>SALORAN</b>	Yes, thanks.
<i>TARKOV pours a drink. SALORAN takes a drink.</i>	
<b>TARKOV</b>	You know... Are you okay?
<b>SALORAN</b>	Hmm. Yes, fine.

Well, I had a lovely day with Karen Henson and Steve Elder doing the Velyshaa scenes. We had loads of time and we talked and rehearsed a lot. They're both very good actors who work in very different ways, so it was rather fun. Steve is very serious and concentrates hard. Karen is as mad as a tree and totally anarchic. She giggles and 'hums' and 'hahs' a lot. Then she hits the nail on the head and gets it just right. Steve is very precise and keen on detail. So somehow we worked out that it was really time that Tarkov and Saloran had some sort of meal, just to convey that they were talking for a long time. It's interesting that one reviewer said they were having breakfast... but we left it open to interpretation. We just talked about what they might be doing, and Steve and Karen just added those opening lines.

**Why use Vaarga plants?**

Seemed a good method for the Daleks to use to trap the alliance forces. And, er... I'd just listened to the CD of *Mission to the Unknown* [1965 *Doctor Who* episode, which only survives as an audio recording]. I thought it would be fun and it was appropriate in the context of the plot. It just added to the Daleky feel of the whole thing, I hoped.

**Where does the name Dalazar come from?**

You fool! Do you not know the name of the continent on Skaro where the Dalek city was built?

**Why was 'But if you see a hostile-looking bug, you have my express permission to blow its ugly head off' changed to 'But if you see a hostile-looking bug, you have my express permission to blow its ugly nuts off'?**

Actors! They said it. I laughed. What can I say? I was seduced. I forgot I'd let them change it when it came to putting the quote on the sleeve!





# NAMES

Nicholas Briggs: The names I make up for my scripts come from a variety of sources. If they don't just pop into my head – and some of them often just do! – then I look around the room and see what I can spot. Sometimes they come from randomly selected pages from books, sometimes off bleach bottles. Sometimes I say real names, but muffle my mouth and see what they sound like. Yes, it's all a bit weird. I can't remember the origins of most of the Dalek Empire names, but here's what I do and don't remember...

**SUSAN MENDES** – I don't know where Mendes came from. Possibly Sam Mendes, the director. But I wanted her to be called Suz, because that's what my Gramp always called my Nan.

**ALBY BROOK** – again, no idea where the surname came from, but Alby was my Gramp's name. Hence the 'thank you' to Nan and Gramp in the CD booklet.

**KALENDORF** – is the name of the visiting dignitary in Agatha Christie's *Spider's Web*. It's usually pronounced with a flat 'a' sound – like calor gas – but when I was in a production of this play, a fellow cast member, the wonderful Nick Pegg opted to pronounce it 'Karlendorf' and somehow I fell in love with the name. The name originally featured in my first pitch for *Embrace the Darkness* [2002 *Doctor Who* audio] but all the human characters were eventually replaced by one big robot family.

**PELLAN** – I think that was an adaptation of Pelham in *The Taking of Pelham One Two Three* [1974]

**DRUDGER** – I created for Audio Visuals, when I needed a name for a type of robot. Robot comes from the Czech verb 'robotit', which means 'to drudge', hence Drudger. They also featured in Big Finish's first *Doctor Who* audio, *The Sirens of Time*.

**ELISONFORD** – was originally Elinsford, but I accidentally typed the name incorrectly for the sleeve details. The sleeve was sent off before the recording session, so I had to change the name in the script! Elinsford comes from the Audio Visuals play *Justyce*.

**ERNST TANLEE** – Tanlee comes from a bizarre mix of character and actor names of the spymasters in James Bond and *The Ipcress File* [1965]. I later added the name Ernst rather randomly. It's been suggested that I was thinking of Ernst Stavros Blofeld, but I can't honestly say that's true.

**DAUGHTER** – was an 'in-joke' for the actress playing the part, Georgina Carter. Her agent at the time referred to all men as 'Daughter!'.

**MARBER** – I'd just acted in a production of Patrick Marber's brilliant play, *Closer*.

**SPARKS** – is a traditional way of referring to a radio operator or an electrician. Don't you watch war movies!?

**MORLI** – was originally Gojo, but that was just stupid. Then I changed it to Muli, but someone told me that sounded like a racist insult, so I changed it.

**ALLENBY** – the surname of the first girl I snogged.

**GURIA** – nothing to do with Simon Guerrier, who I didn't even know when I wrote the script.

**CARSON'S PLANET** – a reference to a vaguely remembered planet name from some old 1950s sci-fi novel. I didn't bother looking it up.

**DEFIANT** – I honestly didn't think of *Deep Space Nine*. I was naming it after HMS *Defiant*.

**DX MISSILES** – I use a discordant sound from an old Yamaha DX7 keyboard for my Dalek music.

**DRAMMANKIN** – is a mountain range on Skaro, you fool!

# DALEK WAR CHAPTER FOUR

## 105. Ext. Space.

*A synthesised, computer voice.*

**NAV COMPUTER** Star Yacht *Crusader*, nav computer dispatch. Logged seven zero, nine, four two. *Crusader* has now entered Velyshaa System. No recognition comms received. Requests for planetary traffic control flightpath guidance from planet Velyshaa... unanswered. Solar sails retracting for final approach. Chemical engines activating for touchdown adjacent to ruins of Velyshaan capital city.  
*Crash in Dalek Empire theme.*

## 106. Ext. Planet Velyshaa.

*Howling, desolate winds. Roar of Crusader's chemical engines slowly fades in from the distance. Crusader comes in to land. As engines reach a roaring crescendo, there is the crunch and clunk of the ship's contact with the rocky surface. The engines wind down. A pause. For a moment, nothing but the howling wind. The electronic motor of a door ramp opening. It crashes to the rocky ground. Footsteps on the metal gang-plank, then crunch of footsteps on the ground.*

**TARKOV** Still no contact?

**TROOPER** No reply to any of our signals, sir.

**TARKOV** (*Sighs heavily*) Right... We'll search on foot. Use your portable readers. Set them to detect humanoid life.

**TROOPER** Squad! Humanoid life!

*Various clicks and whirrs of several 'readers' being set.*

**TARKOV** (*To himself*) She's here somewhere. I know it.

### CHAPTER FOUR CD TRACK LISTINGS

Disc One: <i>Dalek War</i>		Disc Two: <i>Dalek Empire Strikes Back</i>	
Chapter One		1 Introducing <i>Dalek War</i>	
1 Crusader	14 Recovery capsule	3 Writing and pre-production	
2 No contact	15 Disappeared	4 More cast	
3 Saloran Hardew?	16 No readings	5 Additional scene	
4 Home Territories	17 Refreshments	6 In the studio	
5 Intelligent sort of fellow	18 Data virus	7 Recording and post-production	
6 Last resting place	19 You gambled	8 The future	
7 Cerebral activity	20 Mentor recalled	9 <i>Dalek War</i> trailers	
8 Traitor	21 Earth's orbit	10 Out-takes	
9 Chaos	22 Enemy craft	11 Music cues	
10 Here on Earth	23 Magnatrap		
11 More destruction	24 Kal-en-dorf		
12 Meecros V	25 Victory or death		
13 No sign	26 Sancroff's Strategy		
	27 Data hidden		
	28 The holiday's over		

**TROOPER** Do we head for the buildings, sir?  
**TARKOV** That's all that's left of the Velyshaans... so that's where she's going to be.  
**TROOPER** Understood.  
**TARKOV** Let's move out. See what we can find before nightfall.  
**TROOPER** Sir. *Squad!* Wide dispersal! Move out!  
*The general crunch and clatter of the squad moving out. Bleep of readers. Martial music cue starts and reaches a crescendo. Change mood and crossfade to:*

### 107. Int. Kalendorf's Burial Chamber.

*The howling wind is muffled and distant. A flame is burning. SALORAN HARDEW is sleeping. We can hear her breathing. Distant hammering on a wooden door. SALORAN stirs, making a few confused groans.*

**TARKOV** (Distant) Hello, in there! Open this door!  
**SALORAN** continues to recover from being rudely awoken. More hammering on door.

**SALORAN** (Impatiently) There's a simple latch!<sup>1</sup>

**TARKOV** (Distant) Oh...

*In the distance, a latch is lifted. The door creaks open. Footsteps of several approach. When they are near, they stop. The sound of several guns cocking.*

**TARKOV** Saloran Hardew?

**SALORAN** Why the guns?

**TARKOV** You didn't respond to any of our signals. Are you Saloran Hardew?

**SALORAN** I didn't hear your signals. Put the guns away. I've no time for boy soldiers.

**TARKOV** There were no navigation buoys on our way in. Has there been trouble here?

**SALORAN** (Amused) Yes. Didn't you hear? A civilisation died over two thousand years ago. Who are you?

**TARKOV** I'm Siy Tarkov. Special envoy from the Galactic Union.

(Pointed) I'm looking for Saloran Hardew.

**SALORAN** You intending to execute me?

**TARKOV** Squad, stand down, please.

**TROOPER** Squad! Stand down!

*Clicks and whirrs of weaponry being uncocked.*

**SALORAN** Thank you... Tarkov. And what does the... (With distaste) Galactic Union want with me all of sudden?

**TARKOV** Your help.

*SALORAN starts to laugh. Her laugh gets louder and louder, echoing wildly through the cavernous chamber.*

### 108. Int. Star Yacht Crusader. Corridor.

*Door hisses open. And clunks shut. Footsteps as SALORAN and TARKOV walk along corridor.*

**SALORAN** How long did it take you to get here in this thing?

**TARKOV** We set off from the Home Territories about a year ago.

**SALORAN** Under solar sail power?

**TARKOV** That's right.  
**SALORAN** Not bad. Technology's been improving since I've been away. Took me five years to get here. I spent most of it asleep of course.  
**TARKOV** Little by little, we're making improvements.  
**SALORAN** Hmmm. About three thousand years ago, our ancestors would have made the same journey in a fraction of the time. Sobering thought, isn't it?  
*Door hisses and clunks open.*  
**TARKOV** In here, please.  
**SALORAN** Thank you.  
*Footsteps. Door closes. Crossfade to:*

### 109. Int. Crusader. Tarkov's Cabin.

**TARKOV** Please. Sit down.  
*SALORAN sits.*  
**TARKOV** Can I get you a drink? Some breakfast?  
**SALORAN** You seem an intelligent sort of fellow, Tarkov.  
**TARKOV** Thank you, I -  
**SALORAN** So I'm guessing you'll have a pretty good idea of just how suspicious I am of you and your bosses.  
**TARKOV** I do realise that you - (weren't exactly treated well by the Galactic Union)  
**SALORAN** That I feel bitter, betrayed... cast out? Forgotten? *Do you?* (Pause) My people and I have been grovelling around in the stale shit of this planet for ten years, Mr Special Envoy. Have you any idea why?  
**TARKOV** (Clears his throat. Awkward) I've read your work. You put forward a theory that the Great Catastrophe was some sort of war, and that before it came about our galaxy was inhabited by a far superior civilisation. That the galaxy's population was a billion times larger than it is now. That -  
**SALORAN** Because your friends on the Galactic Union council dismissed me as an obsessive - not right in the head! That's the answer you're so politely trying to avoid, Tarkov. They said I was obsessed with the past, when we should be concentrating on the future. (Pause) What's your opinion on all this? Hm?<sup>2</sup>  
*Pause.*  
**TARKOV** Um... I want to show you something. Please... if you'll just look at the screen.  
*Taps a few computer keys. The sound of a 3D graphic materialising on a screen.*  
**TARKOV** This is a transmission which was picked up by our tracking stations just under two years ago.  
**SALORAN** It's coded.  
**TARKOV** Yes.  
**SALORAN** (Disbelief) You want me to crack a code?  
**TARKOV** No. We think we cracked it.<sup>3</sup>  
**SALORAN** You 'think'?  
**TARKOV** Some of the data was too corrupted to make sense of. But we got most of it.  
**SALORAN** What did you get?  
*Key taps. Graphic bleeps.*

**SALORAN** Some sort of visual file. A fragment of an image.

**TARKOV** What do you make of it?

**SALORAN** It looks like... metal. A detail of some machinery. Why have you brought it to me?

**TARKOV** We analysed the physical characteristics of this 'metal'.  
*Key taps. Graphic bleeps.*

**TARKOV** Do you recognise it?

**SALORAN** (*Laughs*) And that's why you came to me. You *have* done your homework, Tarkov.

**TARKOV** The physical characteristics of this unknown alloy correlate approximately to those of various artifact fragments you discovered before you came to work here on Velyshaa. Agreed?<sup>4</sup>

**SALORAN** Agreed. Where did this transmission come from?

**TARKOV** That's why I'm here.

**SALORAN** (*With dread*) Don't tell me... It came from outside our galaxy?

**TARKOV** Yes.

**SALORAN** How did you pick it up? I didn't think our tracking stations could track that far.<sup>5</sup>

**TARKOV** They can't. But this transmission came through a freak wormhole.

**SALORAN** (*Chuckles*) Ah, fate... always keen to take us by surprise.

**TARKOV** We estimate that it emanated from a source several thousand light years away.

**SALORAN** And so *at last*, the Galactic Union are worried. Worried that what befell the galaxy centuries ago may happen again. And finally, like me, they want to look into the past to find out how to *stop* it all happening again.<sup>6</sup>

**TARKOV** Frankly... No.

**SALORAN** (*Puzzled*) I don't understand. Then why are you here?<sup>7</sup>

**TARKOV** Well... I... (*Sighs*) I made... something of a nuisance of myself.

**SALORAN** I beg your pardon?

**TARKOV** They *allowed* me to come... but... well...

**SALORAN** They think *you're* not right in the head too?

**TARKOV** Let's just say that I need to make a pretty convincing case for them to take action.

**SALORAN** And what sort of action would you like your precious Galactic Union to take?

**TARKOV** I don't know. It depends on the nature of the threat, doesn't it? All I do know is that the evidence that something terrible happened round about two and a half thousand years ago is conclusive. I've seen the debris and dust that were once star systems. I've visited planets where the atmospheres are still poisoned... that still bear the scars of some... some unimaginably violent upheaval. And I've read as much of your work as I could find.<sup>8</sup>

**SALORAN** Which probably isn't much.

**TARKOV** It was enough. There's been a lot of rebuilding in the last thousand years. There may still be far too much poverty, fear and distrust out there, but things are gradually improving. And like it or not, that's because of the work the Galactic Union are doing.<sup>9</sup>

**SALORAN** Huh.

**TARKOV** I'd hate all that work to be for nothing.<sup>10</sup>  
**SALORAN** You're a crusader, Mr Tarkov.  
**TARKOV** Aren't *you*? It's the name I gave my ship. (*Pause*)  
 Saloran... I need you to tell me everything you've discovered here.  
 (*Pause*) Saloran?  
**SALORAN** You think that I've been keeping it a secret all these years? It's just that nobody wanted to listen.  
**TARKOV** Then...?  
**SALORAN** Then I'd like you to hand that corrupted transmission over to my people... see if they can get anything else out of it. They've become exceptionally good at that sort of thing.  
**TARKOV** Of course. But I doubt they'll have any luck.  
**SALORAN** And we'd better get back to the burial chamber.  
**TARKOV** Burial chamber?  
**SALORAN** Where you found me.  
**TARKOV** You *sleep* in a burial chamber?  
**SALORAN** I do.  
**TARKOV** Why?  
*Music cue. A short passage of time.*

#### 110. Int. Kalendorf's Burial Chamber.

*The wooden door creaks open. Footsteps on rock.*

**SALORAN** The last resting place of the great and terrible Kalendorf!  
**TARKOV** Kalendorf? Who was that?  
**SALORAN** Have you ever been to Earth?  
**TARKOV** Er... can't say I have. Where is it?<sup>11</sup>  
**SALORAN** Or Guria?  
**TARKOV** Er... no.  
**SALORAN** Celatron? Yaldos Major? No? Hmm... no. All of those planets - and there are others too - all of them have small pockets of ancient communities who have passed stories of the Great Catastrophe down from generation to generation.<sup>12</sup>  
**TARKOV** Not very reliable sources, though.  
**SALORAN** Maybe not. Maybe not.  
*A few footsteps as they move further into the burial chamber.*  
**SALORAN** Ever heard of the 'Dark One'? The 'Bringer of Death'... or 'Harbinger of Darkness'?  
**TARKOV** Only stories I was told as a kid.  
**SALORAN** Those stories, or stories much like them, have been told all over the galaxy for centuries. Some of them differ from each other wildly. But when you put them all together... analyse the differences and the similarities... Pick over the bones of the meagre historical evidence from the Great Catastrophe... They start to point towards one man. A native of this planet. A Knight of Velyshaa. Kalendorf.  
**TARKOV** You're saying that this Kalendorf is the 'Dark One'? The mythical figure who brought about the Great Catastrophe?  
**SALORAN** I'm saying it looked like he might have been... so I came here to find out.  
**TARKOV** And all you found was his tomb.  
*SALORAN's footsteps.*



**SALORAN** The Knights of Velyshaa were a telepathic people. This place is alive with his thoughts. That's why I sleep here.

**TARKOV** (*Dubious*) You can hear the thoughts of a dead man?

**SALORAN** Only in dreams.

**TARKOV** (*Dubious*) In... dreams?

**SALORAN** There are no telepaths left in the known galaxy... but Velyshaans were able to communicate telepathically with ordinary folk like us.

**TARKOV** Even when they've been dead for centuries?

**SALORAN** Kalendorf left this for someone like me to find. Well, he probably hoped for someone better than me. But all these stone carvings, all these statues you see are charged with what he called his 'thought memory'.

**TARKOV** (*Increasingly dubious*) So that's what you've been doing here all these years. Sleeping... and then dreaming about the man who allegedly caused the Great Catastrophe?

**SALORAN** It's a little more scientific than that.

**TARKOV** I'm relieved to hear it.

**SALORAN** I've devised a cerebral link-up with my ship's computer. Downloading the mental impulses I pick up. I've got a couple of psychologists, a linguist and one or two of the local witch-doctors working on interpreting it all. (*Pause*) Are you thinking of taking your boy soldiers and leaving me to wallow in my own insanity, Mr Tarkov?

**TARKOV** (*Sighs*) Tell me what you've found out.

**SALORAN** And you'll decide later whether or not I'm off my head?

**TARKOV** Something like that.

*Pause.*

**SALORAN** Very well.

**TARKOV** So?

**SALORAN** Just take a look around.

**TARKOV** At what? The statues?

**SALORAN** If you like. What do you see?

**TARKOV** Is this... Kalendorf?<sup>13</sup>

**SALORAN** We think so. What do you think?

**TARKOV** Well... that he doesn't look like a 'Harbinger of Death'. He doesn't look... evil. Sort of... noble.

**SALORAN** Well... he was a knight.

**TARKOV** What's this one?

**SALORAN** You tell me.

**TARKOV** Look, I'm not really in the mood for games -

**SALORAN** Please. It's important.

**TARKOV** Er... well... it looks like some sort of machine... Maybe a weapon of some kind?

**SALORAN** It's interesting that you pick that one out.

**TARKOV** Is it?

**SALORAN** Yes.

*A few footsteps.*

**SALORAN** Go ahead.

**TARKOV** What?

**SALORAN** You want to touch it, don't you?

**TARKOV** (*Taken aback*) Yes. Yes, I do. But how did you know?

**SALORAN** Then go ahead.

**TARKOV** All right.  
*Hand touches statue. Tarkov gasps in a mixture of confusion and pain. We are suddenly transported into a swirling psychic impression. Sounds are confused, echoing and distorted.*

**DALEK** *(Echoing)* Exterminate!!!  
*A Dalek gun blast. Tarkov cries out. A long cry that echoes over and over again until we hear nothing but the fading echoes. Crossfade to:*

### 111. Int. Saloran's Ship.

*The background whirr of the ship's computer.*

**COMPUTER** Cerebral activity returning to normal. Subject regaining consciousness.

*TARKOV groans, waking.*

**SALORAN** *(Soothing)* It's all right. You're all right.

**TARKOV** Am I?

**SALORAN** Well that's what my computer says.

**TARKOV** Your...? This is your ship?

**SALORAN** More of a glorified shelter now. It'd never get off the ground, that's for sure.

**TARKOV** *(Trying to remember)* I touched that... that statue... and then... The machine... The machine in the statue seemed to come alive. *(Becoming agitated)* And... and I wasn't... there... I wasn't... wasn't - <sup>14</sup>

**SALORAN** *(Calming)* You latched onto a little test Kalendorf left behind for posterity.

**TARKOV** Kalendorf? What do you mean? What was that machine? It... spoke. It fired a weapon at me. I thought I was... dead.<sup>15</sup>

**SALORAN** What you saw was a Dalek. Or at least a psychic impression of one.

**TARKOV** A... Dalek? What's a 'Dalek'?

**SALORAN** They were a military power from another galaxy. Back in Kalendorf's time, they invaded.

**TARKOV** *(Incredulous)* Invaded the entire galaxy?

**SALORAN** Yes.

**TARKOV** And that's what caused the Great Catastrophe...

**SALORAN** Not exactly.

**TARKOV** Then what?

**SALORAN** Computer, commence playback. Look at the screen.

**COMPUTER** Playback commencing.<sup>16</sup>

*Buzz of computer activity.*

**TARKOV** What...? What am I looking at?

**SALORAN** A sort of decoding of some of the earliest images I experienced in the burial chamber.

**TARKOV** Those are spacecraft... Enormous spacecraft. Like nothing I've ever seen before... And planets... huge populations... cities... cities full of people, creatures. But these are just dreams, you said it yourself.

**SALORAN** Was what you experienced just a dream?

**TARKOV** I... don't know.

**SALORAN** What you encountered was something that Kalendorf left, for us to find out that we could access the thoughts he left behind. *(Pause)* You said you wanted to know everything I'd discovered.

**TARKOV**

Yes.

**SALORAN**

It's hard to believe, I know. But this is what the galaxy was like back then. Something they called the Earth Alliance had established peace... until the Daleks invaded. When they did, Kalendorf was caught in the middle of it. Somehow he became involved with an Earth woman called Suz. They were captured by the Daleks and, it seems, agreed to work for them. Kalendorf felt he had betrayed everything he believed in, just for the sake of survival. With his help, the Daleks continued their ruthless subjugation of the civilised worlds. It's not clear what the nature of his feelings for Suz were, but there was a special bond between them. The years passed. Kalendorf and Suz continued with their betrayal. Then one day, the Daleks killed Suz. This may have been the trigger for Kalendorf to turn against the Daleks. We don't know for sure. The Daleks had successfully conquered the galaxy, but against all the odds, he apparently led a rebellion against them. It looked like the rebellion might succeed; but the Daleks had a secret strategy. Somehow they had the means to create a dimensional gateway into an alternative universe. And from that universe, they intended to gain the wisdom and the power to rule the entire cosmos. They would join forces with an invincible Dalek army from another dimension.<sup>17</sup>

*Extract from final scene of Project Infinity.*

**SALORAN**

But that alliance was not to be. A terrible war between the two Dalek factions began, with Kalendorf and his trusted lieutenants, Alby Brook and Mirana, rallying the rebel humans to fight on the side of the Daleks from the other universe. Kalendorf had swapped sides again. And once again, as the years passed, he was to realise the route to victory and peace would not be an easy one.

*During the above (which has already been heard in Chapter One) crossfade (at a point to be determined in post-production) to:*

## **112. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.**

**ALBY**

I trust you, Suz. But you don't know what you're saying. He's a traitor and he's done something to your mind. You must trust me.  
*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF**

Kalendorf to Dalek Supreme, commencing transmission now.

**ALBY**

Noooo!

*Gun fires. Pause.*

**ALBY**

*(In pain)* Suz? *(Gasps)*

**SUZ**

*(Breaking down)* I'm sorry, Alby... I'm sorry, but I couldn't let you kill Kalendorf.<sup>18</sup>

*ALBY gives a final gasp and dies.*

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Begin transmission immediately!

**SUZ**

*(Numb)* What have I done?

**KALENDORF**

Saved the galaxy.

**SUZ**

I wonder...

**DALEK SUPREME** *(Distort)* Begin immediately!

*Comms bleep.*

**KALENDORF**

We're transmitting. *(Pause. Prompting her)* Suz.

**SUZ**

*(Beginning a long speech)* This is the Angel of Mercy... I have returned to you...

### 113. Int. Saloran's Ship.<sup>19</sup>

**TARKOV** Did Kalendorf's plan work?

**SALORAN** I think it was the beginning of what we call 'The Great Catastrophe'. There was chaos.

*Sounds of battle accompany this with music.*

**SALORAN** After Susan Mendes made her speech, calling for the Mentor to be defeated, the Alliance fleet erupted into a war between all the non-Dalek races and the Mentor's Daleks. The Dalek Supreme's forces moved in.

*More sounds of battle. Explosions. Quite a music moment too. Fade...*

**SALORAN** Eventually, the Mentor's Daleks retreated. The Alliance joined forces with the Dalek Supreme. It was the beginning of a long, terrible war. The Mentor brought forward her plans for brain conversion of all other species. Kalendorf led the Alliance alongside the Dalek Supreme. The destruction was... almost beyond comprehension.

**TARKOV** When you... experience Kalendorf's thoughts... Do you...? I mean, what about his feelings? Did he do all this without any sense of regret or remorse?<sup>20</sup>

*Pause.*

**SALORAN** The Knights of Velyshaa believed in strength of purpose at all costs. Kalendorf's purpose was to rid the galaxy of the Daleks... any Daleks. He believed that overrode all other concerns.

**TARKOV** But how did he hope to win? Even if his new alliance succeeded in defeating the Mentor and her Daleks, he must have known that the Dalek Supreme wouldn't be an ally forever.

**SALORAN** You're forgetting the Emperor.

**TARKOV** The Emperor? Then what happened to Suz?

### 114. Int. Scout-Ship Defiant. Bridge.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) She will be brought to me, here on Earth.

**KALENDORF** You don't need her... You only need to extract the consciousness of your Emperor from her mind.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) The extraction process must be carried out on Earth.

**KALENDORF** Why?

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) Do not question the Dalek Supreme! (*Pause*) When we have won the war, you will see Susan Mendes again.

**KALENDORF** You mean you're going to hold her hostage.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) This discussion is at an end.

*The hyperlink cuts off.*

**SUZ** Did you expect anything else?

**KALENDORF** I'm sorry.

**SUZ** There's no need. We both know what has to be done... don't we?

**KALENDORF** Yes.

**SUZ** You know I don't think I'll be able to bear it...

**KALENDORF** What do you mean?

**SUZ** If I'd killed Alby for no reason.<sup>21</sup>

*Deep boom and crunch of distant spaceship docking. A tiny alarm sounds.*

**KALENDORF** The Dalek command ship is docking with us.  
**SUZ** Karl?  
**KALENDORF** Yes?  
**SUZ** Win this war.  
**KALENDORF** It's all I can do.

### 115. Int. Saloran's Ship.

**TARKOV** And did he win?  
**SALORAN** No one could. There was just more and more destruction. For years and years. No end to it in sight.  
**TARKOV** Then what could possibly have been his plan?  
**SALORAN** It was based on an old strategy used by one of Velyshaa's greatest and most feared leaders.

### 116. Ext. Planet Meecros V. Battlefield.

*Massed gunfire. Huge explosions. Cries of Mentor Daleks being destroyed. The dust settles. The battle is over. We overhear a conversation on a transceiver...*

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Colonel Godwin to command. Meecros V Mentor-Dalek base destroyed. We're ready for evac.

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) Any word from Commander Kalendorf?  
*Crackle.*

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) Godwin? Is Kalendorf all right?

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) We... we don't know. He led the primary assault force in on the ground.

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) He...? What? But he's our Commander-in-Chief, he's - !

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) I know, I know. But have you ever tried arguing with him? We couldn't stop him.<sup>22</sup>

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) Has he gone crazy - ? It must've been a hell-hole in there.

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Don't you get the idea that's where he wants to be these days? I mean, don't get me wrong, he's a fine soldier. The best commander we could have. But... you know, when he's not fighting a battle, he just sits in his cabin... listening to the hyper-scanner, like he's trying to find something. Won't talk about it, but I know - <sup>23</sup>

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) All right... Look... We've missed our window on hitting that enemy transport fleet anyway. We can hang on here until Eastern Sunrise. We'll keep tracking for him. You send in a squad to find him.<sup>24</sup>

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) I'll lead it myself.

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) And, Godwin, keep signalling for him on the comms.<sup>25</sup>

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Will do.

**COMMAND** (*Distort*) Good luck. Command out.

*Crackle.*

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Commander Kalendorf, do you read me? Please respond. This is Colonel Godwin calling Kalendorf. Can you hear me?

*KALENDORF sounds significantly older now.*

**KALENDORF** (*Exhausted*) I can hear you. I'm alive.

**GODWIN** (*Distort. Repeats her call, obviously not hearing KALENDORF. Dip the call repeating under KALENDORF's next speech*)

**KALENDORF** I just don't feel like talking... that's all. Not to you, anyway.

*He clicks Godwin off in mid sentence.*

**KALENDORF** I want to talk to Suz. Suuuzzz!!!

*His words echo across the battlefield.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Gurgles*) Susan... Mendes...

**KALENDORF** Huh... (*Chuckles harshly*) Are you the only one we left alive here?

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Strangled voice*) You... surrendered Susan Mendes... to the Dalek Supreme... You sacrificed her... Why?

**KALENDORF** (*A statement*) Why.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** (*Weakly*) Whyyyyyy?

**KALENDORF** That's not you talking. That's the Mentor speaking through you.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** Whyyyyyyy...?

**KALENDORF** Tell you what, I'll make you a deal. I'll talk to you - warrior to warrior... (*building rage*) but without her LISTENING!!!

*Then, with an animalistic roar, he attacks the DALEK's casing. He rips the broken metal casing open. The creature within squeals.*

**KALENDORF** Come - out - of - there!!!

*Crunching and crashing of metal. Squelching and squirting of noxious fluids. The creature continues screaming. A grunt of massive effort from Kalendorf, then... A final rip and a splat. The Dalek creature whimpers and gurgles pathetically.*

**KALENDORF** And there you are... laid bare... free from all that machinery... from your billions of connections with her - the all-seeing, all-knowing, all-powerful Mentor. What's it like to be alone on a battlefield? Surrounded by the dead - knowing you're going to die?

*Pathetic gurgle from the creature.*

**KALENDORF** Huh... Can't speak. But I'll grant you your last wish. I'll answer your question, in my own way. The way I told Suz. Why did I let the Dalek Supreme take my friend from me? Well... There was once a great leader of my people. His name was Sancroff. Like you, he nearly conquered this galaxy. He was defeated in the end - but at least he was defeated by his enemies. That's what he wanted. He didn't fear that. He knew it would happen one day. But what he couldn't bear was the idea of betrayal. To be defeated by the enemy within. So many of his predecessors had gone that way - stabbed in the back. It was very nearly a tradition. So, whenever he promoted anyone into high office, he made them swear an oath of allegiance. Now, as you may or may not know, the Velyshaans are telepathic. So, at the ceremony of 'Victory or Death' - that was the name of the oath, by the way - he would hold the nobleman or woman's hand, then pull them close, to see if their thoughts were true and pure. And, you know, none of his knights ever betrayed him. Except one. Seterisius was her name. She fought at Sancroff's side in many a battle. She was brave, ruthless, determined. Sancroff loved her as if she were his own daughter, so they say. Then one day, Sancroff discovered that she was plotting his downfall. He didn't tell her that he knew. He just summoned her for a private audience with him. The doors closed. No one knew what passed between them. But when it was over, Seterisius left

Sancroff's palace, went straight to her fortress and brutally killed everyone of her co-conspirators. Then... She killed herself.

**GODWIN** (*Distort. Distant*) Kalendorf! It's him! Kalendorf!!!

*Footsteps run across the battlefield towards us and stop.*

**GODWIN** (*Out of breath*) Kalendorf... Thank God you're alive.

**KALENDORF** Don't interrupt. This is a private conversation.

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Conv...? With who?

**KALENDORF** This... thing... This... Dalek creature.

**TROOPER** Er... I think it's dead... sir.

**KALENDORF** Dead? Huh... dead. Yes, dead. Everything's dead.

**GODWIN** (*Distort*) Are you all right, sir?

**KALENDORF** Come on, we'd better get moving.

*He staggers to his feet with great vocal effort.*

**KALENDORF** The war's not over yet.

### 117. Int. Flagship. Bridge.

*Slow fade up on...*

**GODWIN** Still no sign of that enemy transport fleet, Commander. Should we break off the search and head for the outer sectors?

*Pause. The sound of a transmissions hyper-scanner, dialling through a mass of random transmissions.*

**GODWIN** Commander? (*Close, slightly awkward*) Sir? Perhaps you'd like to go to your cabin and rest.

*Suddenly, there's a single, repeating sequence of bleeps.*

**KALENDORF** There.

**GODWIN** Sir?

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) I think that's it. Visual scan. Long range. Coordinates... (*reading off*) 94249127459/9874.<sup>26</sup>

**COMPUTER** Scanning.

*Scanning FX.*

**GODWIN** (*Sighs*) What is it you're looking for, sir?

*Scanner finds something. An alert bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Yes. Well? Can't you see it, Godwin?

**GODWIN** (*Dubious*) Well... I...

**KALENDORF** Magnify that area. Well, go on.<sup>27</sup>

**GODWIN** Er... right.

*Bleep of controls. Magnification FX.*

**GODWIN** (*Surprised*) There is something there.

**KALENDORF** Well don't sound so surprised. Did you think I'd finally flipped my lid? Stop engines.

*Power hum lowers.*

**GODWIN** All stopped. We're still drifting towards it.

**KALENDORF** (*Squinting at screen*) Just getting a closer... (*Stunned*) And there it is...

**GODWIN** What is it?

**KALENDORF** It's an escape pod. Godwin, read the ident mark on the hull and tell me I'm not going mad.

*Bleep of controls.*

**GODWIN** (*Reading*) S. S... Defiant... Wasn't she lost years ago? (*Pause*) Sir?

**KALENDORF** Lost? Yes... she was.

Cut to:

### 118. Int. Recovery Capsule.

*Burst of rocket fire as Recovery Capsule blasts off from Flagship. Crossfade to interior of capsule. Pinging of proximity scanner (like a quickening sonar ping).*

**GODWIN** (Distort) Flagship to Recovery Capsule, you are clear and on course for SS Defiant escape pod. We are tracking you on approach vector six, speed rising to eleven mettrons per second.

*During the last sentence, a strange phasing sound distorts then obscures the dialogue. The phasing sound continues on distort.*

**KALENDORF** Recovery Capsule to Flagship, your signal is breaking up. Seems to be a problem with your transmission.

*Pause. Phasing continues.*

**KALENDORF** Flagship? Respond, please.

**GODWIN** (Distort. Fades in through phasing) Recovery Capsule, come in. Come in, please. Are you reading me? Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** (Some urgency) Recovery Capsule receiving. What's going on, Godwin?

**GODWIN** (Distort) Kalendorf! Listen to me -

**KALENDORF** What happened?

**GODWIN** (Distort) We lost you for a moment, but -

**KALENDORF** What was it? Some sort of signal interference?

**GODWIN** (Distort) No... Listen to me - We lost you *completely*. The scanners couldn't pick you up at all.

**KALENDORF** What?

**GODWIN** (Distort) Your capsule and the Defiant's escape pod just... phased out of existence for a few moments. You - <sup>28</sup>

**KALENDORF** Run a diagnostic on your scanners and proximity -

**GODWIN** (Distort) No. Kalendorf, turn your capsule around and get back here, *now!*

**KALENDORF** Are you giving your Commander-in-Chief an order, Godwin?

**GODWIN** (Urgent) I'm the designated officer commanding for this EVA - this is *my* call, Kalendorf, and I don't think we have time for this discussion. I shouldn't have let you go out there in the first place. Turn back now.

**KALENDORF** Why? What's going on?

**GODWIN** (Distort) We're initiating remote control. We're bringing you back whether you like it or not -

*During this, KALENDORF operates several controls.*

**GODWIN** (Distort. Angry) Kalendorf?!

**KALENDORF** I've shut off the remote control receptors. You're not bringing me back until you tell me what's going on.

**GODWIN** (Distort) Commander, *please!*

*Phasing begins again during this and finally cuts off transmission.*

**GODWIN** (Distort) There isn't time! We've detected some sort of spatial anomaly... a kind of dimensional shift... and that escape pod is sitting right in the middle of -

*Cut off.*



**KALENDORF** Godwin? Godwin!

*Crackle.*

**COMPUTER** Transmission source out of range.

**KALENDORF** (*Incredulous*) Out of range? Distance to Flagship.

**COMPUTER** Incalculable.

**KALENDORF** In - ? Visual scan 360 degrees.

**COMPUTER** Scanning 360 degrees.

*Scanning FX.*

**KALENDORF** There's the pod...

*Scanning continues.*

**KALENDORF** (*Realisation*) No sign of the Flagship. But just now - Distance to *Defiant* escape pod?

**COMPUTER** Now within docking arm range.

**KALENDORF** Extend docking arm immediately.

**COMPUTER** Extending.

*Clunk and whirr of docking arm.*

### 119. Int. Flagship. Bridge.

**GODWIN** Well keep scanning! He must be out there somewhere. He can't have just disappeared!

**COMMAND** I'm afraid that's exactly what he *has* done, Colonel. No trace of the pod at all.

**GODWIN** (*To herself*) *Kalendorf...*

### 120. Int. Recovery Capsule. Docking Arm.

*KALENDORF's breathing through space helmet filter. The clunk of his booted feet as he proceeds down the arm.*

**KALENDORF** Now in docking arm. What's the atmosphere reading in the pod?

**COMPUTER** (*Distort*) No readings available.

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) No readings... no readings. What did you expect? A miracle...

*Footsteps stop.*

**KALENDORF** Now opening escape pod door.

*Door mechanism buzzes and door creaks open. Cut to:*

### 121. Int. Mentor's Base.

*Door opening. KALENDORF's footsteps. A different door closes.*

**KALENDORF** (*To himself*) What the hell...? This isn't the escape pod. This... This is -

*Another door opens.*

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You may remove your protective helmet. The atmosphere here is breathable for humanoids.

*KALENDORF removes his space helmet.*

**KALENDORF** So. I've walked into a trap. Very clever. What now?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** You will come with us.

**KALENDORF** No, I think I'd rather walk straight back through that door.

**ALTERNATE DALEK** You and your Recovery Capsule were transported through the dimensional gateway. You are no longer in your own universe.

**KALENDORF** How the hell did you manage to do that... and more importantly - why?

**ALTERNATE DALEK 1** The Mentor will explain. She is waiting to see you. Come with us.

**KALENDORF** *(After a long sigh)* All right.

### 122. Ext. Mentor's Garden.

*A distant, almost musical, gentle wind. Soothing sounds of alien birdsong. Door opens. KALENDORF steps out onto grass.*

**MENTOR** There are refreshments for you. Please. Make yourself comfortable.

**KALENDORF** Where's Mirana? *(Pause)* Suz told me Mirana had got away in the *Defiant's* escape pod. Or was that pod I saw just some sort of clever mirage?

**MENTOR** It has been many years since that pod was launched. My Daleks located it some time ago. Would you *expect* Mirana to be found alive in it?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** No.

**MENTOR** And yet you had to see for yourself. To be certain. I knew you would. It has something to do with guilt, has it not?

**KALENDORF** Well?

**MENTOR** As you suspected, Mirana is, of course, dead. She and her first officer, Marber, died some years ago of asphyxiation. I am sorry if the news... upsets you, Kalendorf. *(Pause)* You look puzzled.

**KALENDORF** You must have gone to a lot of trouble to get me here. What did you do...? Stretch the dimensional gateway all the way from the Lopra System to Meeccros?

**MENTOR** Your presence in our universe is proof that we have that ability... would you not agree?

**KALENDORF** Huh... And why would you bother? Do you think the Alliance will fall apart without me?

**MENTOR** I doubt that.

**KALENDORF** Then what do you want?

**MENTOR** When did you turn against us?

**KALENDORF** *(Amused)* Do you think if I tell you, you'll be able to win back my allegiance?

**MENTOR** I wish to understand your motives.

**KALENDORF** *(Goading)* I thought you'd thoroughly examined all the evidence relating to me. Are you telling me you're not all-powerful and all-seeing?

**MENTOR** Humour me, Kalendorf.

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** It was early on in the war. But I'd already decided you weren't to be trusted. We'd captured a squad of Enemy Daleks. Most of them had blown themselves up before we could disable their self-destruct mechanisms. But we got to one of them just in time.

*Crossfade to:*

### 123. Int. Flagship *Courageous*. *Secure Room*.

**DALEK** You will learn nothing from me.  
**HERRICK** (*Distort*) Commander! It's released some sort of data virus in its brain unit. We can't stop it! It's wiping everything it knows!  
**KALENDORF** Disengage all our scanning equipment.  
**HERRICK** (*Distort*) But, sir, if we –  
**KALENDORF** Do it now, Herrick! Cut off all surveillance and comm-links in this room. 100 per cent shut-down and secure! Do it!  
**HERRICK** (*Distort*) Sir.  
*Shut down FX.*  
**KALENDORF** (*Testing*) Herrick? Herrick? Herrick!!! (*Pause*) And now we're alone. Do you understand me?  
**DALEK** I... understand.  
**KALENDORF** I don't want anything from you. I'm just going to touch your casing... tell you something... with my mind. I have something you want. Something you *need*.

### 124. Ext. *Mentor's Garden*.

*A distant, almost musical, gentle wind.*

**MENTOR** You gambled that the Enemy Dalek would relay your offer of Susan Mendes through its command network to the Dalek Supreme.  
**KALENDORF** I gambled. And I won.  
**MENTOR** Why did you turn against us?  
**KALENDORF** *laughs. His laughter continues for a while under...*  
**MENTOR** Our only purpose was to bring peace and order to your universe. To destroy the Daleks who would enslave and exterminate you. You knew that.  
**KALENDORF** Yes, but when we accepted your *kind* offer of help... we didn't know that you would destroy any world that refused to join our alliance.  
**MENTOR** On a crusade against evil, there can be no equivocation.  
**KALENDORF** (*Angry*) Those planets weren't equivocating... they were sick of war! They'd lost the will to fight... most of them'd had their natural resources ripped out of the guts of their worlds. It isn't that they didn't *want* to fight alongside us, most of them *couldn't!* (*Pause*) No. No answers. No excuses. No discussions. Just that fixed, exquisite smile. And ultimately, that's the only difference, isn't it? The smile. The gentle voice. (*Pointed*) But you are a Dalek.  
**MENTOR** And for that... intellectual conceit, you have led your galaxy to the brink of destruction.  
**KALENDORF** Freedom of thought – of *choice* – isn't an intellectual conceit! It's my birthright.  
**MENTOR** And what would you do with that birthright? Conquer and enslave as your own ancestors did? As the Daleks did? Tell me... What is the difference?  
**KALENDORF** The difference is that we make our own decisions. And we don't get turned into mindless, obedient zombies.  
**MENTOR** You are referring to the mind-processing techniques we developed in the Pkowik System?  
**KALENDORF** Techniques you've been employing wholesale since we

became enemies. And you really can't understand why I won't embrace that as the future for my galaxy?

**MENTOR** 'My galaxy'? You are a warrior at heart, Kalendorf. What would you do without a war to fight?

*No answer from KALENDORF. Pause.*

**MENTOR** See how beautiful this planet is. This is my home. There are countless worlds in this universe just as beautiful... as peaceful. That is why the people here are content. Why would they want the freedom to war amongst themselves? And ultimately, that is all you want the freedom to do, is it not? To carry on with your own, petty, destructive affairs without interference from the Daleks. But you will never have that.

**KALENDORF** That's for me to find out.

**MENTOR** Do you think you are winning this war?

**KALENDORF** Why don't you get on and kill me or brain convert me or whatever you have planned?

**MENTOR** You are not winning this war. But neither are we. And as the war continues, more and more of your galaxy is laid waste. There is something almost poignant about the futility of what we are engaged upon.

**KALENDORF** What are you trying to say?

**MENTOR** Our battle computers confirm that this war can never be won... by either side. It will only end in the total destruction of life, not only in your galaxy, but ultimately beyond that.

**KALENDORF** So, what do you propose?

**MENTOR** What if you were to win this war?

**KALENDORF** What do you mean?

**MENTOR** If your alliance were to drive us out of your universe... What would happen then? (*Pause*)

**KALENDORF** That would be our affair... not yours.

**MENTOR** What is certain is that the Dalek Supreme and the Emperor would not honour any agreements made with you.

**KALENDORF** Perhaps.

**MENTOR** It is certain.

**KALENDORF** What are you saying?

**MENTOR** Which would you prefer? The destruction of your universe? Another, perhaps endless war with your old enemy Daleks, ending in defeat or destruction? Or a future under our guidance and protection?

**KALENDORF** I prefer to make my own future.

**MENTOR** You really believe you could defeat the Emperor's Daleks if they turned against you?

**KALENDORF** Perhaps.

**MENTOR** You could not defeat them before.

**KALENDORF** Perhaps things are different now.

**MENTOR** They are not. The course you choose is destruction.

**KALENDORF** It's my choice. And the choice of every other free mind in the galaxy.

**MENTOR** A galaxy that will be consumed in the fires of war if this futile conflict does not end now. And unlike the Daleks of your universe, we have no desire to participate in pointless destruction. So you see, there is a difference, Kalendorf. Goodbye.

## 125. Int. Saloran's Ship.

**TARKOV** What...? And they just... just left?  
**SALORAN** Yes. The Mentor recalled all her forces through the dimensional gateway.  
**TARKOV** And Kalendorf?  
**SALORAN** He was returned to his ship.  
**TARKOV** And then what? The Dalek Supreme's forces turned on Kalendorf's people?  
**SALORAN** No. For a brief period there seemed to be peace.

## 126. Int. Flagship. Kalendorf's Cabin.

*Door bleep.*

**KALENDORF** Enter.  
*Door opens.*  
**GODWIN** I hope I'm not interrupting you, sir.  
**KALENDORF** No... no, Godwin... Come in.  
**GODWIN** Thank you.  
*Footsteps. Door closes.*  
**KALENDORF** Take a seat... please.  
*Sound of GODWIN sitting.*  
**KALENDORF** How long until we arrive in Earth's orbit?  
**GODWIN** We're currently refuelling. But at optimum speed it shouldn't take us more than a couple of months to get there.  
**KALENDORF** (*Pensive*) Good... good...  
**GODWIN** Do you really expect the Daleks to let us just sail in there?  
**KALENDORF** (*Touch of irony*) Why not? We're allies, aren't we? What can I do for you, Colonel?  
*Pause.*  
**GODWIN** What do you think will happen next?  
**KALENDORF** Is that really why you came to see me?  
*GODWIN doesn't answer.*  
**KALENDORF** What do you think?  
**GODWIN** (*Sighs*) Well... Everyone's expecting another war. I mean... I don't see how the Daleks will ever keep their promise of peaceful co-existence. It's not what they're about, is it... really?  
**KALENDORF** No. No, it isn't.  
**GODWIN** You're going back for the Angel of Mercy, aren't you?  
**KALENDORF** Suz. Yes. (*Pause*) You don't think that's a good idea.  
**GODWIN** I understand why... But... (*Sighs*) Well... There are those who think it would be wiser to prepare for some kind of attack.  
**KALENDORF** Ah yes. And are you one of those who think that? (*Pause. Cottoning on*) Hmm. Will you at least take me to the edge of Earth's solar system, Colonel? I can make the rest of the journey in one of our one-man scout-ships.  
**GODWIN** I... I think that would probably be best. I'm sorry. We all owe you so much, but...  
**KALENDORF** My time has passed. I'm already just... part of history.  
**GODWIN** I'd like to be able to convince you not to go. But I know better than that.  
**KALENDORF** (*Chuckles*) Godwin, what's your first name?

**GODWIN** Er... Susan, sir.

**KALENDORF** Susan? All these years we've fought together, and I never knew... Well, Susan... I don't have a choice. But thanks for the thought.  
*Music. Passage of time. Slow crossfade to:*

**127. Int. Earth. Dalek Control. Tracking Centre.**

*Fade in on alarms sounding.*

**DALEK** Alert! Alert! Enemy craft approaching.

**DALEK 1** Target for destruction immediately.

**DALEK** I obey. Targeting.

*Call-sign transmission.*

**DALEK** An unknown call sign is being transmitted.

*Comms bleep.*

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) This is the Dalek Supreme. That is the call-sign of Kalendorf. Dispatch a transolar disc squadron to force it to land. Activate magnatrap.

*Comms bleep.*

**DALEK** Approaching vessel is attempting contact with Dalek Control.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) This is Kalendorf. There's no need to panic. Your scanners must be able to tell that I'm alone, and all the weapons systems of this ship are powered down.

**DALEK SUPREME** (*Distort*) What is the purpose of your visit?

*Crossfade during DALEK SUPREME's above line to:*

**128. Int. Earth. Dalek Control. Dalek Supreme's Chamber.**

**DALEK SUPREME** What is the purpose of your visit?

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) You promised that Susan Mendes would be released when the war was over.

**DALEK SUPREME** I promised that you could see her.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Doesn't it amount to the same thing?

**DALEK SUPREME** A squadron of transolar discs will escort you. You may land. But if you attempt to deceive us in any way, you will be exterminated immediately!

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Understood.

**129. Int. Earth. Dalek Emperor's Chamber.**

*Door opens.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Kalendorf's ship is now landing. He will be brought to you immediately.

**SUZ** Good.

**130. Ext. Earth. Dalek Control. Landing Pad Zeg.**

*Final moments of touchdown.*

**DALEK** Magnatrap at full strength. This ship will not be able to lift off without our releasing it.

*Comms bleep.*

**DALEK 1** Dalek Control to Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Yes.  
**DALEK 1** Leave your ship now! If you attempt to escape, you will be exterminated!  
**KALENDORF** (*Distort*) Why the hell would I come here just to try to escape? I could've just stayed away. That would have been the wiser thing to do.  
**DALEK 1** Leave your ship noooowww!!!  
*Comms bleep off. KALENDORF's shuttle hatch opens. Footsteps.*  
**KALENDORF** Now what?  
**DALEK** You will come with us! Move! Move!  
**KALENDORF** Where's Suz?  
**DALEK 1** Move or you will be exterminated!

### 131. Int. Earth. Dalek Emperor's Antechamber.

*Door opens. Footsteps.*

**DALEK** Halt!  
**DALEK SUPREME** Kal-en-dorf!  
**KALENDORF** I don't believe we've met.  
**DALEK** This is the Dalek Supreme!  
**KALENDORF** Where's Suz?  
**DALEK SUPREME** You will see her now.  
*Door opens.*  
**DALEK SUPREME** Follow! Follow!  
**DALEK** Move!  
*Footsteps and stop. As we move in, the background hum alters slightly and the reverb becomes larger.*  
**KALENDORF** Well, where is she?  
*A complex series of metallic shields unfolds. The Dalek heartbeat becomes louder, more dominant. SUZ's footsteps echo.*  
**KALENDORF** Suz?  
**SUZ** (*Cold*) You won the war. Well done.  
**KALENDORF** I didn't win it. I just convinced the Mentor that I'd never give up fighting. So, she couldn't see the point in going on.  
**SUZ** It was a good strategy.  
**KALENDORF** It was just the truth – Suz, are you all right? (*Pause. To Daleks*) Are you Daleks going to let us out of here? What are you planning?  
**SUZ** I am planning to make another speech to the citizens of the galaxy. It's time the Angel of Mercy united us.  
**KALENDORF** I imagine the Dalek Emperor has other ideas. I'd like to speak to him before I leave, by the way. (*To DALEK SUPREME*) Can that be arranged?  
**DALEK SUPREME** Why do you wish to speak to the Emperor?  
**KALENDORF** (*With some irony*) We're both commanders-in-chief of our respective forces. And we're both allies. Isn't that reason enough? (*Pause*) Well?  
**DALEK SUPREME** You see the Emperor before you.  
**KALENDORF** What...? You? But you're just the Dalek Supreme –  
**SUZ** Me, Karl. Me. (*A little snigger*) Explain it to him.  
**DALEK SUPREME** We activated the Emperor's consciousness in the mind of Susan Mendes and prepared for the extraction. Then – there – were – new – orders.<sup>29</sup>

**SUZ** I didn't favour extraction... more, *amalgamation*. Susan Mendes possessed a power I wanted.

**KALENDORF** (*Almost to himself*) No...

**SUZ** The Angel of Mercy will appear to be the new Emperor of the Daleks. It will become clear to the galaxy that we will no longer be the enemy. There will be no more war.

**KALENDORF** Until the alliance forces drop their guard... and you strike.

**SUZ** (*With a laugh*) Perhaps.

**KALENDORF** Is there anything of Suz left in there?<sup>30</sup>

**SUZ** Why did you want to speak to the Emperor?

**KALENDORF** I told you – Answer me!

**SUZ** (*Smiles*) There are some touches of humanity. The more persuasive elements of the Human Factor.

**KALENDORF** Suz...?<sup>31</sup>

**SUZ** Why did you come here, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** To find Suz.

**SUZ** And yet... I can access Suz's memory. Her knowledge of you tells me... you would *expect* the Daleks to betray you.

**KALENDORF** Then why did I enter into this alliance in the first place?

**SUZ** (*Puzzled*) I don't... I can't quite...

**KALENDORF** Isn't there anything left in there that can tell you that? Try... Try to think it. It's there. I'm sure it must be.

**SUZ** (*Snaps*) Take him away!

**DALEK SUPREME** I obey.

**KALENDORF** What are you afraid of, *Emperor*?!

**DALEK SUPREME** Move!

**SUZ** I fear nothing! The Daleks have no fear! We are the superior race! It is our destiny to conquer you!

**KALENDORF** Then why do you want me taken away? It's because you fear me! Me! A mere humanoid.

**DALEK SUPREME** Move or you will be exterminated.

**SUZ** Stop! Leave him!

**DALEK SUPREME** I obey.

**SUZ** You are inferior, Kalendorf.

**KALENDORF** Am I?

**SUZ** And you will die.

**KALENDORF** Now that I know the truth... I expected nothing less.

**SUZ** (*Insistent*) Why did you come here, Kalendorf?

**KALENDORF** That question's really eating away at you, isn't it?

**SUZ** You are cunning. You had a plan. You *have* a plan!

**KALENDORF** Is that Suz or the Emperor speaking?

**SUZ** Susan Mendes is dead!

**KALENDORF** And yet you know me. You know me as Suz knew me! But perhaps Suz knew better than you. Yes, why would I come here? You've turned the whole planet Earth into one gigantic Dalek metropolis. I'm stuck fast at the dead centre of your web. How the hell would I expect to get out? Maybe I didn't expect to get out.

**SUZ** You are keeping something from me.

**KALENDORF** Maybe I am. Maybe I'm not. You're not sure, are you?

**SUZ** I am the Emperor of the Daleks. There is no greater mind than mine.

**KALENDORF** And yet Suz would know. Wouldn't she? Wouldn't you?



**SUZ** *Susan - Mendes - is - dead!*

**KALENDORF** So you keep saying! And if she is, you'll never know what I've planned.

**SUZ** You are attempting to deceive me. There is no plan.

**KALENDORF** So you've changed your mind. Well, I suppose that's a Dalek's prerogative.

**SUZ** How would Susan Mendes know?

*Pause.*

**KALENDORF** How did we organise a rebellion that brought your empire to its knees?

**SUZ** That was anticipated. It was our strategy to -

**KALENDORF** - Distract us from Project Infinity, yes I know. But are you telling me that you always knew we were plotting against you?

**SUZ** We soon discovered that you and Susan Mendes were in telepathic contact.

**KALENDORF** And *that's* why Suz would know! Because there was a connection between our minds. A connection that no longer exists, because you've destroyed it. You've killed Susan Mendes. And when you did that, you destroyed something more powerful than the Daleks will ever be.

**SUZ** What...? What do you mean?

**KALENDORF** You wouldn't understand.

**SUZ** Tell me!

**KALENDORF** Why should I?

**SUZ** Tell me, or you will be exterminated!

**KALENDORF** I'm dead ahead -

*A sudden sound of impact and an electric sizzle.*

**KALENDORF** Aaaaargh!!!

**KALENDORF** *then continues to make choking sounds under the following.*

**SUZ** Even in this frail, humanoid form, I can call upon all the raw energy of the Daleks.

*A further sizzle.*

**KALENDORF** Aaargh!

**SUZ** I can choke the life out of you!

**KALENDORF** *is gagging and choking.*

**SUZ** Or make every nerve in your body burn for an eternity of agony!

*More sizzling.*

**KALENDORF** Aaaaargh! *(Through pain)* I will never answer you!

**SUZ** You will answer! Answer!

*Sizzling increases.*

**KALENDORF** Aaaaargh! *(Fighting to speak through pain and choking)* But you can answer yourself. I can see... in your mind... You have the answer you want! Buried in Suz's thoughts. Now that you're touching me... I can make contact... I can see. It's still there.

**SUZ** *(Enraged)* What?! What is still there?!

**KALENDORF** Can't you see it? Or is the Emperor's mind too blind for that?

*More sizzling. A nasty scrunching sound indicates KALENDORF is being choked further.*

**KALENDORF** *(A strangled, choked cry)*

**SUZ** Tell me!!! You - will - tell - meeee!!!

*A psychic-transition effect. We are suddenly inside SUZ's mind. The familiar, high-pitched psychic whining sound.*

**KALENDORF** (*Calm, echoing, disembodied*) Victory or death. Victory or death. They say that's all Seterisius could hear in her mind as she entered her fortress. Victory or death. She ordered her knights to kneel before her. They did not hesitate to obey. Victory or death. It was Sancroff's voice in her mind. And without hesitation, she killed them all. Victory or death... the last thought in her mind. The thought Sancroff had planted there.

**SUZ** (*Calm, echoing, disembodied*) Victory or death. I remember.

*Psychic transition whoosh back into the Emperor's chamber...*

**SUZ** (*Herself again*) Karl...

**KALENDORF** You remember?

**SUZ** On the Defiant...

**DALEK SUPREME** What is happening? Explain!

**SUZ** You sent Alby away... Our minds linked...

**DALEK SUPREME** You are the Emperor!

**SUZ** No. I am Susan Mendes. And I know what I must do.

**DALEK SUPREME** Emergency! Emergency!

*Alarms start.*

**DALEK TANNOY** Emergency! Emergency! (*Continues*)

**DALEK SUPREME** Cerebral malfunction! Shut down Imperial link to Dalek Command Network immediately!

**KALENDORF** Now, Suz! Now!

**DALEK SUPREME** Exterminate!

*Psychic energy burst and constant shriek of psionic energy.*

**DALEK SUPREME** Exterminaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaargh!

**DALEK TANNOY** Emergencyyyyyyaaaaaaaaaargh!

**DALEK** Aaaaaaargh!

*Explosion after explosion.*

**SUZ** Victory - or - death!!!

*Crossfade to the cries of countless Daleks and explosions as they're destroyed. A montage of massed Dalek destruction. Musical crescendo. Crossfade to:*

### 132. Int. Saloran's Ship.

**SALORAN** Kalendorf had used Sancroff's strategy. Sancroff had planted a destructive mental impulse in his knights' minds, so that if they'd betrayed him, he could trigger it and any traitor would destroy themselves and their fellow conspirators. Kalendorf had planted such an impulse in Suz's mind. An impulse that ripped through the Dalek Command Network like a burning whirlwind of destruction.

**TARKOV** Hadn't he hoped that impulse would have been transferred to the Emperor from Suz?

**SALORAN** In a way, it made it easier that the Emperor had decided to exist within Suz.

**TARKOV** (*Understanding*) It was easier for him to make physical contact.

**SALORAN** I think Kalendorf had been planning a glorious suicidal, physical assault on the Emperor.

**TARKOV** Which would have left Suz alive. Poor Kalendorf. Always longing to make the ultimate sacrifice to save others. I take it he survived...

**SALORAN** He did. Almost a cruel miracle. Somehow he managed to drag himself back home, to Velyshaa. It took him years. But Suz had been destroyed, along with all the Daleks in this galaxy.

**TARKOV** And that was the Great Catastrophe.

**SALORAN** The collateral damage caused by the mass destruction of the Daleks and all their technology tore the galaxy apart. Whole star systems disappeared, billions upon billions died. It took centuries for the shroud of devastation to begin to lift. Even now, we still live under it.

**TARKOV** But Kalendorf did defeat the Daleks.

**SALORAN** Kalendorf, Suz, Alby, Mirana... They all made it possible.

**TARKOV** Huh... *(He gives a cynical chuckle)*

**SALORAN** What is it?

**TARKOV** And if I present all this evidence to the council of the Galactic Union... They'll just say it's proof that this threat from the past is dead and gone.

**SALORAN** Perhaps... Except for one thing.

**TARKOV** And what's that?

**SALORAN** That transmission fragment that brought you here. If my people have had more success with it than you did.

**TARKOV** If they have.

*Crossfade to:*

### 133. Int. Saloran's Ship. Computer Room.

*The familiar sound of Dalek transmission interference. Some indistinct Dalek chatter filters through for a moment and is then gone.*

**TECHNICIAN** There was more data hidden in the carrier wave. We're working on that right now. It's still being rendered. But we've deciphered more of the visual information already.

**SALORAN** Let's see it.

*Screen activation. Interference fades in and out. Dramatic chord of threat.*

**TARKOV** It's a Dalek all right.

**SALORAN** On a transolar disc... Look... you can just make out...

**TARKOV** A whole squadron of them.

**SALORAN** An invasion force.

*A tiny alarm bleeps.*

**TECHNICIAN** Right... the rendering's complete on that hidden data.

**TARKOV** What is it?

*Sound of a fast-forward scan through Dalek dialogue.*

**TECHNICIAN** Audio transmission fragments by the look of it.

**SALORAN** Let's hear it, Jake.

*Bleep.<sup>32</sup>*

**DALEK** *(Much distortion and static)* Attack spearhead now entering outer galactic sectors. Heavy concentration of asteroid fields indicate massed planetary destruction. Radiation readings indicate destruction caused by Dalek weaponry.

**DALEK 1** *(Harsher distortion)* Long-range scans reveal energy readings towards galactic centre. Alien life still exists within this galaxy.

Your orders are to proceed. Every planet within that mighty swirl must become a Dalek world. Daleks conquer and destroy!

*Transmission cuts off.*

**TECHNICIAN** That's it.

**SALORAN** That's enough.

**TARKOV** Then it's definite. The Daleks are still out there. Alive. On their way.

**SALORAN** Probably coming from Seriphia. It's just as Kalendorf thought. In spite of all our galaxy has been through, the war with the Daleks isn't over. It will begin again.

**TARKOV** But we've no idea when that transmission was made – how far away they actually are.

**SALORAN** Then you'd better take this evidence to your council as fast as you can, Tarkov.

### 134. Ext. Velyshaa.

*Crunching of footsteps on rocky ground. Soldiers are boarding the Star Yacht Crusader. Engine power is building. A klaxon howls from within the ship.*

**TANNOY** (*Muted in distance*) Prepare for blast-off! Secure all ballast. Secure for blast-off!

**TROOPER** All right, you lot! Get a move on! The holiday's over! Lift off in sixty seconds! Come on! Move it!

*TARKOV and SALORAN have to talk louder and louder as the Crusader's engines build up to blast off point.*

**TARKOV** Are you sure you won't reconsider, Saloran? Your knowledge of all this is –

**SALORAN** You know what to tell them, Siy. I've no appetite for never-ending war.

**TARKOV** Never-ending? What do you mean?

**SALORAN** Oh... don't listen to me. It's just that I feel I've already fought all three of Kalendorf's wars.<sup>33</sup>

**TARKOV** Which means you're more than qualified to help this time.

**SALORAN** No. Because I think, while there is life in this universe, there will always be creatures who seek to conquer and destroy others. Perhaps the Daleks are the worst of these creatures... I don't know... Perhaps there's worse yet to come.<sup>34</sup>

**TARKOV** You sound like you're giving up. Like you think we've lost already... before it's even begun.

**SALORAN** I just don't have the stomach for it. This new war may be about to begin... but in a sense, it's never stopped... and never ends.<sup>35</sup>

*The engine roar is very loud now.*

**TARKOV** I hope you're wrong, Saloran! I hope you're wrong! Goodbye!<sup>36</sup>

**SALORAN** Good luck!

*The whirr and clank of the ship's door closing. Engines fire with massive surge of energy. Crusader lifts off. As it climbs, we crossfade to Saloran's running footsteps across the rocky terrain. She stops, out of breath. Crusader can still be heard, rising high into the sky.*

**SALORAN** (*Close. To herself*) Good luck. You'll need it.

*Crash in closing theme. During the theme, the sounds of war and*

*destruction fade in. Cries of exterminate can be heard. And, little by little the sound of massed Dalek chanting emerges and dominates until there is no other sound.*

**DALEKS** Daleks conquer and destroy! Daleks conquer and destroy!  
*A nightmarish, deafening crescendo. Then silence.*

*The end.*

## NOTES

1. Line changed to: '*Impatiently* **What?** There's a simple latch!'
2. Line changed to: 'Because your friends on the Galactic Union council dismissed me as an obsessive - not right in the head! That's the answer you're so politely trying to avoid, Tarkov. They said I was obsessed with the past, when we should be concentrating on the future. (*Pause*) **So**, what's your opinion on all this? Hm?'
3. Line changed to: 'No... **no...** **No**, we think we've cracked it.'
4. Line changed to: '**I take it you agree.** The physical characteristics of this unknown alloy correlate approximately to those of various artifact fragments you discovered before you came to work here on Velyshaa. **Yes?**'
5. Line changed to: 'How did you pick it up? **I...** I didn't think our tracking stations could track that far?'
6. Line changed to: 'And so *at last*, the Galactic Union are worried. Worried that what befell the galaxy centuries ago, may happen again. ~~And finally, like me, they want to look into the past to find out how to stop it all happening again.~~'
7. Line changed to: '(*Puzzled*) I don't understand. **But** why are you here?'
8. Line changed to: 'I don't know. It depends on the nature of the threat, doesn't it? All I ~~do~~ know is that the evidence that something terrible happened round about two and a half thousand years ago is conclusive. I've seen the debris and dust that were once star systems. I've visited planets where the atmospheres are still poisoned... that still bear the scars of ~~some...~~ **of** some unimaginably violent upheaval. And I've read as much of your work as I could find.'
9. Line changed to: 'It was enough. There's been a lot of rebuilding in the last thousand years. There may still be far too much poverty, fear and distrust out there, but things are gradually improving. And like it or not, that's because of the work **that** the Galactic Union are doing.'
10. Line changed to: '**I... I'd...** I'd hate all that work to be for nothing.'
11. Line changed to: 'Er... I can't say **that** I have. Where is it?'
12. Line changed to: 'Celetron? Yaldos Major? No? Hmm... no. **Well**, all of those planets - and there are others too - all of them have small pockets of ancient communities who have passed stories of the Great Catastrophe down from generation to generation.'
13. Line changed to: '**Oh, er**, is this... **is this...** Kalendorf?'
14. Line changed to: '(*Trying to remember*) **I...** I touched that... that statue... and then... The machine... The machine in the statue seemed to come alive. (*Becoming agitated*) **And...** and I wasn't... there... I wasn't... wasn't - '
15. Line changed to: 'Kalendorf? What do you mean? What was that machine? It... *spoke*. It fired a weapon at me. **I thought I...** I thought I was dead.'
16. Deleted dialogue - COMPUTER: '~~Playback commencing.~~'
17. Line changed to: 'It's hard to believe, I know. But this is what the galaxy was like back then. Something they called the Earth Alliance had established peace... until the Daleks invaded. When they did, Kalendorf was caught in the middle of it. Somehow he became involved with an Earth woman called Suz. They were captured by the Daleks and, it seems, agreed to work for them. ~~Kalendorf felt he had betrayed everything he believed in, just for the sake of survival. With his help, the Daleks continued their ruthless subjugation of the civilised worlds. It's not clear what the nature of his feelings for Suz were, but there was a special bond between them. The years~~

~~passed. Kalendorf and Suz continued with their betrayal. Then one day, the Daleks killed Suz. This may have been the trigger for Kalendorf to turn against the Daleks. We don't know for sure. The Daleks had successfully conquered the galaxy, but against all the odds, he apparently led a rebellion against them. It looked like the rebellion might succeed, but the Daleks had a secret strategy. Somehow they had the means to create a dimensional gateway into an alternative universe. And from that universe, they intended to gain the wisdom and the power to rule the entire cosmos. They would join forces with an invincible Dalek army from another dimension.~~ The rest of Scene 111 is also deleted.

18. Line changed to:

**SUZ** (Breaking down) I'm sorry, Alby...

**ALBY** Suz?

**SUZ** I'm so sorry, but I couldn't let you kill Kalendorf.

19. Scene 113 does not contain the battle sounds specified.

20. Line changed to: 'When you... **when you** experience Kalendorf's thoughts... Do you...? I mean, what about his feelings? Did he do all this without any sense of regret or remorse?'

21. Line changed to: 'If I've killed Alby for no reason.'

22. Line changed to: '(Distort) I know, ~~I know~~. But have you ever tried arguing with him? We couldn't stop him.'

23. Line changed to: '(Distort) Don't you get the idea that's where he wants to be these days? I mean, don't get me wrong, he's a fine soldier. The best commander we could have. But... you know, when he's not fighting a battle, he just sits in his cabin... listening to the hyper-scanner, like he's trying to find something. Won't talk about it, ~~but I knew~~ - '

24. Line changed to: '(Distort) ~~All right~~... Look... We've missed our window on hitting that enemy transport fleet anyway. We can hang on here until Eastern Sunrise. We'll keep tracking for him. You send in a squad to find him.'

25. Line changed to: '(Distort) ~~And~~, Godwin, keep signalling for him on the comms.'

26. This line and the following, were reordered as:

**KALENDORF** (To himself) I think that's it. Visual scan. Long range.

**COMPUTER** Scanning.

**KALENDORF** Co-ordinates... (reading off) 94249127459/9874.

27. Line changed to: 'Magnify that area. ~~Well~~, go on.'

28. Line changed to: '(Distort) Your capsule and the Defiant's escape pod just... phased out of existence for a few moments. ~~You~~ - '

29. Line changed to: 'We activated the Emperor's consciousness in the mind of Susan Mendes and prepared for extraction. ~~Then there were new orders.~~'

30. Line changed to: 'Is there anything **left of Suz** in there?'

31. Deleted dialogue - KALENDORF: 'Suz...?'

32. Added dialogue - TECHNICIAN: '**Hang on a sec.**'

33. Line changed to: 'Oh... **no, don't**... don't listen to me. It's just that I feel I've already fought all three of Kalendorf's wars.'

34. Line changed to: 'No. **No**, because I think, while there is life in this universe, there will always be creatures who **want** to conquer and destroy others. Perhaps the Daleks are the worst of these creatures... I don't know... Perhaps there's worse yet to come.'

35. Line changed to: 'I just... **I just** don't have the stomach for it. This new war may be about to begin... but in a sense, it's never stopped... and never ends.'

36. Line changed to: 'I hope you're wrong, Saloran! **I say**, I hope you're wrong! Goodbye!'

# CHAPTER FOUR

**It's a very Kalendorf-heavy episode. The logical conclusion to Gareth's 'shouldn't he be more noble?' complaint?**

Nicholas Briggs: In a way, I suppose it is. But it's also because we find out that what happens in *Dalek War* is all largely due to Kalendorf's manipulation. You know? It's a story all about what Kalendorf did to cause the Great Catastrophe. He is the root cause of everything that happened. He made the alliance with the Mentor. He made the alliance with the Dalek Supreme. He determined to rescue Suz. He planted the destructive impulse in Suz's mind. He did all this, because he wanted to be the ultimate warrior and save the galaxy. The irony is that he didn't have a noble death and was largely remembered as the cause of something terrible. The Great Catastrophe was the collateral damage caused by Kalendorf's great plan.

**How did you go about casting the part of Godwin?**

I wanted a strong actress to play Godwin, because I wanted to her to be a kind of 'regular' who actually appears from nowhere in terms of plotting. We leap forward to a time when Kalendorf has been fighting another long war. So I needed someone I could trust to deliver the goods. Someone who was very at ease with herself, with me and with the whole Big Finish set-up and would instantly sound at home in her fictional environment. I thought of Helen Goldwyn as I was staring at the character's name... 'Godwin... Goldwyn!' It was really as pathetically simple as that. And she's such a laugh... and very, very talented.

**Do you find writing the conclusion to a story easy or troublesome? Is it nice to tie up all the loose ends – see it all come together – or do you fret about it?**

For some time now, I've made it a rule to sort out my endings when I first conceive a story. That said, the developing plot often reshapes these endings a bit. But this ending was largely what I'd planned. However, approaching it, I did fret. You want to make sure that it lives up to what you'd initially thought of. I also fret because it's like getting near the end of a book you're reading. Suddenly, I don't want it to end. No matter how much trauma and frustration I've had during the writing, it's like saying goodbye to a friend. Eventually, I just get on and do it, though!

**What's the significance of the line, 'Every planet within that mighty swirl must become a Dalek world'?**

I thought it was an appropriately grand thing for a Dalek to say. It's also a quote from a TV Comic story. Both Jac Rayner and John Ainsworth zeroed in on it as a really bad line. But I fought for it. They both said something like, 'Er... is this a quote or something?'



And I said, 'Er... yeah'. It's ironic that I've used it as the mainstay of the Dalek Empire III teaser trailers.

**Sancroff? Wasn't he in your Doctor Who audio play *The Sirens of Time*?**

Yes, Sancroff is the defeated Knight of Velyshaa held captive by the ghastly Ruthley. I'm not in favour of making the universe smaller by linking these kind of things up, but I'd already created this character, so it seemed silly and perhaps unnecessarily confusing to create another Velyshaan dictator. I also thought it would be nice to look back and wonder how ruthless and noble that frail old chap in *Sirens* had once been.

**The series ends with an ominous beat: the Daleks are on their way back. Again, was this you writing an ending with a sting in its tail, or setting up a further series?**

I wasn't thinking of a sequel. But I just can't say, 'The Daleks have won' or 'The Daleks have been destroyed'. It's just so... disappointing. The ending I was going for was the idea that wars against terrible things will always happen, because people (or, in this case, creatures) are always capable of doing evil. I was thinking, too, of the end to *The Dalek Book*, with the line 'and never ends' on the last page of the book. That's what I was aiming for.

# Dalek Empire III

Nicholas Briggs tells us about Dalek Empire III... 'Dalek Empire III has six chapters. They are The Exterminators, The Healers, The Survivors, The Demons, The Warriors and The Future. The last title may change. It picks up twenty years after Tarkov's departure from Velyshaa... but he hasn't got home yet. Meanwhile, rumours are reaching the Galactic Union that a race known as "Daleks" have entered the Border Worlds. The trouble is, no one thinks they're a threat. Only Tarkov can warn them, and he's disappeared! The new series introduces a whole cast of new characters and focuses more on the cunning the Daleks have to employ in order to conquer the galaxy. At its heart, it's an epic story about friendship and loyalty and whether or not those qualities can survive in the face of an onslaught from the dastardly Daleks.'

From Dalek Empire III: Chapter One – The Exterminators by Nicholas Briggs...

**SUZ**

Victory or death. Victory or death.

The thought that Kalendorf had planted in me...

And everywhere it went –

That thought

Now *my* thought

Now *me* –

Everywhere *I* went, there were Dalek thoughts...

Programs

Instructions

Commands...

... *hatred*.

And I smashed them all aside.

*Crossfade back to Dalek War Chapter Four clip: explosions and Daleks crying out. Crossfade back to:*

**SUZ**

And I couldn't stop.

I couldn't... stop. I was destroying everything...

Because they thought I was one of them. They thought I was the Emperor, so every pathway in their neural network was open to me, no matter

how secure, how secret. The way was always clear.  
*And I was destroying everything...*

Every Dalek *thing* in the galaxy... And then beyond.  
Destruction that was never going to stop until there  
were no Daleks left in the entire universe.

I sensed them trying to find ways of stopping me.  
Too late.  
There were so few of them left now. They were  
panicking, Desperate for a strategy.  
But I was unstoppable.

*The sound of her thoughts smashing to a halt.*

*(She breathes a sigh of relief)*  
And then...  
I arrived  
Somewhere... far beyond our galaxy...  
I arrived.

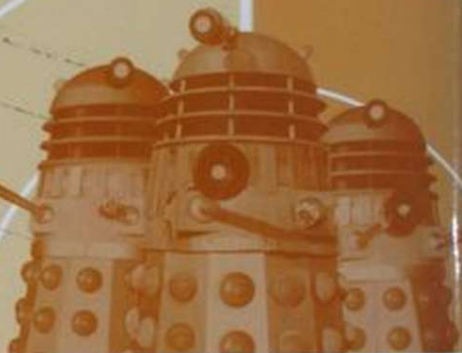
It was... another mind.  
Another  
Mind  
And yet  
My mind.

**DALEK**

*My miind!*




ASTONISHING STORIES OF THE  
OUTER-SPACE ROBOT PEOPLE  
CREATED BY TERRY NATION!

# DALEK EMPIRE THE SCRIPTS



All eight scripts from Big Finish's acclaimed **Dalek Empire** and **Dalek War** audio dramas. The scripts include cut scenes and alternative dialogue, and are fully annotated.

## ALSO INCLUDING:

-  A foreword by actor Mark McDonnell, who played Alby Brook in the series
-  Exclusive in-depth interviews with writer/director Nicholas Briggs which go behind the scenes on the writing process
-  Original archive documents, outlines, character biographies and a sneak peek at **Dalek Empire III**

PREPARE TO BE EXTERMINATED...!

ISBN 1-84435-106-8



9 781844 351060 >

Cover illustration by Clayton Hickman

UK: £15.99  
Science Fiction

[www.bigfinish.com](http://www.bigfinish.com)

**BIG  
FINISH**